

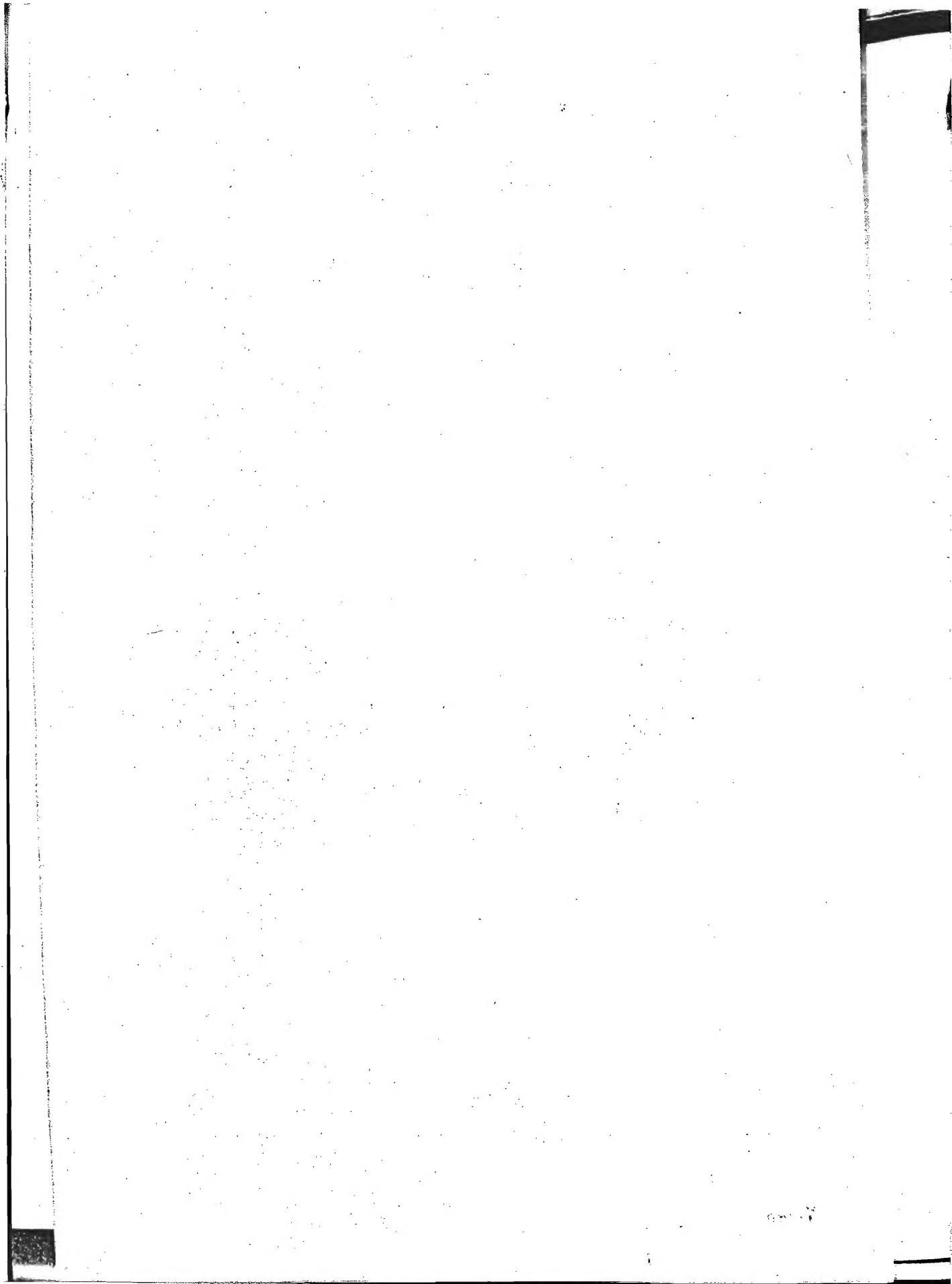
Tamako Niwa and Mayako Matsuda

BASIC JAPANESE FOR COLLEGE STUDENTS

REVISED EDITION



University of Washington Press, Seattle and London



Copyright © 1964 by the University of Washington Press
Second printing, 1965
Revised edition, copyright © 1966 by the University of Washington Press
Second printing, 1968
Third printing, 1969
Fourth printing, 1971
Fifth printing, 1973
Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 64-22006
ISBN 0-295-73714-X
Printed in the United States of America

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors of this book are indebted to the Harvard-Yenching Institute, the Department of Far Eastern Languages at Harvard University, the Department of Asian Languages at Stanford University and the Department of Far Eastern and Slavic Languages and Literature at the University of Washington for their support in the writing of this book. The text has been in experimental use at these institutions for the past two years, and there have been many invaluable suggestions and comments as a result. The authors are deeply appreciative of the time and effort contributed by the following friends: Professor Edwin O. Reischauer, under whose direction the work was first begun and whose encouragement has been such an inspiration, Miss Fannie Chude for her helpful comments, Mr. Mitsuki Kumekawa for his artistic drawings, Mrs. Takeo Izuyama for her help in the pattern passages, Mr. Hiroshi Miyaji for his help in the compilation of the grammar index, Mr. Shoichi Oguro and Miss Sumie Amikura for their meticulous care and willing and cheerful help in preparing the photocopy, and Mr. Shoichi Oguro who has been so generous of his time and labor in the preparation of the revision. One of the authors would like to express her special gratitude to her teacher, Professor Serge Elisseeff, for his kind guidance through all these years. These friends have contributed greatly to this work, but the authors are solely responsible for the many inconsistencies and deficiencies of the text for which they ask the readers' indulgence.

T. N.
M. M.

CONTENTS

Introduction	ix
Lesson I	3
Lesson II	19
Lesson III	42
Lesson IV	61
Lesson V	79
Lesson VI	103
Lesson VII	133
Lesson VIII	158
Lesson IX	179
Lesson X	199
Lesson XI	226
Lesson XII	257
Lesson XIII	283
Lesson XIV	308
Lesson XV	334
Lesson XVI	362
Lesson XVII	388
Lesson XVIII	412
Lesson XIX	435
Lesson XX	458
Lesson XXI	484
Lesson XXII	509
Lesson XXIII	525
Lesson XXIV	545
Translation	569
Vocabulary Index	601
Grammar Index	609



INTRODUCTION

This book is designed for college students who are beginners to the language. The selection of vocabulary and the presentation of grammar are directed to the goal of acquiring facility in the basic level of the spoken¹ language, as rapidly as possible, before progressing to the reading stage.

Procedure of Study

The text is designed to be taught by the oral-aural approach, but it can also be used for teaching by the more traditional grammar approach. The interpretation of the grammar, however, is based on description of actual usage rather than on traditional Japanese grammar. Each of the twenty-four lessons is divided into six sections: Vocabulary, Pattern Passage, Grammar, Drill, Comprehension Passage, and Exercises. For classes to be taught by the oral-aural approach, the following procedure is recommended.

1. The instructor should first drill the students in the pronunciation of the Vocabulary list. Wherever possible, the instructor should follow the given word with désu; accents have been indicated with this in mind. The purpose of this drill is to prevent the students from mispronouncing the words when reading the grammar part of the lesson.

2. For homework, the students should be required to study the Grammar section. They should also familiarize themselves with the vocabulary.

3. The class is now ready for the Drill. The purpose of the Drill section is to help the students to acquire a new set of speech habits in Japanese. Such habits can be achieved only by repeating the phrases over and over. The instructor should repeat a given drill many times, until the students respond with ease. In no instance should the instructor speak slower than his usual speed in Japanese. It is of the utmost importance that he speak at a normal conversational speed. The instructor should require the students to speak at about the same rate as in their native tongue. The students should be encouraged to mimic the actions of the instructor as well as his speech, e.g., the inclination of the head in saying "thank you" or arí-gatoo gozaimasu.

The following are the various types of drills to be found in the book and recommended ways of teaching them. Students should never be permitted to look at the text during the drill period.

- a. Substitution

In the text, a substitution drill will look like this:

¹The new Japanese text by Hibbett and Itasaka published by the Harvard University Press is recommended for the reading stage. This spoken language text has been prepared with this sequence in mind.

Hón o kaímáshita.

He bought a book.

(zasshi)

Zaásshi ó kaímáshita.

He bought a magazine.

(jidóosha)

Jidóosha o kaímáshita.

He bought a car.

The instructor should first say "substitution" so that the students are aware of what is expected of them. Then, he begins by saying the pattern sentence, Hón o kaímáshita. The students repeat this. Again, the instructor repeats the model sentence. The students mimic. This process is repeated over and over. In one of the repetitions, the instructor may give the sentence in English. The students can thus ascertain whether they have understood it correctly. The instructor may also point at various times to individual students and have them repeat the sentence. In this way, he can check their pronunciation. In correcting the students' pronunciation, the instructor should simply restate the original pattern. He should not go into an explanation of the error. Time is very precious and should be devoted to learning Japanese speech patterns.

When the students have mastered the model sentence, they are ready for the substitutions. The parts enclosed within parentheses are the parts to be supplied by the instructor. The instructor says zasshi. The students substitute this for a corresponding part of the model sentence; they respond with Zaásshi ó kaímáshita. Then the instructor says jidóosha. The students respond with Jidóosha o kaímáshita. The instructor may repeat the entire substitution drill any number of times, asking sometimes the entire class and sometimes individual students to respond. The following is an example of the procedure:

Instructor: Hón o kaímáshita.

Students: Hón o kaímáshita.

Instructor: Zasshi.

Students: Zaásshi ó kaímáshita.

Instructor: Jidóosha.

Students: Jidóosha o kaímáshita.

b. Progressive substitution

In a progressive substitution, the part of the sentence for which substitution is made shifts as the drill progresses. The following is a sample drill of this kind as it would appear in the text:

Tanaka-san wa getsúyóobi ni kimasu.

Mr. Tanaka will come on Monday.

(Yamada) Yamada-san wa getsúyóobi ni kimasu.

Mr. Yamada will come on Monday.

(kayóobi) Yamada-san wa kayóobi ni kimasu.

Mr. Yamada will come on Tuesday.

(ikimasu) Yamada-san wa kayóobi ni ikimasu.

Mr. Yamada will go on Tuesday.

(Shímizu) Shímizu-san wa kayóobi ni ikimasu.

Mr. Shimizu will go on Tuesday.

The underlined parts indicate where the next substitution will take place. This is for the benefit of the instructor. All progressive substitution

drills have been so arranged that the last sentence of the drill is identical with the original model pattern sentence. This enables the instructor to repeat the entire drill over and over.

c. Correlation substitution

In this type of substitution drill, the part that has been substituted necessitates some change or adjustment in another part of the sentence. The following is a sample of this:

Kyóo ikimasu.

I will go today.

(kinóo) Kinóo ikímashita.

I went yesterday.

(ashita) Ashita ikimasu.

I will go tomorrow.

d. Response

As the name indicates, this is a drill in which a question is asked and the students reply. There are various possible response drills. The simplest is the affirmative response drill:

Instructor: Kinóo ikímashita ka?

Students: Ee. Kinóo ikímashita.

Instructor: Kinóo aímashita ka?

Students: Ee. Kinóo aímashita.

Then, there is the negative response drill:

Instructor: Kinóo ikímashita ka?

Students: Iie. Kinóo ikímásén deshita.

Instructor: Kinóo aímashita ka?

Students: Iie. Kinóo aímásén deshita.

There are also response drills in which the instructor makes use of various objects:

Instructor: Sore wa nán desu ka? (He points to an object.)

Students: Sore wa hón desu.

Instructor: Sore wa nán desu ka?

Students: Sore wa rájio desu.

In the above drilling, the teacher may also call on one student for the question and another student for the answer; however, some indication must always be made to guide the student in the proper response, by pointing to the book, the radio, etc. In some instances, the instructor may simply name the substitution that is to appear in the reply:

Instructor: Dáre ga kímashita ka?

Instructor: Tanaka-san.

Students: Tanáká-sán gá kímashita.

Instructor: Dáre ga kímashita ka?

Instructor: Yamada-san.

Students: Yamádá-sán gá kímashita.

In this text, this last type of drill is called a substitution and response drill. As in all of the drills, the part supplied by the instructor is enclosed in parentheses.

e. Conversation

A conversation drill is simply a longer response drill. In the response drill there is just one question and one reply. The conversation drill consists of more than one set of questions and answers. The following is an example:

Instructor: Kore wa dāre no desu ka?
Students: Sore wa Tanáká-sán nó desu.
Instructor: Kore wa?
Students: Sore wa Yamádá-sán nó desu.

Here again the instructor indicates the desired response either by pointing out to whom the object belongs or by supplying the name verbally.

f. Grammar

The following is a grammar drill as it would appear in the text:

(Ikímashita.)	(He went.)
Ikímásén deshita.	He didn't go.
(Kakímashita.)	(He wrote it.)
Kakímásén deshita.	He didn't write it.

Since this is to drill the students in grammatical structure, it is very important to indicate what change is to take place. To do this, the instructor should have the students repeat the first set, ikímashita and ikímásén deshita several times before commencing with the drill. Here again the part to be said by the instructor is in parenthesis.

g. Transposition

This is another type of grammar drill. In a transposition drill, there is some change in the word order of the sentence which may also entail a change of particles. The following is an example of a transposition drill:

(Kore wa Tanáká-sán nó desu.)	(This is Mr. Tanaka's.)
Tanáká-sán nó wa kore desu.	Mr. Tanaka's is this one.

h. Repetition

In this type of drill, the students simply mimic the entire sentence spoken by the instructor.

i. Expansion

This drill helps the student in mastering long sentences. The instructor should first say the entire sentence so that the students will know the goal for which they are aiming. Then the instructor says the last part of the sentence first. The students repeat. The instructor gives the phrase immediately preceding the final phrase. The students say the new phrase and follow it with the last part of the sentence. This process continues until the students can say the entire sentence.

Tanaka-san wa kinoo shimbún ó káimáshita.		Mr. Tanaka bought a newspaper yesterday.
(káimáshita)	Káimáshita.	He bought it.
(shimbun o)	Shimbún ó káimáshita.	He bought a newspaper.
(kinoo)	Kinoo shimbún ó káimáshita.	He bought a newspaper yesterday.
(Tanaka-san wa)	Tanaka-san wa kinoo shimbún ó káimáshita.	Mr. Tanaka bought a newspaper yesterday.

4. When the drill is completed, the class is ready for the Pattern Passage. The instructor should drill the students, using the repetition method. The students should then be required to commit the entire passage to memory as they would the lines of a play.

5. The class is now ready for the Comprehension Passage. The instructor reads a part of the passage to the students. He may repeat this reading. The students are then permitted to read the translation of the part that was read to them. The teacher reads the passage again. Then the students are questioned in Japanese on the content of the passage. The process is repeated until the entire passage is completed. The students should be encouraged to ask further questions pertaining to the subject of the comprehension passage. An attempt has been made here to supply as much information as possible concerning present-day Japan through the activities of two typical "middle-class" families, the Tanakas and the Matsumotos.

6. Exercises

The final step of each lesson is the Exercise, that tests the students' grasp of the lesson. These may be done orally in class or as homework.

If time allows, the Exercise may be followed by "free" conversation hours in which the instructor asks questions of the students without adhering to any single structural pattern. The instructor should NEVER use new vocabulary or new structures which have not yet been taught. Throughout the whole text the instructor should restrict himself to vocabulary and forms familiar to the students.

English should never be spoken in class with the exception of the English equivalents of the drill sentences said by the instructor and lecture hours on grammatical structure.

The instructor should impress upon the students that they should never do any advanced preparation for a class except to read the grammar and become familiar with the vocabulary. The students acquire facility by reviewing what they have learned in class.

Level of Formality

Throughout the text, the tone of the language is generally one of friendly politeness; it is the level of formality that one would use to a friend as well as to a stranger. The ending of the principal verb, the copula, or the verbal adjective is what determines the tone. It must be borne in mind, however, that informal endings may occur within a sentence of this level without affecting the general tone of the sentence, as long as the final verb is in the semi-formal ending.

The informal level or tone of speech occurs here and there in the text, for example when Mr. Matsumoto is addressing his wife or where Mr. Tanaka is

speaking to his son. This informal tone occurs in conversations between close friends, among members of a family, or when speaking to an inferior. Context makes this clear in the later lessons. In the earlier lessons sentences that would be said only by men are indicated with an "X" before the sentence.

The formal level of speech shows respect to the addressee and in some instances to the individual being discussed. It is possible to show respect and be informal by using formal verbs, etc. with their informal endings. (For further discussion, see Lessons XXI and XXII.)

Writing

It is recommended that the students be introduced, quite apart from the oral work, to the writing system as soon as possible, perhaps from around Lesson VI. From that time, they should be responsible for learning one or two vertical columns of the hiragana chart each week. Exercises should be given consisting of words that the students already know. For example, when they have learned a, i, u, e, and o, they may be required to write áa, ue, ie, and ái. (English meanings should be supplied for áo and ái, since the students are not yet familiar with these words.) Then, when they reach the "t" column, they may be required to write some gerunds, perfectives, etc., e.g., káita, káite kudasai. When the students have mastered the hirágána syllabary, they are then ready to conjugate verbs. Verbs such as míru "to see," yu (or iuu) "to say," and yómu "to read," are most suitable. In this way, students are not only learning characters but are also becoming familiar with verb and verbal-adjective endings in hirágána. This serves as a good review of the grammar at the same time that it prepares the student slowly for the transition to the reading stage.

Parts of Speech

For purposes of this text, parts of speech in Japanese have been divided into six categories: verbs, verbal adjectives, the copula, nouns, particles, and conjunctions. Of these the first three are conjugated. The definition of a noun in this text is a word that never changes in form and is not a particle. The following subcategories of nouns are divided according to their functions as modifiers of other nouns.

	<u>As a noun modifier</u>	<u>As a verb modifier*</u>
I. Tangible		
(book, child, proper name, etc.)	plus <u>no</u>	
Intangible	plus <u>no</u>	
(culture, politics, etc.)		
Location	plus <u>no</u>	plus <u>ni</u> (where?)
(here, above, etc.)		

Time word (not specific time) (now, yesterday, etc.)	plus <u>no</u>	without a particle following (when?)
Quantity (few, many, etc.)	plus <u>no</u>	without a particle following (how much?)
II. Adjectival (pretty, skillful, etc.)	plus <u>na</u>	plus <u>ni</u> (how?)
III. Sonna-type	without a particle	plus <u>ni</u> (to what extent?)
Sono-type	without a particle	

* Considered only with ni here. Exceptions are not noted.

Particles can be compared in function to prepositions in English; particles follow what they govern. Certain nouns and particles function as conjunctions in showing relationship between two parts of a sentence, either of which is complete in itself.

Pronunciation

The vowels in Japanese are five in number: a as in "father," i as in "machine" (but not held as long), u as in "boot" (but not held as long), e as in "said," and o as in "corn." Each of these vowels may be doubled in beat, but the quality of the vowel will not change.

a	áa máa sáa	"oh" "really" "let me see"
i	íi Kíi chíi	"good" "Kii Peninsula" "position"
u	núu shúu chuu	"sew" "state" "midst of"
e	ée téenee née	"yes" "polite" "don't you think"
o	sóo kóo móo	"it's so" "this way" "already"

Various combinations of the above vowels are shown below:

ái	"love"	iuu	"say"	ói	"hey"
áu	"meet"	ié	"house"	óoi	"many"
ae	"meet him!"	ile	"no"	ou	"carry on one's back"
áo	"blue"	ue	"above"		
aóo	"let's meet him"	úo	"fish"		

The following chart* shows the fifteen consonants that may precede and form syllabic combinations with the above five vowels. (This refers to possible sounds and not to the written syllabaries.)

	k	s	t	n	h	m	y	r	w	ñ		g	ḡ	z	d	b	p
a	ka	sa	ta	na	ha	ma	ya	ra	wa	ñ		ga	ḡa	za	da	ba	pa
i	ki	si	ti	ni	hi	mi		ri				gi	ḡi	zi		bi	pi
		(shi)	(chi)											(ji)			
u	ku	su	tu	nu	hu	mu	yu	ru				gu	ḡu	zu		bu	pu
			(tsu)		(fu)												
e	ke	se	te	ne	he	me		re				ge	ḡe	ze	de	be	pe
o	ko	so	to	no	ho	mo	yo	ro				go	ḡo	zo	do	bo	po

*Syllables in parentheses indicate spelling used in the text.

The following are combinations of consonants with the a vowel:

áka	"red"	awá	"bubble"	Tanaka	p.n.
ása	"morning"	náka	"inside"	Yamada	p.n.
aná	"hole"	tana	"shelf"	Hámada	p.n.
anáta	"you"	matá	"again"	Yamanaka	p.n.
hata	"flag"	másaka	"indeed"	Nakayama	p.n.
		sakana	"fish"		

The following are combinations of consonants with the i vowel:

íki	"breath"	kíji	"article"
ishí	"stone"	níshi	"west"
ími	"meaning"	michi	"street"
ijí	"greed"	chíji	"governor"

The following are combinations of consonants with the u vowel:

uku	"float"	umu	"give birth"	gúuguu	"sound of snoring"
úsu	"mortar"	útsu	"hit"	ubuyu	"baby's first bath"
úzu	"whirlpool"	tsuyu	"rainy season"	nusúmu	"steal"
		fúgu	"swellfish"		

The following are combinations of consonants with the e vowel:

mé	"eye"	té	"hand"	née	"don't you think"
ke	"hair"	hee	"wall"	zée	"tax"
sé	"height"	gée	"act"	téenee	"polite"

The following are combinations of consonants with the o vowel:

ko	"child"	nódo	"throat"	yohodo	"quite a bit"
to	"door"	hodo	"about"	dóozo	"please"
tóo	"ten"	hóbo	"about"	doozoo	"bronze statue"
sóto	"outside"	hóoboo	"every di-		
moto	"origin"		rection"		

The vowels i and u, when they occur between any of the voiceless consonants "k," "s" (sh), "t" (ch), "p," or "h" (f) are voiceless or whispered. The following are examples of such "silent" vowels:

kíku	"ask"	shíki	"ceremony"	níhíki	"two animals"
kísú	"smelt"	shíhon	"capital"	hísóka ni	"secretly"
kíchi	"military base"	shíchi	"seven"	hítsuyoo	"necessary"
kíhee	"cavalry soldier"	súki	"likeable"	fúkaí	"deep"
		súso	"hem"	fúsá	"tassel"
kúki	"stem"	súteki	"wonderful"	fúchi	"edge"
kúshi	"comb"	súpootsu	"sports"	empítsu	"pencil"
kútsú	"shoe"	chíka	"basement"	píka-píka	"gleaming"
kúfuu	"plan"	chíchi	"father"	gumpúku	"military uni-
		tsúki	"moon"		form"
		tsúchi	"earth"		

The Japanese consonant "r" is close to the sound "d" in English. To make the sound, the tip of the tongue is flapped against the ridge in back of the upper front teeth. The following are examples of "d" and "r" combinations.

daradara	"dripping"	dáre	"who"	doórakú	"dissipated"
doró	"mud"	dóre	"which"	dóoro	"road"
dórodoro	"muddy"	doree	"slave"	darúi	"languid"
doroboo	"robber"	dóru	"dollar"	daruma	"Dharma"

There is a nasal syllable "n" which occurs after vowels. An "n" followed immediately by a consonant other than "y" is always this nasal. For purposes of this text, the nasal is indicated as n̄ only when it precedes a vowel or "y" to distinguish it from the dental "n."

sámmai	"three sheets"	saúnín	"three people"	beégóshi	"lawyer"
sámbon	"three pencils"	sándo	"three times"	benkyoo	"studies"
sámpun	"three minutes"	saúnínsha	"three wheeler"	seúsée	"teacher"
sambashi	"pier"	saútóo	"third class"	hónya	"bookstore"
				sañen	"three yen"

All "g's" except initial "g's" are nasal (the "g" of the particle ga is also nasal). This is like the "g" in "singing." However, there are some dialects in which the nasal "g" does not exist; the regular "g" may be substituted for the nasal "g."

hagaki	"postcard"	jińgúu	"shrine"	káge	"shade"
aríгатoo	"thank you"	súgu	"immediately"	agó	"chin"
migi	"right"	ageru	"give"		

A consonant followed by ya, yu, or yo forms one syllable. See the following table.*

k	s	t	n	h	m	r	g	g̃	z	b	p
kya	sya	tya	nya	hya	mya	rya	gya	g̃ya	zya	bya	pya
	(sha)	(cha)							(ja)		
kyu	syu	tyu	nyu	hyu	myu	ryu	gyu	g̃yu	zyu	byu	pyu
	(shu)	(chu)							(ju)		
kyo	syo	tyo	nyo	hyo	myo	ryo	gyo	g̃yo	zyo	byo	pyo
	(sho)	(cho)							(jo)		

* Syllables in parentheses indicate the spelling used in the text.

When a given consonant occurs in consecutive sequence, a long consonant results. In the case of "k," "t," and "p," the tongue and lips are put in position for that consonant and then held for one beat before being released. With "s" the consonant is sounded but held.

gakkoo	"school"	mátte	"wait"
hakkíri	"clearly"	aftákái	"warm"
zasshi	"magazine"	ippai	"full"
hassuru	"start out"	rippa	"splendid"

ACCENT

The accent in Japanese is primarily one of pitch and secondarily one of stress. Pitch affects the meaning of the word. For example, káki means oysters while kakí means persimmons. There are four relative levels of pitch: the high, the medium-high, the neutral, and the low. Between pause breaks there is not more than one high pitch, but there may be a medium-high pitch in addition. In this text, the accent mark ' is indicated over both high pitch and medium-high pitch, without distinction. The low pitch is indicated by a dot . under the vowel occurring when the remainder of the utterances is of neutral pitch. Since the low pitch occurs after a pause break, it has been omitted at the beginning of sentences but indicated elsewhere within the sentence. The following are examples of the accents occurring in this text.

1. Tanaka-san desu. Low pitch for ta. The remainder is neutral. It's Mr. Tanaka.
2. Tanáká-sán désu ka? High pitch from na through de. The remainder is neutral. Is it Mr. Tanaka?

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| 3. Dóre desu ka? | High pitch on <u>do</u> . The remainder is neutral. | Which one is it? |
| 4. Omóshíroku narímá-shita. | High pitch on <u>moshi</u> ; medium high on <u>rima</u> . The remainder is neutral. | It's become interesting. |
| Omóshíroku narima-shita. | High pitch on <u>moshi</u> . The rest is neutral. | It's become interesting. |
| 5. Kore ga wakárimásu ka? | Low pitch on <u>ko</u> . High pitch on <u>karima</u> . The remainder is neutral. There is a pause before <u>wakarimasu</u> . | Can you understand this?
Is this clear? |
| Koré gá wákárimásu ka? | High pitch from <u>re</u> through <u>ma</u> . The remainder is neutral. | Can you understand?
Is this clear? |

As examples 4 and 5 indicate, there are various possible accent markings for a given sentence. For purposes of this textbook, the most natural accents of a native Tōkyō speaker have been followed throughout.

There are three intonation markings in this text. The question mark ? indicates a rising tone. The period . indicates a level or falling tone. A sequence of periods ... indicates trailing of the voice or holding the last syllable longer than the usual beat.

Spelling and Symbols

A modified Hepburn system is followed where the entire content is in Japanese, and the Hepburn system is used in the English part. Introductory connectives such as désukara, dákara, and déwa have been written as one word at the beginning of a sentence or phrase.

Brackets [] are used around phrases which are inserted for clarity in translation but do not appear in the original Japanese. For all other editorial comments parentheses () are used.

xix

ing.

ing.

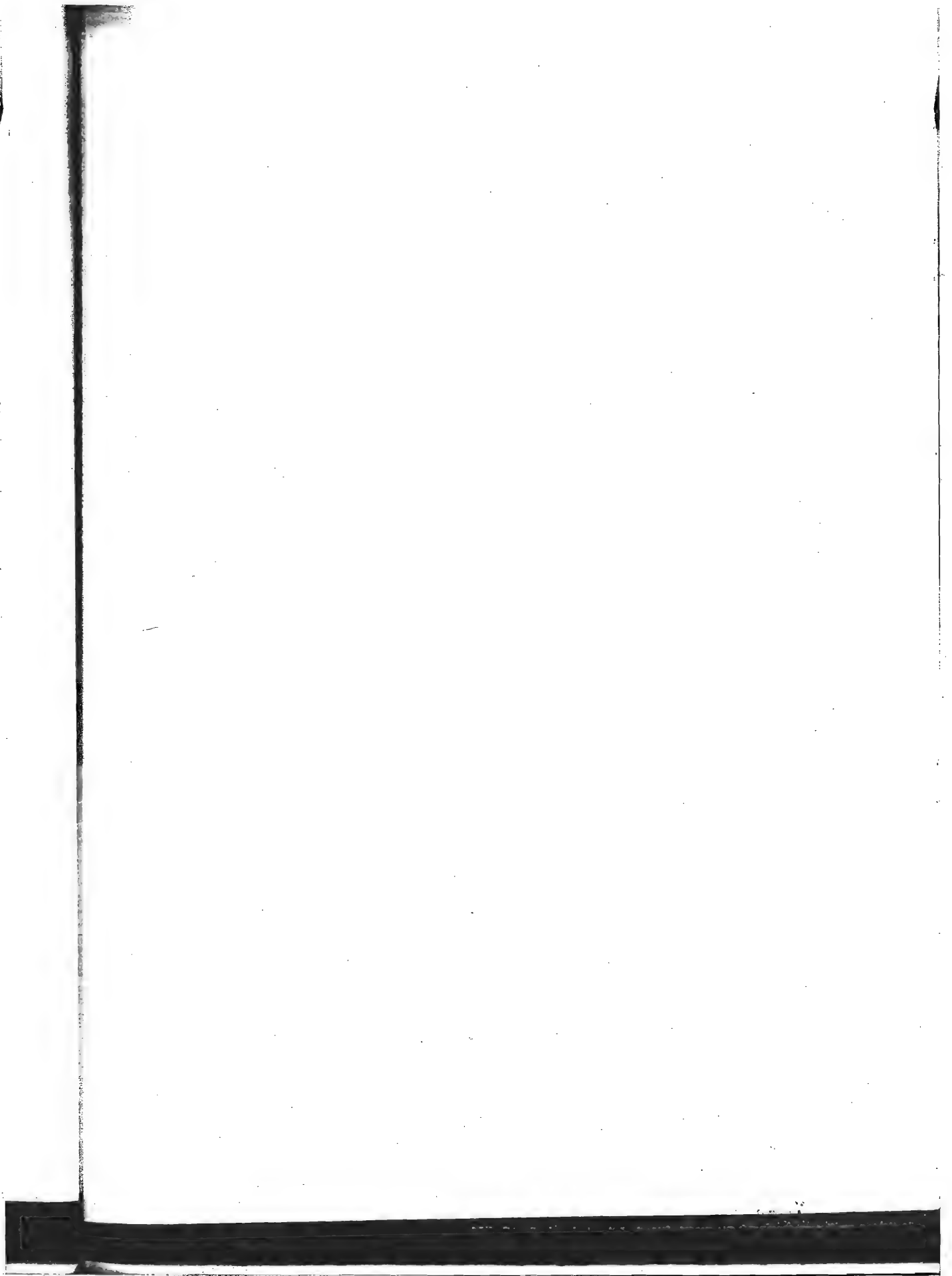
r
of

A

i

-

BASIC JAPANESE FOR COLLEGE STUDENTS



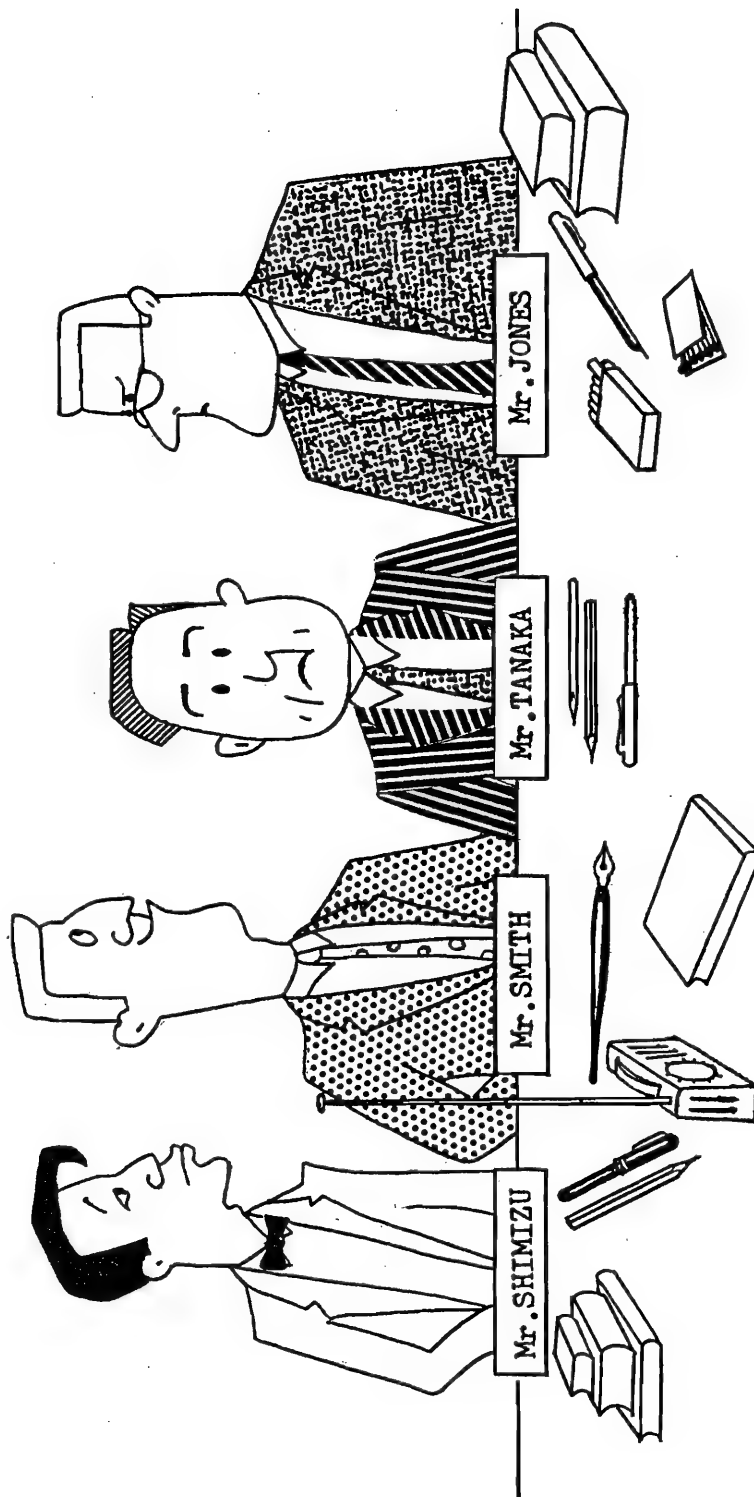
LESSON I

empitsu	pencil
hako	box
heyá	room
hito	1) man, person, people; 2) somebody, others
hón	book
mannénhitsu	fountain pen
máchi	match, matches
pén	pen
rájio	radio
tabako	cigarette, tobacco
kore	this thing (near the speaker)
sore	that thing (near the person being addressed or at a slight distance from both persons)
are	that thing (in the distance or away from both the speaker and the person being addressed)
dóre	which thing?
dáre	who?
náni, nán	what? (See Grammar 1.13)
sóo	thus, so
kono	this (near the speaker)
sono	that (referring to something or someone near the person being addressed or some specific topic or person just mentioned)
ano	that (referring to something or someone away from both the speaker and the person being addressed or some specific topic or person mentioned sometime earlier)
dóno	which?
hai	yes (semi-formal)
ee	yes (informal)
ie	no
déwa	then, well then, in that case
désu	to be (See Grammar 1.3, 1.4)
-san	Mr., Mrs., Miss, Master (See Grammar 1.1)

USEFUL CLASSROOM PHRASES

Tékisuto o minai de kudasai.
 Moó ichidó itté kúdásái.
 Móttö óoki na kóe de itté kúdásái.
 _____-san ni kiité kúdásái.
 Eego o hanásánai de kudasai.
 Wakárimásén.
 _____-san, onegai shimasu.

Please don't look at the text.
 Please say it again.
 Please say it in a louder voice.
 Please ask _____.
 Please don't speak English.
 I don't understand.
 _____, please (in calling on someone in class).



PATTERN PASSAGE

- A. Sore wa nán desu ka?
 B. Dóre. Kore?
 A. Ée.
 B. Pén desu.
 A. Dáre no pén desu ka?
 B. Tanáká-sán nó deshoo.
 A. Déwa Shímizu-san no wa dóre deshoo ka?
 B. Kore ga Shímizu-san no desu.
 A. Kore to sore wa dáre no?
 B. Jóonzu-san no.
- A. What's that?
 B. Which one? This one?
 A. Yes.
 B. It's a pen.
 A. Whose pen is it?
 B. It's probably Mr. Tanaka's.
 A. Then, which one is Mr. Shimizu's?
 B. This is Mr. Shimizu's.
 A. Who do these belong to? (This one and that one are whose?)
 B. They're Mr. Jones'.

(Looking at a picture)

- A. Dóno hito ga Jóonzu-san desu ka?
 B. Konó hito ga sóo desu.
 A. Konó hito wa dáre desu ka?
 B. Shímizu-san ka Tanaka-san desu.
- A. Which man is Mr. Jones?
 B. It's this man.
 A. Who's this man?
 B. It's either Mr. Shimizu or Mr. Tanaka.

GRAMMAR

1.1 -san

San is a suffix added to people's names and to various jobs or professions as an expression of politeness; it is comparable to the use of "Mr.," "Mrs." and "Miss" in English. San is never added in giving one's own name.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san	Mr. Tanaka, Mrs. Tanaka, Miss Tanaka
hónya-san	Mr. Bookseller
rajioya-san	Mr. Radio store man

1.2 Plurals

Nouns in Japanese have the same form in the singular and the plural; the two are distinguished only through context. The English meaning of empitsu could be "pencil" or "pencils"; hako could mean "box" or "boxes."

(Note: Some nouns distinguish the singular and plural by adding suffixes to form the plural. This will be introduced later.)

1.3 The copula desu

Desu occurs at the end of a phrase or sentence and has the meaning of "is," "are," "it is," "they are," etc.; it functions like an equation.

(Not
noun
verb

1.4

Info

da
de

dar

dat

EXA

(No
int
(Th

1.5

isc
is
mar
cal
mer
qu

EXAMPLES:

Á wa/ B desu.

As for A/ It {is . } B.
 {equals}

Hón desu.

It is a book. They are books.

Empitsu desu.

It is a pencil. They are pencils.

Koré wá rájio desu.

This is a radio. These are radios.

Rájio wa kore desu.

A radio is this object. Radios are these things.

(Note: In this lesson, désu and its various inflections occur only after nouns. In later lessons, it will be seen that they also follow verbs and verbal adjectives.)

1.4 Inflections of désu

<u>Informal</u>	<u>Semi-formal</u>	<u>Form</u>	<u>English Meaning</u>
da	désu	Non-past	It is. They are, etc.
de áru*	de arimasu*	Non-past (more formal equivalent used in speeches and in writing)	It is. They are, etc.
daróo	deshóo	Tentative	It is. It probably is. They are. They probably are, etc.
dátta*	déshita	Perfective	It was. They were, etc.

EXAMPLES:

<u>Informal</u>	<u>Semi-formal</u>	<u>English</u>
Hón da.	Hón desu.	It is a book.
Hón daroo.	Hón deshoo.	It is probably a book.
Hón datta.	Hón deshita.	It was a book.
Empitsu da.	Empitsu desu.	It is a pencil.
Empitsu dáróo.	Empítsú déshóo.	It is probably a pencil.
Empítsú dáttá.	Empítsú déshita.	It was a pencil.

(Note: The informal da form of désu is never immediately followed by the interrogative ka nor is it used interrogatively with the rising tone, da?.) (The asterisk * denotes a form which will be explained later.)

1.5 Particle wa

The particle wa occurs after the word or phrase it governs and serves to isolate or set it apart from the remainder of the sentence which follows. It is convenient to think of the wa as meaning "as for." The word or phrase marked off by wa is the topic upon which the sentence bears. It is the logical, as opposed to the grammatical, subject of the sentence. The topic is mentioned and then followed by the particle wa which, in turn, is followed by qualifying remarks or questions pertaining to the topic.

EXAMPLES:

Kore wa	nán desu ka?	What is this?
Sore wa	empitsu desu.	That is a pencil.
Sore wa	Tanáká-sán nó rájio desu.	That is Mr. Tanaka's radio.

1.6 Particle ga

The particle ga occurs after a noun or non-past verb (to be discussed later) and indicates that the preceding word or phrase is the subject of the sentence. When ga is used, emphasis is on the part of the sentence preceding the particle ga. Any interrogative word, such as "who," "where," "what," occurring as the subject of the sentence, is followed by the particle ga and not wa.

EXAMPLES:

Koré <u>ga</u> rájio desu.	<u>This is a radio.</u>
Dóre <u>ga</u> Tanáká-sán nó hón desu ka?	<u>Which one is Mr. Tanaka's book?</u>
Dóno hito <u>ga</u> Tanáká-sán desu ka?	<u>Which man is Mr. Tanaka?</u>

1.7 Comparison of wa and ga

Compare the following two statements which differ only in the particle.

Kore <u>wa</u> rájio desu.	This is a radio.
Koré <u>ga</u> rájio desu.	<u>This is a radio.</u>

The interrogative sentences, to which the above are replies, differ and place emphasis on different parts of the sentence. Compare the following sets of questions and answers.

EXAMPLES:

- (a) Kore wa nán desu ka? What is this? (Interest is on what it is)
 Sore wa rájio desu. That is a radio.
- Dóre ga rájio desu ka? Which (among various items) is a radio?
 Soré ga rájio desu. That is a radio.
- (b) Kore wa dáre no hón desu ka? Whose book is this?
 Sore wa Tanáká-sán nó hón desu. That is Mr. Tanaka's book.
- Dóre ga Tanaka-san no hón desu ka? Which (among several) is Mr. Tanaka's book?
 Sore ga Tanáká-sán nó hón desu. That is Mr. Tanaka's book.
- (c) Sonó hito wa dáre desu ka? Who is that person?
 Sonó hito wa Tanaka-san desu. That person is Mr. Tanaka.
- Dóno hito ga Tanáká-sán desu ka? Which person is Mr. Tanaka?
 Sonó hito ga Tanaka-san desu. That person is Mr. Tanaka.

1.8 Interrogative particle ka

(a) The particle ka occurring at the end of a sentence changes it into an interrogative one.

EXAMPLES:

Maññénhitsu desu.

It is a fountain pen.

Maññénhitsu desu ka?

Is it a fountain pen?

(WARNING: The interrogative particle ka after a noun (e.g. hón ka?) or the informal non-past of a verb or verbal adjective (e.g. ikú ka? oókíi ka?) has an abrupt quality. It is used by men.)

(See Note to 1.4)

(Note: A sentence may also become interrogative without adding the particle ka, by raising the voice at the end of the sentence, e.g. koré desu? It is an informal way of asking questions and it is a more common practice among women than men.)

(b) Deshóo ka may be interpreted in two ways, depending on the context. It may be an interrogative or it may have the meaning, "I wonder."

EXAMPLES:

Kore wa dáre no deshoo ka?

Whose is this?

I wonder whose this is?

Koré deshóo ka?

Is it this one?

I wonder if it is this one?

(c) Two interrogative sentences, of similar pattern and in sequence, have the meaning "(whether)-----or."

EXAMPLES:

Pén desu ka, émpítsú desu ka?

Is it a pen or is it a pencil?

Tanáka-sán nó hón desu ka, Shímizu-san no hón desu ka?

Is it Mr. Tanaka's book or is it Mr. Shimizu's book?

Ikú ka ikánái ka shirímásén.

I don't know whether he is going or not.

(d) The particle ka between two nouns has the meaning "(either)-----or---."

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san ka Shímizu-san deshoo.

It is probably either Mr. Tanaka or Mr. Shimizu.

Pén ka émpitsu desu.

It is either a pen or a pencil.

1.9 Particle no

The particle no which occurs between two nouns makes the first noun a modifier of the second. It may often be equated with the English "of," "'s."

EXAMPLES:

Kono heya no rájio desu.

It is the radio belonging to this room.

Mannénhitsu no hako desu.
Tanaka-san no empitsu desu.
Dare no tabakó desu ka?

It is a box for the fountain pen.
It is Mr. Tanaka's pencil.
Whose cigarettes are these?

A noun may be modified by more than one noun + no phrase.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san no heya no rájio desu.	It is the radio belonging to Mr. Tanaka's room.
Shímizu-san no heya no isu desu.	It is the chair belonging to Mr. Shimizu's room.

The final noun (i.e. the noun being modified) may be omitted if the meaning is clear.

EXAMPLES:

Tanáká-sán nó desu.	It is Mr. Tanaka's.
Dare no desu ka?	Whose is it?

1.10 Difference between kore (etc.) and kono (etc.)

Kono must always precede and modify another noun (e.g. konó hón), whereas kore "this thing," "this one" functions as an independent noun.

EXAMPLES:

<u>Kore</u> wa Tanáká-sán nó desu.	This is Mr. Tanaka's.
<u>Konó hón</u> wa Tanáká-sán nó desu.	This book is Mr. Tanaka's.
<u>Sore</u> wa Sumisu-san no desu.	That is Mr. Smith's.
<u>Sono</u> empitsu desu.	It's that pencil.
<u>Dore</u> ga Sumisu-san no desu ka?	Which is Mr. Smith's?
<u>Dono hon</u> ga Sumisu-san no desu ka?	Which book is Mr. Smith's?

1.11 Particle to

The particle to between nouns means "and."

(WARNING: To meaning "and" links only nouns.)

EXAMPLES:

Tabako to máchi desu.	They are cigarettes and matches.
Pén to empitsu desu.	It is a pen and a pencil.
Tanaka-san to Shímizu-san desu.	They're Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Shimizu.
Dóre to dóre desu ka?	Which ones are they? Which ones do you mean?

1.12 Particles in shortened expressions

In a shortened expression, the noun followed by wa means "and how about _____," "what about _____;" a new topic has been introduced.

10

EXAM

(Not
volv

1.13

a co
word
occe

(No

EXAM

1.

Hit

(Jó

(Sú

(Sh

(Ta

2.

Q.

A.

(T

(S

EXAMPLES:

Kore wa Tanáká-sán nó hón desu.
Sore wa? (Sore wa dare no hón
desu ka?)

This is Mr. Tanaka's book.
And how about that one? (Whose
book is that?)

Kore wa Tanáká-sán nó hón desu.
Sore? (Soré desu ka?)

This is Mr. Tanaka's book.
That one? (Do you mean that one?)

(Note: When ga (and certain other particles to be discussed later) is involved, its use in a shortened expression is optional.

1.13 Nán

Nán occurs rather than náni before a word beginning with "d" or before a counter (to be discussed later) and interchangeably with náni before a word beginning with "t" or "n." Before other consonants or vowels, náni occurs.

(Note: Nán occurs before other consonants in various dialects of Japanese)

EXAMPLES:

Kore wa nán desu ka?
Sore wa nán no hón desu ka?
Nán to náni ga arímasu ka?

What is this?
What is that book about?
What is there?

DRILL

1. Substitution

Hito desu.

It's a man.

(Jóonzu-san) Jóonzu-san desu.
(Súmisu-san) Súmisu-san desu.
(Shímizu-san) Shímizu-san desu.
(Tanaka-san) Tanaka-san desu.

It's Mr. Jones.
It's Mr. Smith.
It's Mr. Shimizu.
It's Mr. Tanaka.

2. Response

Q. Jóonzu-san desu ka?
A. Ée. Jóonzu-san desu.

Q. Is it Mr. Jones?
A. Yes, it's Mr. Jones.

(Tanaka-san) Tanáká-sán desu ka?
Ée. Tanaka-san desu.
(Súmisu-san) Súmisu-san desu ka?
Ée. Súmisu-san desu.

Is it Mr. Tanaka?
Yes, it's Mr. Tanaka.
Is it Mr. Smith?
Yes, it's Mr. Smith.

1.
to

out

(Shímizu-san) Shímizu-san desu ka?
 Ee. Shímizu-san desu.
 (members of the class)

Is it Mr. Shimizu?
 Yes, it's Mr. Shimizu.

3. Response

Q. Súmisu-san desu ka?
 A. Iie. Shímizu-san desu.

Q. Is it Mr. Smith?
 A. No, it's Mr. Shimizu.

(Use list in Drill 2)

4. Response

Q. Dáre desu ka?
 A. Tanaka-san desu.

Q. Who is it?
 A. It's Mr. Tanaka.

(Point to a picture or to members of the class)

5. Substitution (Actual objects may be used)

Hón desu.

It's a book.

(Pén) Pén desu.
 (Empitsu) Empitsu desu.
 (Mañnénhitsu) Mañnénhitsu desu.
 (Heyá) Heyá desu.
 (Rájio) Rájio desu.
 (Hako) Hako desu.
 (Tabako) Tabako desu.
 (Máchi) Máchi desu.

It's a pen.
 It's a pencil.
 It's a fountain pen.
 It's a room.
 It's a radio.
 It's a box.
 They're cigarettes.
 They're matches.

6. Response

Q. Nán desu ka?
 A. Hón desu.

Q. What is it?
 A. It's a book.

(Use list in Drill 5)

7. Response

(a) Q. Kore wa nán desu ka?
 A. Sore wa rájio desu.

Q. What is this?
 A. That's a radio.

(b) Q. Sore wa nán desu ka?
 A. Sore wa rájio desu.

Q. What is that?
 A. That's a radio.

(c) Q. Are wa nán desu ka?
 A. Are wa rájio desu.

Q. What is that?
 A. That's a radio.

8. Conversation

A. Sore wa empítsú desu ka, pén desu ka?

B. Dóre desu ka?

A. Sore desu.

B. Sore wa empitsu desu.

(pén, mañnénhitsu)

(mañnénhitsu, empitsu)

(mañnénhitsu, rájio)

(rájio, hako)

A. Is that a pencil or is it a pen?

B. Which do you mean?

A. I mean that one.

B. That's a pencil.

9. Response

Q. Tanáka-sán desu ka, Shímizu-san desu ka?

A. Tanáka-sán deshoo.

Q. Is it Mr. Tanaka or is it Mr. Shimizu?

A. It's probably Mr. Tanaka.

(Point to a picture or a member of the class)

10. Response

Q. Dáre no hón desu ka?

A. Shímizu-san no hón deshoo.

Q. Whose book is it?

A. It's probably Mr. Shimizu's book.

(Use list in Drill 5)

11. Response

Q. Dáre no desu ka?

A. Súmisu-san no desu.

Q. Whose is it?

A. It's Mr. Smith's.

12. Grammar

- (a) A. Kore wa dáre no desu ka?
B. Konó hón wa dáre no desu ka?

- A. Whose is this?
B. Whose book is this? (Whose is this book?)

- (b) A. Sore wa dáre no desu ka?
B. Sonó hón wa dáre no desu ka?

- A. Whose is that?
B. Whose book is that? (Whose is that book?)

- (c) A. Are wa dáre no desu ka?
B. Anó hón wa dáre no desu ka?

- A. Whose is that?
B. Whose book is that? (Whose is that book?)

13. Response

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) Q. <u>Konó hón</u> wa dāre no deshoo ka?
A. <u>Tanaka-sān</u> nó desu. | Q. Whose book is this?
A. It's Mr. Tanaka's. |
| (b) Q. <u>Sono empitsu</u> wa dāre no deshoo ka?
A. <u>Tanaka-sān</u> nó desu. | Q. Whose pencil is that?
A. It's Mr. Tanaka's. |
| (c) Q. <u>Anó mánnénhitsu</u> wa dāre no deshoo ka?
A. <u>Tanaka-sān</u> nó desu. | Q. Whose fountain pen is that?
A. It's Mr. Tanaka's. |

14. Transposition

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) A. Koré wa <u>Súmisu-san</u> no <u>rájio</u> desu ka?
B. <u>Súmisu-san</u> no <u>rájio</u> wa koré desu ka? | A. Is this Mr. Smith's radio?
B. Is Mr. Smith's radio this one? |
| (b) A. Sore wa <u>Súmisu-san</u> no <u>rájio</u> desu ka?
B. <u>Súmisu-san</u> no <u>rájio</u> wa soré desu ka? | A. Is that Mr. Smith's radio?
B. Is Mr. Smith's radio that one? |
| (c) A. Are wa <u>Súmisu-san</u> no <u>rájio</u> desu ka?
B. <u>Súmisu-san</u> no <u>rájio</u> wa aré desu ka? | A. Is that Mr. Smith's radio?
B. Is Mr. Smith's radio that one? |

(Use list in Drill 5)

15. Response

- | | |
|--|---|
| Q. <u>Shímizu-san</u> no <u>heyá</u> wa dóre deshoo ka?
A. <u>Shímizu-san</u> no <u>heyá</u> wa <u>kore</u> desu. | Q. Which is Mr. Shimizu's room?
A. Mr. Shimizu's room is this one. |
|--|---|

(Use list in Drill 5)

16. Transposition and grammar

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. <u>Shímizu-san</u> no <u>empitsu</u> wa dóre desu ka?
B. Dóre ga <u>Shímizu-san</u> no <u>empítsú</u> desu ka? | A. Which is Mr. Shimizu's pencil?
B. <u>Which</u> is Mr. Shimizu's pencil? |
|--|---|

(Use list in Drill 5)

14

17. Response

Q. Dóre ga Tanáka-sán nó desu ka?
 A. Koré gá sóo desu.

Q. Which is Mr. Tanaka's?
 A. This is it.

18. Response

Q. Sore ga Súmisu-san no hakó desu ka?
 A. Ēe. Sóo desu.
 (or)
 A. Iie. Koré gá sóo desu.

Q. Is that Mr. Smith's box?
 A. Yes, that's right.
 A. No, this is the one.

(Use list in Drill 5)

19. Grammar

A. Dóre ga Jóonzu-san no rájio desu ka? A. Which one is Mr. Jones' radio?
 B. Dóno rájio ga Jóonzu-san no desu ka? B. Which radio is Mr. Jones'?

(Use list in Drill 5)

20. Conversation

Q. Dóno rájio ga Shímizu-san no desu ka?
 A. Kore desu.
 Q. Sore?
 A. Háí. Sóo desu.

Q. Which radio is Mr. Shimizu's?
 A. It's this one.
 Q. That one? (pointing to one)
 A. Yes, that's right.

21. Conversation

Q. Dóno rájio ga Shímizu-san no desu ka?
 A. Kore desu.
 Q. Kore wa?
 A. Sore wa Tanáka-sán nó desu.

Q. Which radio is Mr. Shimizu's?
 A. It's this one.
 Q. What about this one?
 A. That's Mr. Tanaka's.

22. Substitution

Shímizu-san to Súmisu-san desu.

It's Mr. Shimizu and Mr. Smith.

(Use people's names and objects in Drill 5)

23. Response

- Q. Dóno empitsu to mañnénhitsu ga
Shímizu-san no desu ka?
A. Sono empitsu to sonó mañnénhitsu
desu.

- Q. Which pencil and fountain pen
are Mr. Shimizu's?
A. That pencil and that fountain
pen are.

(Use objects listed in Drill 5)

24. Response

- Q. Dóre to dóre ga Tanáka-sán nó
desu ka?
A. Konó hón to sonó hón ga Tanáka-
sán nó desu.

- Q. Which are Mr. Tanaka's?
A. This book and that book are
Mr. Tanaka's.

25. Response

- Q. Kore wa däre no empitsu desu ka?
A. Tanaka-san ka Shímizu-san no desu.

- Q. Whose pencil is this?
A. It's either Mr. Tanaka's or
Mr. Shimizu's.

26. Response

- Q. Are wa däre no deshita ka?
A. Tanaka-san ka Shímizu-san no
deshita.

- Q. Whose was that?
A. It was either Mr. Tanaka's or
Mr. Shimizu's.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

1. A. Kore wa nán desu ka?
B. Rájio desu.
A. Däre no rájio desu ka? Tanáka-sán nó desu ka?
B. Iie. Sore wa Súmisu-san no deshoo. Are ga Tanáka-sán nó desu.
2. A. Kore wa nán deshoo ka?
B. Mañnénhitsu ka empítsú déshóo.
A. Däre no desu ka?
B. Shímizu-san ka Tanáka-sán nó desu.
-
- B. Tanáka-sán nó deshita ka?
A. Sóo deshita.
B. Are wa nán deshita ka? Empítsú deshita ka, mañnénhitsu deshita ka?
A. Are wa rájio deshita.

3. A. Sore wa dare no mannénhitsu desu ka?
 B. Koré desu ka?
 A. Ée.
 B. Shímizu-san no desu.
 A. Déwa Jóonzu-san no mannénhitsu wa dóre desu ka?
 B. Jóonzu-san no? Jóonzu-san no wa kore desu.
 A. Sore wa? (pointing to another one)
 B. Sore wa Súmisu-san no desu.
4. A. Dóre ga Jóonzu-san no hón desu ka? Koré desu ka?
 B. Iie. Koré ga sóo desu.
 A. Déwa konó hón wa?
 B. Sore wa Shímizu-san no deshoo.
5. A. Dóno pen ga Shímizu-san no desu ka?
 B. Konó pén ka sonó pén ga Shímizu-san no desu.
 A. Kore to soré desu ka?
 B. Hái.
6. A. Dóno heya ga Súmisu-san no desu ka?
 B. Konó héyá desu.
 A. Déwa sonó héyá wa Shímizu-san no desu ka?
 B. Hái, sóo desu.
7. A. Jóonzu-san no tabako wa dóre desu ka? Koré desu ka, soré desu ka?
 B. Sore wa Súmisu-san no desu. Koré ga Jóonzu-san no deshoo.
8. (Someone came to the door and B went to see who it was)
 A. Dare deshita ka?
 B. Súmisu-san deshita.
- 9.X A. Dare no máchi daroo. Tanáká-sán nó daroo ka.
 X B. Tanáká nó daroo.

10. Sonó rájio wa Tanáká nó héyá nó de aru.

EXERCISES

- A. Insert the proper particle, wherever one is appropriate.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kore ____ hón desu. | This is a book. |
| 2. Dare ____ heyá desu ka? | Whose room is it? |
| 3. Dare ____ desu ka? | Who is it? |
| 4. Dare ____ desu ka? | Whose is it? |
| 5. Tanaka-san ____ mannénhitsu ____ kore desu. | Mr. Tanaka's fountain pen is this one. |
| 6. Sore ____ Shímizu-san no empitsu desu. | <u>That</u> is Mr. Shimizu's pencil. |

7. Konó hón ____ sonó pén ____ Tanáká-sán ____ desu.
8. Dóre ____ dóre ____ Súmisu-san no deshoo ka?
9. Are ____ nán deshita ka?
10. Sore ____ desu.
11. Pén ____ émpítsú déshóo.
12. Tanaka-san ____ Shimizu-san desu.
13. Tanaka-san ____ Shimizu-san desu.
14. Konó hón desu ____ sonó hón desu ____?

This book and that pen are Miss Tanaka's.

I wonder which are Mr. Smith's?

What was that (as of a noise)?

It's that one.

It's probably a pen or a pencil.

It's Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Shimizu.

It's either Mr. Tanaka or Mr. Shimizu.

Is it this book or is it that book?

B. Insert one of the following, kore, sore, are, dóre, kono, sono, ano, or dóno, whichever is appropriate.

1. ____ to ____ ga Shímizu-san no desu. This one and that one are Mr. Shimizu's.
2. ____ hito to ____ hito desu. It's that person and that person way over there.
3. ____ rájio wa dáre no desu ka? Whose radio is this? (Whose is this radio?)
4. ____ heya desu ka? Which room is it?
5. ____ ga sóo desu. This is it.
6. Tanáká-sán nó wa ____ desu ka? Mr. Tanaka's is which one?
7. ____ wa nán desu ka? What's that thing way over there?
8. ____ ga Jóonzu-san no hón desu ka? Which is Mr. Jones' book?
9. Jóonzu-san no wa ____ desu. Mr. Jones' is this one.
10. ____ Sumisu-san desu ka? Which Mr. Smith do you mean?

C. Give the questions to which the following would be responses. The occurrence or omission of hái or ie is of significance.

1. Sore wa émpitsu desu.
2. Súmisu-san no desu.
3. Koré ga Shímizu-san no desu.
4. Kore wa Shímizu-san no desu.
5. Konó mánnénhitsu ga Tanáká-sán nó desu.
6. Konó hón wa Súmisu-san no desu.
7. Kore to sore ga Tanáká-sán nó desu.
8. Are wa Jóonzu-san no deshita.
9. Súmisu-san deshita.
10. Kore desu.
11. Kore ka sore ga Shímizu-san no deshoo.
12. Sonó rájio desu.
13. Háí. Anó hito wa Jóonzu-san desu.
14. Háí. Sore desu.

D. Use the appropriate form of désu (semi-formal, unless otherwise specified).

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. Sore wa mǎtchi _____ ka? | Are those matches? |
| 2. Anó hito _____. | It's probably that man. |
| 3. Kore wa nan _____ ka? | I wonder what this is? |
| X 4. Kore _____. | It's this (informal style). |
| 5. Rájio _____. | It was a radio. |
| X 6. Kore wa dare no _____? | I wonder whose this is (informal style)? |
| 7. Dáre _____ ka? | Who was it? |
| X 8. Aré _____ ka? | I wonder if it's that thing way over there (informal style)? |

E. Insert dáre, dóre, or dóno in the following blanks.

- _____ hako ga Jóonzu-san no desu ka?
- Jóonzu-san no hako wa _____ desu ka?
- _____ hon ga Tanáká-sǎn nó desu ka?
- Tanáká-sǎn nó hón wa _____ desu ka?
- _____ to _____ ga Sumisu-san no desu ka?
- _____ pen to _____ empitsu ga Sumisu-san no desu ka?
- Sumisu-san no wa _____ to _____ desu ka?
- _____ hito ga Shímizu-san desu ka?
- Shímizu-san wa _____ hito desu ka?
- Are wa _____ no mǎtchi deshoo?
- Shímizu-san no mǎtchi wa _____ deshoo?
- Konó hón to tabako wa _____ no deshoo ka?

F. Transpose the first and second parts of the following sentences and make any necessary particle changes.

Example: Anó hito wa Tanaka-san desu.
Tanaka-san wa anó hito desu.

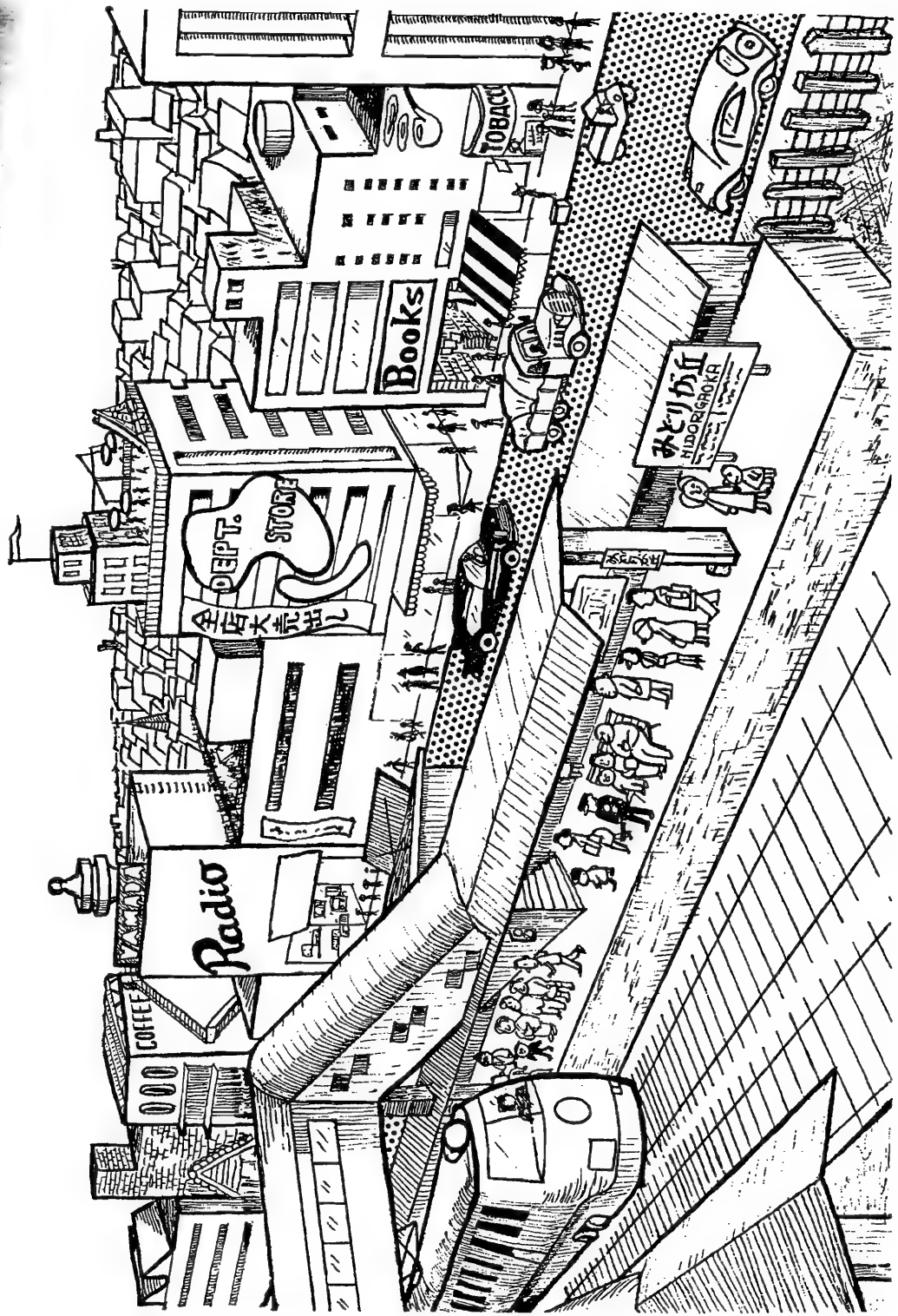
- Sore wa Sumisu-san no empítsú désu ka?
- Sumisu-san no hón wa dóre desu ka?
- Tanaka-san no mannénhitsu wa kore desu.
- Dóre to dóre ga Shímizu-san no desu ka?
- Aré wa Tanáká-sǎn nó desu.
- Dóre ga Shímizu-san no desu ka?
- Jóonzu-san wa anó hito deshoo.
- Dóno hito ga Jóonzu-san desu ka?
- Kore wa Sumisu-san no tabako desu.
- Dóre ga Tanaka-san no heyá desu ka?
- Dóno heyá ga Tanaka-san no heyá desu ka?
- Jóonzu-san no mannénhitsu wa soré déshoo.

LESSON II

watakushi	I
anata	you
uchi	1) house, home; 2) my house, my home, my family; 3) our (when used as a modifier, followed by <u>no</u> , the accent disappears)
otaku	1) your house, your home, your office; 2) your family; 3) his house, his home; 4) you
depáato	department store
éki	station (train)
hikidashi	drawer
isu	chair
tatémono	building
tsukue	desk
-ya	small store; storekeeper (also occurs with <u>-san</u>)
aida	between
māe	1) before, in front of (location); 2) before (time)
nāka	1) inside, inner, in; 2) among
shita	bottom, below, lower, under
sōba	near, beside, proximity
tonari	next, nextdoor
ue	top, above, upper, on
ushiro	behind, rear
koko	here
soko	there
asoko	there (in the distance)
dōko	where?
ima	now
āru	to be (of inanimate objects), to exist, there is (intr.)
iru	to be (of living things), to be [here], to be [there], to live (intr.)
āa	oh!

USEFUL CLASSROOM PHRASES

Onaji desu.	It's the same.
Chigaimasu.	That's wrong. That's different.
Sumimasén.	Excuse me (also used in making a request).
Goménásái.	I'm sorry (when you have committed an error).
Arigatoo gozaimasu.	Thank you.
Ohayoo gozaimasu.	Good morning (said up to about 11 a.m.).
Konnichi wa.	Hello (said during the daytime).
Komban wa.	Good evening (not said in taking leave of someone).



PATTERN PASSAGE

A. Sono hikidashi no naka ni empitsu
ga arimasu ka?

B. Iie. Mannénhitsu wa arimasu ga,
empitsu wa arimasén.

A. Déwa tsukue no shitá ka sono isu
no ué ni áru deshoo ka?

B. Iie. Kokó ní mo arimasén. Ano
hako no naka de wa arimasén ka?

A. Is there a pencil in that
drawer?

B. No. There's a fountain pen,
but there isn't a pencil.

A. Then, I wonder if there is one
under the desk or on that
chair?

B. No. There isn't any here,
either. It isn't in that
box?

.....

A. Anáta no uchi wa éki no sóba
deshoo ka?

B. Háí. Éki no mae no tabakoya no
ushiro ga watakúshí nó úchí
desu.

Otaku wa?

A. Uchi wa hónya to rajioya no aida
desu.

A. Is your house near the station?

B. Yes. The one that's in back of
the tobacco store, in front
of the station, is my house.
And your house is...?

A. My house is between the book-
store and the radio store.

.....

A. Tonari no heyá ni dare ga imashita
ka?

B. Tanaka-san to Shimizu-san ga
imashita.

A. Sumisu-san ya Joonzu-san wa imasén
deshita ka?

B. Háí. Sumisu-san mo Joonzu-san mo
imasén deshita ga...

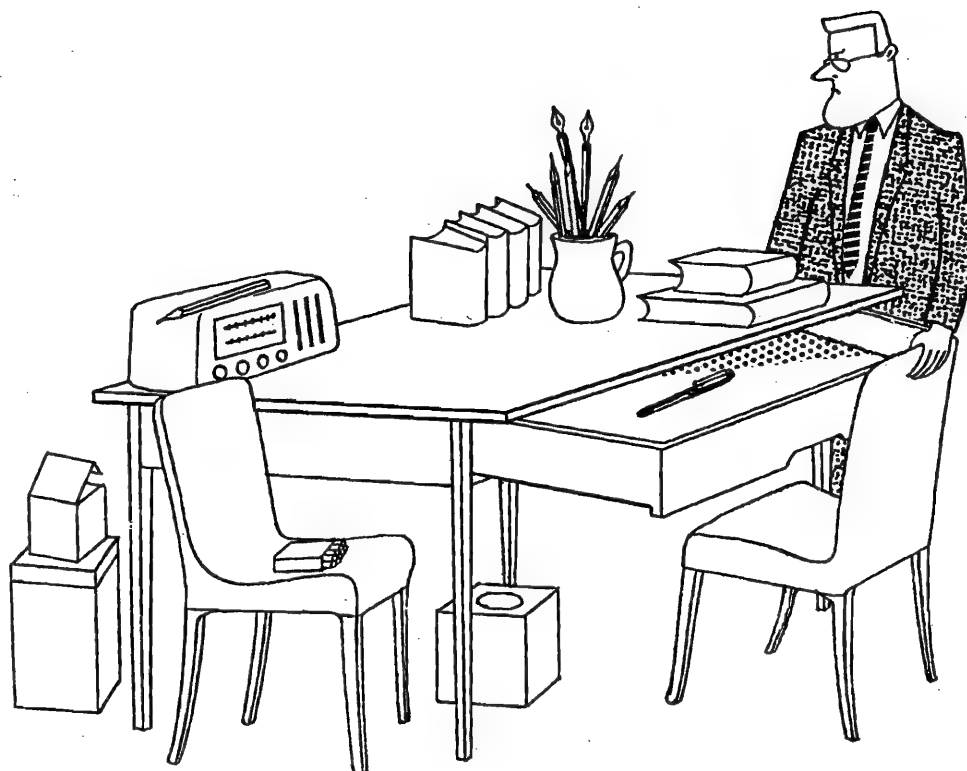
A. Who was in the next room?

B. Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Shimizu
were [there].¹

A. Weren't (others like) Mr. Smith
and Mr. Jones [there]?

B. No. Neither Mr. Smith nor Mr.
Jones was [there].

1. These brackets around "here" and "there" will be omitted after this lesson.



GRAMMAR

2.1 Conjugation of verbs

Japanese verbs, with the exception of a few irregular ones, fall into two categories: the first conjugation in which the non-past (or infinitive) form of the verb ends in eru or iru (verbs ending in eru or iru but which are not first-conjugation verbs will be noted in the vocabulary list); and the second conjugation which includes all other verbs (with the exception of irregular verbs which will be noted).

The stem of a first-conjugation verb ends with the vowel i or e to which suffixes are directly added. Ru is the suffix for the informal non-past form of the first conjugation.

EXAMPLES:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>Stem</u>	<u>Informal non-past suffix</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
iru	i	ru	I am [here], he is [here], etc.
miru	mi	ru	I see, he sees, etc.
tabéru	tabe	ru	I eat, he eats, etc.
déru	de	ru	I go out, he goes out, etc.

The stem of a second-conjugation verb ends with a consonant. U is the suffix for the informal non-past of the second conjugation and su when the stem ends in "t." In second-conjugation verbs such as kau, the stem ends with a silent "w," ka(w)u, which is apparent only in certain forms (to be noted later).

EXAMPLES:

Verb	Stem	Informal non-past suffix	Meaning
áru	ar	u	I have, etc.; there is
káku	kak	u	I write, he writes, etc.
isógu	isog	u	I hurry, he hurries, etc.
yakúsu	yakus	u	I translate, he translates, etc.
yómu	yom	u	I read, he reads, etc.
yobu	yob	u	I call, he calls, etc.
kau	ka(w)	u	I buy, he buys, etc.
mátsu	mat	su	I wait, he waits, etc.

2.2 Levels of formality: the masu form

There are three major degrees of formality: the informal, the semi-formal, and the formal (or honorific) language. The semi-formal form of a verb is the stem of a first-conjugation verb plus masu and the stem of a second-conjugation verb plus imasu. A sentence which ends in the masu form is medium polite. (See introduction.) The following is a simplified chart of the two conjugations, giving the levels of formality and the various tenses of the masu form. (An asterisk * denotes that the form will be taught later.)

FIRST CONJUGATION (iru)

TENSE	FORMALITY			ENGLISH
	INFORMAL	SEMI-FORMAL	FORMAL	
NON-PAST	i-ru	i-masu	*	I am, he is, etc.; I will be, he will be, etc.
PERFECTIVE	*	i-máshita	*	I was, he was, etc.
NEGATIVE NON-PAST	*	i-másén	*	I am not, he is not, etc. I will not be, etc.
NEGATIVE PERFECTIVE	*	i-másén deshita	*	I was not, etc.
TENTATIVE	*	i-máshóo	*	I shall remain; let us remain

SECOND CONJUGATION (áru)

TENSE	FORMALITY			ENGLISH
	INFORMAL	SEMI-FORMAL	FORMAL	
NON-PAST	ar-u	ar-imasu	*	there is, there are; I have, he has, etc.
PERFECTIVE	*	ar-ímashita	*	there was, there were; I had, etc.
NEGATIVE NON-PAST	*	ar-ímásén	*	there is not, there are not; I do not have, etc.
NEGATIVE PERFECTIVE	*	ar-ímásén deshita	*	there was not, there were not; I did not have, etc.

* With a second-conjugation verb whose stem ends in "s," s-imasu becomes shimasu; with a second-conjugation verb whose stem ends in "t," t-imasu becomes chimasu.

2.3 Tenses and aspects

(a) The non-past, in all its politeness or formality levels, expresses habitual or frequent occurrence of an action or a specific occurrence in the future.

EXAMPLES:

tabéru.	I will eat, he will eat, etc.; I eat, he eats, etc.
tabemasu.	I will eat, he will eat, etc.; I eat, he eats, etc.
káku.	I will write, he will write, etc.; I write, he writes, etc.
kakimasu.	I will write, he will write, etc.; I write, he writes, etc.

(b) The perfective expresses the completion of an action and often equals the past tense in English.

EXAMPLES:

ímashita.	I was [there], etc.; he was [there], etc.
arímashita.	It was there, there was, etc.; I had [it] [them], etc.
tabémashita.	I ate, he ate, etc.

(c) The tentative has the meaning "let's," "shall we" (if followed by the interrogative particle ka) or "I shall." The speaker is always included in the action. (See 3.1)

EXAMPLES:

imáshóo.	Let's remain [here].
imáshóo ka?	Shall we remain [here]?
tabémáshóo.	Let's eat. I shall eat.
tabémáshóo ka?	Shall we eat?

2.4 Person and number

There is no distinction of person or number in the verb in the informal or semi-formal levels of speech. Imasu, for example, refers to any person or number, "I am," "he is," "she is," "we are," "you are," "they are." The tentative form, however, occurs only in the first person, singular or plural.

EXAMPLES:

imáshita.	I was [here]. I was [there].
imáshita.	He was [here]. He was [there].
imáshita.	She was [here]. She was [there].
imáshita.	We were [here]. We were [there].
imáshita.	You were [here]. You were [there].
imáshita.	They were [here]. They were [there].

2.5 Verbs áru and iru

Áru occurs in reference to inanimate objects and iru, in reference to animate objects, both with the meaning, "to be" or "to exist." Áru also denotes possession, "I have," "he has," etc.

EXAMPLES:

Rájio ga aru.	There is a radio. I have a radio.
Rájio ga arimasu.	There is a radio. I have a radio.
Rájio ga arímáshita.	There was a radio. I had a radio.
Tanaka-san wa rájio ga arímáshita.	Mr. Tanaka had a radio.
Shímizu-san ga iru.	Mr. Shimizu is [here]. Mr. Shimizu is [there].
Shímizu-san ga imasu.	Mr. Shimizu is [here]. Mr. Shimizu is [there].
Shímizu-san ga imáshita.	Mr. Shimizu was [here]. Mr. Shimizu was [there].

2.6 Particle ya

The particle ya occurs between nouns with the meaning "and" when a partial listing of items rather than a complete listing is being made. It indicates that among various items, there are things like (such things as) "... and" Compare with to (1.11).

EXAMPLES:

Isu ya tsukue ga arimasu.

There are (such things as) chairs and desks.

Hón ya ẽmpitsu ga arimasu.

There are (such things as) books and pencils.

Shímizu-san ya Tanaka-san ga imasu.

There are (such people as) Mr. Shimizu and Mr. Tanaka.

2.7 Particle mo

The particle mo, meaning "also," "too," or "even," occurs after nouns or other particles (except the particles o, ga, and wa, which it replaces). There are times, however, when mo indicating the subject has no more meaning than the particle ga.

EXAMPLES:

Súmisu-san ga imóshita.

Mr. Smith was [there].

Súmisu-san mo imóshita.

Mr. Smith was also [there].

Sonó hón wa arímásén.

I don't have that book. That book isn't [here].

Sonó hón mo arímásén.

I don't have that book either. That book isn't here either.

Empitsu o kaímáshita.

I bought a pencil.

Empitsu mo kaímáshita.

I bought a pencil, also.

Koko ni arimasu.

It's here.

Kokó ní mo arimasu.

It's here, also.

When mo is repeated after two successive words or phrases, it has the meaning "both and" if the predicate is affirmative and "neither... nor...." if the predicate is negative.

EXAMPLES:

Tabako mo máchi mo arimasu.

There are both cigarettes and matches.

Tanaka-san mo Shímizu-san mo imóshita.

I have both cigarettes and matches. Both Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Shimizu were [there].

Empitsu mo pén mo arímásén deshita.

There were neither pens nor pencils. I had neither a pen nor a pencil.

Kokó ní mo asókó ní mo arimasu.

There are some both here and there.

Éki no tonarí ní mo éki no náka ni mo arimasu.

There's one next door to the station and also one in the station.

2.8 Particle ni

The particle ni, indicating location in the sense of "in," "on," "at," etc., occurs after a noun of location, when the predicate of the sentence is a verb of existence such as iru or áru (but not the copula désu).

EXAMPLES:

Tsukúé nó úé ni arimasu.	It's on top of the desk.
Hón wa tsukúé nó úé ni arímásén.	The book is not on top of the desk.
Tsukúé nó úé ni hón ga arimasu.	There is a book on top of the desk.
Koko ni imasu.	He is here.
Shímizu-san wa kokó ní ímásén.	Mr. Shimizu is not here.
Shímizu-san wa éki no máe ni imasu.	Mr. Shimizu is in front of the station.
Éki no máe ni Shímizu-san ga imasu.	Mr. Shimizu is in front of the station.

2.9 Désu and ni arimasu

Désu is used interchangeably with ni arimasu when the meaning is clear from the context and there is no possibility of equating the objects.

(WARNING: If there is a ni of location in a phrase or sentence, the predicate verb which follows is arimasu and not désu.)

EXAMPLES:

Koko ni arimasu.	It's here.
Koko desu.	It's here.
Éki no máe ni imasu.	He's in front of the station.
Éki no máe desu.	He's in front of the station.
Tookyoo ni arimasu.	It's in Tōkyō.
Tookyoo desu.	It's in Tōkyō.

2.10 Particle wa (cont.)

The particle wa, which isolates the preceding word or phrase as the topic of the sentence, occurs after nouns, or nouns followed by particles other than ga, mo, and o (3.7) which it replaces. (Also see 1.5) In a sentence including wa, attention is focused on the topic, and the remainder of the sentence gives information about it.

EXAMPLES:

Koko ni arimasu.	It's here. There are some here.
Kokó ní wa arimasu.	There <u>are</u> some <u>here</u> . There are some <u>here</u> .
Tsukúé nó náka ni arimasu.	It's in the desk. There are some in the desk.
Tsukúé nó náka ni wa arimasu.	There <u>are</u> some <u>in</u> the desk. There are some <u>in</u> the desk.
Kamakúrá e ikímásén.	I don't go to Kamakura.
Kamakúrá e wa ikímásén.	I <u>don't</u> go to <u>Kamakura</u> . I don't go to <u>Kamakura</u> .

Q. Hón ga arímásu ka?

A. Hón wa arímásén.

Are there any books?

There aren't any books. There aren't any books.

Q. Tanaka-san ga imásu ka?

A. Tanaka-san wa imásén.

Is Mr. Tanaka [there]?

Mr. Tanaka is not [here]. Mr. Tanaka isn't [here].

(Note the use of wa in the following examples where two items are being contrasted.)

Q. Tabako mo máichi mo arímásu ka?

Do you have both cigarettes and matches?

A. Tabako wa arímásén ga, máichi wa arimasu.

I don't have cigarettes, but I have some matches.

Q. Tanaka-san mo Shímizu-san mo imásu ka?

Are both Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Shimizu [there]?

A. Tanaka-san wa imásén ga, Shímizu-san wa imasu.

Mr. Tanaka isn't [here], but Mr. Shimizu is.

Compare the above two sets of questions and answers with the following two. In the examples below, the first part of the reply is sufficient as an answer. The latter part is extra information.

Q. Tabako ga arímásu ka?

Do you have any cigarettes?

A. Tabako wa arímásén ga, máichi ga arimasu.

I don't have cigarettes, but I have some matches.

Q. Tanaka-san ga imásu ka?

Is Mr. Tanaka [there]?

A. Tanaka-san wa imásén ga, Shímizu-san ga imasu.

Mr. Tanaka isn't [here], but Mr. Shimizu is.

(Note the frequent use of wa with a negative predicate.)

2.11 Conjunction ga

The ga which occurs after the copula, verbal adjectives (Lesson VIII), and verbs is the conjunction ga (as opposed to the particle ga) and means "but," "however," or sometimes "and."

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san wa imásu ga, Shímizu-san wa imásén.

Mr. Tanaka is [there], but Mr. Shimizu is not.

Tabako wa arímásén ga, máichi wa arimasu.

I don't have cigarettes, but I have some matches.

Tanaka-san wa imáshita ga, Shímizu-san wa imásén deshita.

Mr. Tanaka was [there], but Mr. Shimizu was not.

Watakúshí nó wa koré desu ga, anáta no wa dóre desu ka?

This is mine, but (and) which one is yours?

Kinóo deshita ga, ikímásén deshita.

It was yesterday, but I didn't go.

The second part of the sentence, i.e. the part following the conjunction ga, is often left unexpressed. This gives a feeling of doubt, uncertainty, or reservation similar to the use of "I know, but...."

EXAMPLES:

Kokó ní ímashita ga...

He was here...

(but I don't know where he is now).

Hái. Tanáká desu ga...

Yes, I'm Tanaka, but...

(who are you? On the telephone).

Ikítái desu ga...

I'd like to go, but...

(I really can't).

2.12 Semi-formal negative of desu

The conjugation of desu is different from that of verbs and its semi-formal negative forms are as follows:

dé wa arímásén

negative non-past

It is not

dé wa arímásén deshita

negative perfective

It was not

EXAMPLES:

Hikidashi dé wa arímásén.

It isn't a drawer.

Tanaka-san dé wa arímásén deshita.

It wasn't Mr. Tanaka.

Koko dé wa arímásén.

It isn't this place. It isn't here.

Compare the following sets of sentences.

Empitsu desu.

It's a pencil.

Empitsu dé wa arímásén.

It isn't a pencil.

Empitsu ga arimasu.

There is a pencil.

Empitsu wa arímásén.

There isn't a pencil. I haven't a pencil.

(Note: The difference in meaning of the second and fourth sentences and the importance of the de.)

2.13 Verb plus deshóo

Deshóo after the informal non-past or perfective of verbs (and verbal adjectives) gives a feeling of uncertainty and makes the sentence less positive than one ending with the verb.

EXAMPLES:

Isu ga arimasu.

There are some chairs.

Isu ga áru deshoo.

There are probably some chairs.

Tanaka-san wa uchi ni imasu.

Mr. Tanaka is at home.

Tanaka-san wa uchi ni irú deshoo.

Mr. Tanaka is probably at home.

Isu wa arímásén.

There aren't any chairs.

Isu wa náí deshoo.

There probably aren't any chairs.

(Note: This form is seldom used of the first person.)

ing c
answe
simil

EXAMP

ing c
is in
Engli

EXAMP

info
actu
use

EXAM

if i
the

2.14 Response to negative questions

(a) To a negatively phrased question in which the questioner is seeking confirmation of something he thinks is true but isn't quite sure of, the answer, "yes" or "no," is based on the actual situation. (This will be similar to the English usage.)

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Q. Tanaka-san dé wa arímásén ka? | Aren't you Mr. Tanaka? |
| A. Ée. Tanaka desu. | Yes, I'm Tanaka. |
| A. Iie. Shímizu desu ga... | No, I'm Shimizu. |
| Q. Anáta no hón de wa arímásén ka? | Isn't it your book? |
| A. Ée. Watakúshí nó desu. | Yes, it's mine. |
| A. Iie. Watakúshí nó de wa arímásén. | No, it isn't mine. |

(b) To a negatively phrased question in which the questioner is seeking confirmation of something which surprises him, the answer, "yes" or "no," is in agreement or disagreement with the question. (This will be unlike English usage.)

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Q. Soko ni ẽmpitsu ga arímásén ka? | You mean there's not a pencil there? |
| A. Ée. Arímásén. | No. There aren't any. (Yes, you're right. There aren't any.) |
| A. Iie. Arimasu. | Yes. There are. (No, you're wrong. There are some.) |
| Q. Tanaka-san wa ikímásén deshita ka? | Did Mr. Tanaka really not go? |
| A. Ée. Ikímásén deshita. | No, he didn't go. (Yes, you're right. He didn't go.) |
| A. Iie. Ikímáshita. | Yes, he went. (No, you're wrong. He went.) |

(c) To a negatively phrased question in which the questioner is seeking information, "yes" or "no" may be omitted and the reply will be based on the actual situation. (There is some disagreement among native speakers in the use of "yes" and "no" in this situation.)

EXAMPLE:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Q. Soko ni ẽmpitsu wa arímásén ka? | Is there (not) a pencil there? |
| A. Arimasu. | There is. |
| A. Arímásén. | There isn't. |

2.15 Omission of the subject

A characteristic feature of Japanese is the tendency to omit the subject if it is already clear from the context. This is common in dialogue where the question refers to the second person and the answer to the first person.

EXAMPLES:

Q. Ikímásu ka?
A. Ée. Ikimasu.

Are you going?
Yes, I'm going.

Q. Arímásu ka?
A. Ée. Arimasu.

Do you have it? Is it there?
Yes, I have it. Yes, it's there.

DRILL

1. Grammar (to the perfective)

(arimasu)	Arímáshita.	(there is)	There was.
(imasu)	Imáshita.	(he is [here])	He was [here].
(arímásén)	Arímásén deshita.	(there is not)	There was not.
(imásén)	Imásén deshita.	(he is not [here])	He was not [here].

2. Substitution

Mae arímáshita.	There was one before.
(arímásén deshita) Mae arímásén deshita.	There wasn't one before.
(imáshita) Mae imáshita.	He was [here] before.
(imásén deshita) Mae imásén deshita.	He wasn't [here] before.

3. Substitution

Íma arimasu.	There is one now.
(arímásén) Íma arímásén.	There isn't one now.
(imasu) Íma imasu.	He is [here] now.
(imásén) Íma imásén.	He isn't [here] now.

4. Substitution

Depáato ga arimasu.	There is a department store.
(éki) Éki ga arimasu.	There is a station.
(hikidashi) Hikidashi ga arimasu.	There is a drawer.
(hónya) Hónya ga arimasu.	There is a bookstore.
(isu) Isu ga arimasu.	There is a chair.
(rajioya) Rajioya ga arimasu.	There is a radio store.
(tabakoya) Tabakoya ga arimasu.	There is a tobacco store.
(tatémono) Tatémono ga arimasu.	There is a building.
(tsukue) Tsukue ga arimasu.	There is a desk.
(Tanaka-san no uchi) Tanaka-san no uchi ga arimasu.	There is Mr. Tanaka's house.

(watak
(anata

5. Re

Q. Is

A. He

(or)

A. If

(depá

(éki)

(hiki

(hóny

(raji

(taba

(taté

(tsuk

(empi

(hako

(mañ

(hón)

6. R

Q. I

A. I

(Use

7. R

Q. I

A. I

(Use

8. C

(Tsu

Tsu

(Isu

Isu

(Dep

Dep

(Éki

Éki

(Hón

Hón

(Raj

Raj

(Tab

Tab

(watakushi no uchi) Watakushi no uchi ga arimasu. There is my house.
 (anata no uchi) Anata no uchi ga arimasu. There is your house.

5. Response

Q. Isu ga arimasu ka?A. Hai. Arimasu.

(or)

A. Iie. Arimasén.

(depáato)

(éki)

(hikidashi)

(hónya)

(rajioya)

(tabakoya)

(tatémono)

(tsukue)

(empitsu)

(hako)

(mannénhitsu)

(hón)

Q. Is there a chair?

A. Yes, there is.

A. No, there isn't.

6. Response

Q. Isu ga arimasu ka?A. Iie. Isu wa arimasén.

(Use list in Drill 5.)

Q. Is there a chair?

A. No, there isn't a chair.

7. Response

Q. Isú desu ka?A. Iie. Isú dé wa arimasén.

(Use list in Drill 5.)

Q. Is it a chair?

A. No, it isn't a chair.

8. Grammar (ga to mo)

(Tsukue ga arimasu)

Tsukue mo arimasu.

(Isu ga arimasu.)

Isu mo arimasu.

(Depáato ga arimasu.)

Depáato mo arimasu.

(Éki ga arimasu.)

Éki mo arimasu.

(Hónya ga arimasu.)

Hónya mo arimasu.

(Rajioya ga arimasu.)

Rajioya mo arimasu.

(Tabakoya ga arimasu.)

Tabakoya mo arimasu.

(There is a desk.)

There is also a desk.

(There is a chair.)

There is also a chair.

(There is a department store.)

There is also a department store.

(There is a station.)

There is also a station.

(There is a bookstore.)

There is also a bookstore.

(There is a radio store.)

There is also a radio store.

(There is a tobacco store.)

There is also a tobacco store.

9. Grammar (to "and" to mo...mo "both...and...")

(Éki to depáato ga arimasu.)	(There is a station and a department store.)
Éki mo depáato mo arimasu.	There is both a station and a department store.
(Isu to tsukue ga arimasu.)	(There is a chair and a desk.)
Isu mo tsukue mo arimasu.	There is both a chair and a desk.
(Hōnya to tabakoya ga arimasu.)	(There is a bookstore and a tobacco store.)
Hōnya mo tabakoya mo arimasu.	There is both a bookstore and a tobacco store.
(Hōnya to rajioya ga arimasu.)	(There is a bookstore and a radio store.)
Hōnya mo rajioya mo arimasu.	There is both a bookstore and a radio store.
(Mañnénhitsu to empitsu ga arimasu.)	(There is a fountain pen and a pencil.)
Mañnénhitsu mo empitsu mo arimasu.	There is both a fountain pen and a pencil.

10. Response

Q. Tsukue mo isu mo arimasu ka?
 A. Tsukue wa arimasu ga, isu wa arimasén.

Q. Are there both desks and chairs?
 A. There are desks but there are no chairs.

(Use list in Drill 9)

11. Grammar (to "and" to ya "such things asand....")

(Éki to depáato ga arimasu.)	(There is a station and a department store.)
Éki ya depáato ga arimasu.	There are such things as stations and department stores.
(Isu to tsukue ga arimasu.)	(There are chairs and desks.)
Isu ya tsukue ga arimasu.	There are such things as chairs and desks.
(Hōnya to tabakoya ga arimasu.)	(There are bookstores and tobacco stores.)
Hōnya ya tabakoya ga arimasu.	There are such things as bookstores and tobacco stores.
(Hōnya to rajioya ga arimasu.)	(There are bookstores and radio stores.)
Hōnya ya rajioya ga arimasu.	There are such things as bookstores and radio stores.
(Mañnénhitsu to empitsu ga arimasu.)	(There are fountain pens and pencils.)
Mañnénhitsu ya empitsu ga arimasu.	There are such things as fountain pens and pencils.

12. Substitution

(a) <u>Hōnya</u> wa kōko desu.	The bookstore is here.
(éki)	Éki wa kōko desu.
(rajioya)	Rajioya wa kōko desu.
	The station is here.
	The radio store is here.

(tabak

(watak

(Súm

uc

(Shí

uc

(Tanak

uc

(b) F

(Use I

(c) F

(Use I

13. C

(a) A

I

(b) A

I

(c) I

(Use

14.

Q. I

A. I

(Tan

(Tan

(Shí

(Shí

(Súm

(Súm

(tabakoya)	Tabakoya wa kôko desu.	The tobacco store is here.
(watakushi no uchi)	Watakushi no uchi wa kôko desu.	My house is here.
(Sûmisu-san no uchi)	Sûmisu-san no uchi wa kôko desu.	Mr. Smith's house is here.
(Shîmizu-san no uchi)	Shîmizu-san no uchi wa kôko desu.	Mr. Shimizu's house is here.
(Tanaka-san no uchi)	Tanaka-san no uchi wa kôko desu.	Mr. Tanaka's house is here.

(b) Hônya wa sôko desu. The bookstore is there.

(Use list in Drill 12a)

(c) Hônya wa asoko desu. The bookstore is over there.

(Use list in Drill 12a)

13. Grammar (desu to ni arimasu)

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (a) A. <u>Tanaka-san no uchi</u> wa kôko desu. | A. Mr. Tanaka's house is here. |
| B. <u>Tanaka-san no uchi</u> wa kôko ni arimasu. | B. Mr. Tanaka's house is here. |
| (b) A. <u>Tanaka-san no uchi</u> wa sôko desu. | A. Mr. Tanaka's house is there. |
| B. <u>Tanaka-san no uchi</u> wa sôko ni arimasu. | B. Mr. Tanaka's house is there. |
| (c) A. <u>Tanaka-san no uchi</u> wa asoko desu. | A. Mr. Tanaka's house is over there. |
| B. <u>Tanaka-san no uchi</u> wa asoko ni arimasu. | B. Mr. Tanaka's house is over there. |

(Use list in Drill 12a)

14. Response

Q. Isu wa doko ni arimasu ka?
A. Isu wa kôko ni arimasu.

Q. Where are the chairs?
A. The chairs are here.

(Tanaka-san no hako)
(Tanaka-san no tabako)
(Shîmizu-san no mannénhitsu)
(Shîmizu-san no rájio)
(Sûmisu-san no hón)
(Sûmisu-san no hako)

15. Conversation

Q. Soko ni empitsu ga arimasu ka?

A. Hái. Arimasu.

Q. Pén wa?A. Pén mo arimasu.

(empitsu, mañnénhitsu)

(tabako, máchi)

(tsukue, isu)

(watakushi no hako, Tanaka-san no hako)

(watakushi no hón, Tanaka-san no hón)

Q. Is there a pencil there?

A. Yes, there is.

Q. And a pen?

A. There is a pen, also.

16. Response

Q. Koko ni tatémono ga arimasu ka?

A. (hái) Hái. Arimasu.

(iie) Iie. Arímásén.

Q. Is there a building here?

A. Yes, there is.

No, there isn't.

(Use list in Drill 5)

17. Response

Q. Koko ni tabako wa arímásén ka?

A. (hái) Hái. Arímásén.

(iie) Iie. Arimasu.

Q. Aren't there any cigarettes here?

A. No, there aren't.
Yes, there are.

(Use list in Drill 5)

18. Substitution

Éki no náka ni arimasu.

It's in the station.

(ue) Éki no ue ni arimasu.

It's above the station.

(shita) Éki no shita ni arimasu.

It's under the station.

(sóba) Éki no sóba ni arimasu.

It's near the station.

(máe) Éki no máe ni arimasu.

It's in front of the station.

(ushiro) Éki no ushiro ni arimasu.

It's behind the station.

(tonari) Éki no tonari ni arimasu.

It's next to the station.

36

19.

Tsuk

(isu

(shi

(hón

(nák

(hik

(ush

(ráj

(sób

(tat

(ton

(uch

(nák

(tsu

(ue)

20.

A.

B.

(ue)

(shi

(mae

(ush

(nák

21.

Q.

A.

(Use

22.

Éki

(éki

19. Progressive Substitution

Tsukue no ué ni arimasu.

(isu) Isu no ué ni arimasu.
 (shita) Isu no shitá ni arimasu.
 (hón) Hón no shitá ni arimasu.
 (náka) Hón no náka ni arimasu.
 (hikidashi) Hikidashi no náka ni arimasu.
 (ushiro) Hikidashi no ushiro ni arimasu.
 (rájio) Rájio no ushiro ni arimasu.
 (sóba) Rájio no sóba ni arimasu.
 (tatémono) Tatémono no sóba ni arimasu.
 (tonari) Tatémono no tonari ni arimasu.
 (uchi) Uchi no tonari ni arimasu.
 (náka) Uchi no náka ni arimasu.
 (tsukue) Tsukue no náka ni arimasu.
 (ue) Tsukue no ué ni arimasu.

It's on top of the desk.
 It's on top of the chair.
 It's under the chair.
 It's under the book.
 It's in the book.
 It's in the drawer.
 It's behind the drawer.
 It's behind the radio.
 It's near the radio.
 It's near the building.
 It's next door to the building.
 It's next door to the house.
 It's in the house.
 It's in the desk.
 It's on top of the desk.

20. Grammar

A. Tsukue no sóba desu.
 B. Tsukue no sóba de wa arimasén.
 (ue)
 (shita)
 (mae)
 (ushiro)
 (náka)

It's near the desk.
 It's not near the desk.

21. Response

Q. Tsukue no ué ni náni ga arimasu ka?

Q. What is there on top of the desk?

A. Empitsu ga arimasu.

A. There are pencils.

(Use objects and drawings)

22. Substitution

Éki to depáato no aida desu.

It's between the department store and the station.

(éki to rajioya) Éki to rajioya no aida desu.

It's between the station and the radio store.

(rajioya to depáato) Rajioya to depáato no aida desu.
 (hónya to rajioya) Hónya to rajioya no aida desu.
 (tabakoya to hónya) Tabakoya to hónya no aida desu.
 (hónya to uchi) Hónya to uchi no aida desu.
 (Shímizu-san no uchi to Tanaka-san no uchi) Shímizu-san no uchi to Tanaka-san no uchi no aida desu.

It's between the radio store and the department store.
 It's between the radio store and the bookstore.
 It's between the tobacco store and the bookstore.
 It's between the bookstore and our house.
 It's between Mr. Shimizu's house and Mr. Tanaka's house.

23. Response

Q. Soko ni däre ga imasu ka?
 A. Tanaka-san ga imasu.

Q. Who's there?
 A. Mr. Tanaka is [there].

(Use a drawing or point to the students)

24. Response

Q. Däre ga Shímizu-san no tonari ni imasu ka?
 A. Tanaka-san ga imasu.

Q. Who is [sitting] next to Mr. Shimizu?
 A. Mr. Tanaka is.

(Use a drawing or members of the class)

25. Response

Q. Tanaka-san no tonari wa däre desu ka?
 A. Súmisu-san desu.

Q. Who is that next to Mr. Tanaka?
 A. It's Mr. Smith.

(Use a drawing or members of the class)

26. Expansion

Shímizu-san to Tanaka-san no aida no hitó wa Jóonzu-san desu.

The man between Mr. Shimizu and Mr. Tanaka is Mr. Jones.

(Jóonzu-san desu) Jóonzu-san desu.

It's Mr. Jones.

(aida no hitó wa) Aida no hitó wa Jóonzu-san desu.

The man in between is Mr. Jones.

(Shímizu-san to Tanaka-san no) Shímizu-san to Tanaka-san no aida no hitó wa Jóonzu-san desu.

The man between Mr. Shimizu and Mr. Tanaka is Mr. Jones.

(Use classroom situation)

27. Correlation Substitution

Tanaka-san ga irú deshoo.

Mr. Tanaka is probably [there].

(hón)

Hón ga áru deshoo.

There probably are some books.

Tanaka-san ga irú deshoo.

Mr. Tanaka is probably there.

(hón)

Hón ga áru deshoo.

There probably are some books.

(Shímizu-san) Shímizu-san ga irú deshoo.

Mr. Shimizu is probably [there].

(tabakoya)

Tabakoya ga áru deshoo.

There probably is a tobacco store.

(Jóonzu-san)

Jóonzu-san ga irú deshoo.

Mr. Jones is probably [there].

(depáato)

Depáato ga áru deshoo.

There probably is a department store.

(Súmisu-san)

Súmisu-san ga irú deshoo.

Mr. Smith is probably [there].

(isu)

Isu ga áru deshoo.

There probably are some chairs.

(Tanaka-san)

Tanaka-san ga irú deshoo.

Mr. Tanaka is probably [there].

28. Grammar (inserting wa)A. Tsukue no ué ni arimasu.

A. It's on top of the desk.

B. Tsukue no ué ni wa arimasu.B. There is one on top of the desk.

(Use sentences in Drill 18)

29. Grammar (insert mo)A. Tsukue no ué ni arimasu.

A. It's on top of the desk.

B. Tsukue no ué ni mo arimasu.

B. There is one on top of the desk, also.

(Use sentences in Drill 18)

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

1. A. Empitsu ga arímásu ka?

B. Ée. Áru deshoo.

A. Dóko ni?

B. Tsukue no ué ni arímásén ka?

A. Háí. Tsukúé nó ué ni wa arímásén ga...

B. Déwa hikidashi no náka ni wa?

A. Áa. Hikidashi ní wa arímáshita.

2. A. Sono hako no náka ni náni ga arímásu ka?

B. Konó hákó désu ka?

A. Ée. Sono ue no hako.

B. Kono náka ni wa empitsu ya pén ga arimasu.

A. Mannénhitsu wa?

B. Áa. Mannénhitsu mo arimasu.

- A. Shita nó hákó ní wa nani ga arimasu ka?
B. Hón ga arimasu.
3. (Á-san to B-san wa éki no mae ni imasu.)
A. Éki no mae no anó tátémono wa nán desu ka?
B. Are wa depáato desu.
A. Áa, sóo desu ka? Mae asoko ni depáato ga arimashita ka?
B. Iie. Mae arimasén deshita.
4. A. Watakushi no hón ga soko ni arimasén ka?
B. Háí. Arimasén ga...
A. Sono isu no sóba ni arimasén ka?
B. Háí.
A. Dóko deshoo ka.
(A returns after looking in the next room)
B. Tonári nó héyá ni mo arimasén deshita ka?
A. Ée.
B. Áa, koko ni arimasu.
A. Dóko ni.
B. Rájio no ushiro ni arimashita.
5. A. Anáta no uchi wa dóko desu ka? Ano tabakoya no tonári désu ka?
B. Watakushi no uchi? Iie. Sóo de wa arimasén. Asoko ni hónya ga áru deshoo? Ano tonari no uchi ga, sóo desu.
A. Áa. Ano hónya to rájioya no aida désu ka?
B. Ée, sóo desu.
6. A. Tanaka-san mo Shímizu-san mo soko ni imasu ka?
B. Iie. Kokó ní wa imasén ga...
A. Dóko ni irú déshoo ka.
B. Yamamoto-san no uchi de wa arimasén ka?
A. Áa. Sóo desu ka.
7. A. Tanaka-san no uchi ní Joonzu-san mo Súmisu-san mo imashita.
B. Shímizu-san wa? Shímizu-san wa imasén deshita ka?
A. Ée. Shímizu-san wa imasén deshita.

EXERCISES

- A. Change the following verbs and the copula to their negative forms.
1. Tanaka-san wa imashita.
 2. Tanaka-san mo imasu.
 3. Kono tsukue wa hikidashi ga arimasu.
 4. Asoko ni arimashita.
 5. Uchi no tonari desu.
 6. Éki no ushiro ni arimashita.
 7. Shímizu-san no deshita.
 8. Isu to tsukue no aida ni arimasu.

40

9. T
10. D
11. A
12. T

B. S

1. H
2. I
3. S

4. T

5. U
6. T
7. H
8. S

9. T

10. S

C. I

1. T

2. T

3. I

4. I

5. T

6. I

7. I

8. I

9. I

10. I

11. I

12. I

D. I

1. I

2. I

3. I

4. I

9. Tookyoo ni imasu.
10. Depaato no náka desu.
11. Anó tátémono no sóba deshita.
12. Tabakoya no mae ni imáshita.

B. Supply the missing noun of location.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Hikidashi no _____ desu. | It's in the drawer. |
| 2. Isu no _____ ni arimásén ka? | Isn't it under the chair? |
| 3. Sonó tátémono to depaato no _____ ni arimasu. | It's between that building and the department store. |
| 4. Tanaka-san wa éki no _____ ni imasu. | Mr. Tanaka is in front of the station. |
| 5. Uchi no _____ ni wa arimásén. | There isn't one near our house. |
| 6. Tsukue no _____ desu. | It's in back of the desk. |
| 7. Hón no _____ ni arimásén ka? | Isn't it on top of the book? |
| 8. Shímizu-san no otaku no _____ desu. | It's in front of Mr. Shimizu's house. |
| 9. Tabakoya to rajioya no _____ desu. | It's between the tobacco store and the radio store. |
| 10. Súmisu-san no _____ no hitó desu. | It's the man next to Mr. Smith. |

C. Insert particles in the following blanks, wherever they are possible.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Tabakoya _____ rajioya _____ arimasu. | There is a tobacco store and a radio store. |
| 2. Tabako _____ máchi _____ arimasu. | I have both cigarettes and matches. |
| 3. Hónya _____ mae _____ desu. | It's in front of the bookstore. |
| 4. Hónya _____ mae _____ arimasu. | There's one in front of the bookstore, also. |
| 5. Tanaka-san _____ imásén deshita. | Mr. Tanaka wasn't there either. |
| 6. Mannénhitsu _____ arimásén. | There aren't any fountain pens. |
| 7. Mannénhitsu _____ arimásén. | They aren't fountain pens. |
| 8. Éki _____ náka _____ arimásén. | There isn't one inside the station. |
| 9. Empitsu _____ pen _____ arimásén. | There are neither pens nor pencils. |
| 10. Isu _____ tsukue _____ arimásu ka? | Are there such things as chairs and desks? |
| 11. Koko _____ asoko _____ aida deshoo. | It's probably between this place and that place. |
| 12. Anó tátémono _____ áru deshoo. | There's probably one <u>in that building</u> . |

D. Complete the following sentences with désu, arimasu, or imasu.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Uchi no sóba ni _____. | It's near my home. |
| 2. Tsukue no ué ni hón ga _____. | There's a book on the desk. |
| 3. Dóko _____ ka? | Where is it? Where are you? |
| 4. Asoko ni nani ga _____ ka? | What is over there? |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. Shímizu-san no ushiro ni _____. | He is in back of Mr. Shimizu. |
| 6. Anó hito wa dáre _____ ka? | Who is that man? |
| 7. Asoko ni dáre ga _____ ka? | Who is there? |
| 8. Soko ni dáre no ga _____ ka? | Whose is there? |
| 9. Sore wa dáre no _____ ka? | Whose is that? |
| 10. Éki no mae _____. | It's in front of the station. |
| 11. Hónya no tonari wa rajioya
_____ ka? | Is that a radio store next door to
the bookstore? |
| 12. Tanaka-san no tonari wa Shímizu-
san _____ ka? | Is that Mr. Shimizu who is next to
Mr. Tanaka? |

E. Give responses to the following questions on the basis of your present situation.

1. Tanaka-san desu ka?
2. Soba ni Tanaka-san ga imasu ka?
3. Soba ni Tanaka-san wa imasen ka?
4. Sono hon wa Tanaka-san no de wa arimasen ka?
5. Tanaka-san no mannénhitsu wa arimasen ka?
6. Hon mo empitsu mo arimasen ka?

F. Give the questions which would evoke the following replies. (Occurrence or omission of hai or ie is of significance.)

1. Shímizu-san no uchi wa asoko desu.
2. Tsukue no ue ni empitsu ya hon ga arimasu.
3. Sore wa watakushi no isu desu.
4. Tabako wa arimasu ga matchi wa arimasen.
5. Matchi wa arimasen ga tabako ga arimasu.
6. Ée. Tanaka desu. (2 possibilities, negative and positive questions)
7. Iie. Kono soba ni depaato wa arimasen.
8. Iie. Tanaka-san no de wa arimasen.
9. Ée. Hikidashi no naka ni wa arimasen deshita.
10. Éki no tonari ni hónya ga arimasu.

Amerika
Nihón
basu
densha
fune
hikooki
jidool
kisha
kuruma
takushi
itsu
ashita
kinoo
kyoo
ato (d
ikaga
kekko
tsugi
ne (né

máde
kara
au
iku

káeru

kúru
shiru
suru
wakari

Shuku
Moo j
Motto
Bumpo

Kotob
Sayoo

LESSON III

oor to

ext to

sent

rence

s)

Amerika
Nihón
basu
densha
fune
hikóoki
jidóosha
kisha
kuruma
takushii
itsu
ashita
kinoo
kyoo
ato (de)
ikaga
kekko
tsugi
ne (née)

máde
kara
au
iku

kaeru

kuru
shiru
suru
wakaru

America
Japan
bus
electric train, streetcar
boat, ship
airplane
automobile
train
car
taxi
when?
tomorrow
yesterday
today
later; behind, after
how? how about?
1) fine, splendid; 2) plenty
next
1) isn't that so, n'est-ce pas; 2) isn't it (in agree-
ment); 3) and, you know (pause indicator)
1) to, as far as (including the place mentioned)
from
to meet (to meet someone, --- -san ni au; intr.)
to go (also yuku, but this is gradually becoming obso-
lete; intr.)
to return home, to return to a place where one habit-
ually is (intr. 2nd conj.)
to come (irregular verb; intr.)
to know (used of both people and facts) (tr. 2nd conj.)
to do (irregular verb; tr.)
to understand, to know, to be clear (intr.)

USEFUL CLASSROOM PHRASES

Shukudai wa _____ desu.
Moo jikan desu.
Motto hayaku itte kudasai.
Bumpoo o yonde kite kudasai.

Kotoba o obote kite kudasai.
Sayoonara.

Your homework is _____.
Time is up. (It's time now.)
Please say it more rapidly.
Please read the grammar (before coming to
class).
Please have your vocabulary memorized.
Goodbye.

PATTERN PASSAGE

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. Tanaka-san to Kyōoto ni ikímásén ka? | A. Won't you go to Kyōto with Mr. Tanaka [and me]? |
| B. Nán de? | B. How [are you going]? |
| A. Tanaka-san no jidōosha de ikága desu ka? | A. How would it be [to go] in Mr. Tanaka's car? |
| B. Kyōoto made jidōosha de ikímásu ka? | B. Are you going as far as Kyōto by car? |
| A. Ée. Ikímashōo. Kyōoto wa shirímásén deshoo? | A. Yes. Let's go. You don't know Kyōto, do you? |
| B. Ée. Nagoya e wa ikímashita ga, sokó kará wa shirímásén. | B. Yes, I've been to Nagoya, but I don't know [the area] beyond that. |
| A. Áa. Nagoya de Shímizu-san ni mo aimashōo ne? | A. Oh yes. And we must meet Mr. Shímizu in Nagoya, also, don't you think? |
| B. Soó shímashōo. Déwa ikimasu. | B. Let's do that. Then, I'll go. |

GRAMMAR

3.1 Semi-formal tentative, -mashōo (cont.)

Mashōo, like the other semi-formal endings, occurs after the stem of first-conjugation verbs and imashōo after the stems of second-conjugation verbs. (After a second-conjugation verb whose stem ends in "s," s-imasu becomes shimasu; in a second-conjugation verb whose stem ends in "t," t-imasu becomes chimasu.)

The tentative has the following meanings: 1) "Let us do it," 2) "Let me do it" (equivalent to a softened masu). Mashōo ka will be equivalent to "Shall we (I) do it?"

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Soó shímashōo. | Let's do that. |
| Watákúshí gá shímashōo. | I'll do it (offering to do it). |
| Watákúshí gá shímashōo ka? | Shall I do it (offering to do it)? |
| Dénsha de ikimashoo. | Let's go by electric train. |
| Watákúshí gá íkímashōo. | I'll go (offering to do it). |
| Ikímashōo ka? | Shall we go? |

3.2 Generalized time words

Time words such as kyōo, "today," kinōo, "yesterday," ashítá, "tomorrow," senshuu, "last week," kyōnen, "last year," etc. are not followed by the particles ni or o. Other particles, however, occur after these words.

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| Ashítá ikimasu. | I'm going tomorrow. |
| Kinoo shímashita. | I did it yesterday. |
| Kyōo wakarimasu. | I will know today. |

Ashítá wa ikimasu.
 Kinóó nó kíshá de ikímáshita.
 Kyóo mo ikímásu ka?
 Ashítá de íi desu.

I will go tomorrow.
 He went on yesterday's train.
 Are you going today also?
 Tomorrow will do. (With tomorrow,
 it will be all right. Lesson
 VIII)
 I'll do it from tomorrow on.
 It will take until tomorrow.
 (Lesson XIII)
 Yesterday was the day.
 It's today and tomorrow.

Ashítá kara shimasu.
 Ashítá made kakarimasu.

Kinóo ga sóo deshita.
 Kyóo to ashítá desu.

Íma occurs with or without ni but with a difference in meaning. Íma
ikimasu, "I'll go now"; whereas íma ni ikimasu means, "I'll go soon."

3.3 Word order

One need not adhere to any strict word-order pattern, except that the principal verb and the copula come at the end. However, it must be borne in mind that it is through change in word order and through the use of particles that stress and emphasis are expressed, as well as through the voice, which plays a minor role compared to the former two.

The general pattern of Japanese word order is topic, subject, object group, and verb or copula, and may include any or all of these parts. The object group includes such items as direct object, noun of location, agent, etc.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san wa sonó hón ga wakárimásén. (topic) (subject) (verb)	Mr. Tanaka doesn't understand that book. (As for Mr. Tanaka, that book is not clear.)
Sonó hón ga wakarimasu. (subject) (verb)	I can understand that book. (That book is clear.)
Tanaka-san wa wakarimasu. (topic) (verb)	Mr. Tanaka can understand it. (As for Mr. Tanaka, it is clear.)
Wakarimasu. (verb)	I understand it. (It is clear.)
Tanaka-san wa dénsa de Kamákúrá e ikímáshita. (topic) (object group) (verb)	Mr. Tanaka went by (electric) train to Kamakura.
Tanaka-san wa Kamákúrá e dénsa de ikímáshita. (topic) (object group) (verb)	Mr. Tanaka went to Kamakura by (electric) train.

Tanaka-san wa Kamákúrá e ikímashita. (topic) (object group) (verb)	Mr. Tanaka went to Kamakura.
Tanaka-san wa dénssha de ikímashita. (topic) (object group) (verb)	Mr. Tanaka went by (electric) train.
Dénssha de ikímashita. (object group) (verb)	He went by (electric) train.
Kamákúrá e ikímashita. (object group) (verb)	He went to Kamakura.
Tanaka-san wa ikímashita. (topic) (verb)	Mr. Tanaka went.
Ikímashita. (verb)	He went.

Generalized time words may occur before or after any of the above categories except after the final verb. (Note: There is a theory that there is emphasis on the time word when it occurs immediately before the final verb.)

EXAMPLES:

Kinoo Tanaka-san wa Kamákúrá e ikímashita.	Yesterday, Mr. Tanaka went to Kamakura.
Tanaka-san wa kinoo Kamákúrá e ikímashita.	Mr. Tanaka went to Kamakura yesterday.
Tanaka-san wa Kamákúrá e kinoo ikímashita.	Mr. Tanaka went yesterday to Kamakura.

3.4 Particle de

The particle de occurs after nouns and indicates (1) the agent, means or instrument of an act, or (2) the place where an action occurs.

EXAMPLES:

(1) Dénssha de kimashita. Nán de ikímashita ka?	I came by streetcar. How did you go?
(2) Dóko de aímashita ka? Tabakoya de aímashóo. Uchi de tabémásén deshita.	Where did you see him? Let's meet at the tobacco store. I didn't eat at home.

3.5 Particles e, ni, máde, and kara

These particles occur after nouns and indicate motion to or away from the noun in question.

The particles e and ni, meaning "to" or "towards," indicate motion towards, spatially or temporally. The two particles are interchangeable, but there is a slight difference in emphasis. For example, the statement, Nihón ni iku, meaning "I go to Japan," emphasizes the location and stresses final arrival there, whereas the statement, Nihón e iku, meaning "I go to Japan,"

emphasizes the action of going rather than the place.

The particle ni meaning "to" occurs after persons to indicate the indirect object: Tanaka-san ni h6n o mis6m6shita, "I showed the book to Mr. Tanaka."

The particle m6de meaning "up to (and including), through" or "as far as," has both a spatial and temporal usage.

The particle kara, which occurs both in a spatial and temporal usage, indicates motion away from and means "from" or "from ... on."

EXAMPLES:

(Spatial)

Yokohama e kim6shita.

He came to Yokohama.

Yokohama ni kim6shita.

He came to Yokohama.

Yok6h6m6 m6de kim6shita.

He has come as far as Yokohama.

Yokohama kara kim6shita.

He has come from Yokohama.

(To persons)

Tanaka-san ni mis6m6shita.

I showed it to Mr. Tanaka.

Tanaka-san ni aim6shita.

I met Mr. Tanaka.

(Temporal)

Ashit6 m6de imasu.

I will be here through tomorrow.

Ky6o kara shimasu.

I will do it from today on.

3.6 Particle to

The particle to occurs after a noun in the meaning "with." In this use, it may or may not be followed by other particles.

EXAMPLES:

Suzuki-san to ikim6shita.

I went with Mr. Suzuki.

Suzuki-san t6 wa ikim6s6n deshita.

I didn't go with Mr. Suzuki.

Suzuki-san t6 mo kim6shita.

I came with Mr. Suzuki also.

Am6rik6 t6 no kankee ga arimasu.

It has some connection with America.

(Note: In the last example, Am6rik6 t6 no modifies kankee.)

3.7 Double particles

The following is a chart of double particles involving the particles encountered so far.

e-
is
.)

e.

-
t
6n
l
"

FINAL PARTICLE

INITIAL PARTICLE	wa	mo	no
wa	--	--	--
ga	--	--	--
mo	--	--	--
to (with)	tó wa	tó mo	tó no
de (by)(at)	dé wa	dé mo	dé no
ni (at)(to)	ní wa	ní mo	--
e	é wa	é mo	é no
máde	máde wa	máde mo	máde no
kara	kará wa	kará mo	kará no

3.8 Verbs kúru and suru

These are irregular verbs with the following semi-formal forms:

informalkúrusurusemi-formal

kimasu, kimásén, kimáshita, kimásén deshita,
kimáshóo
shimasu, shimásén, shimáshita, shimásén
deshita, shimáshóo

3.9 Verbs shiru and wakáru

Shiru is a second-conjugation verb meaning "to know" a fact or "to be acquainted with" a person. The affirmative forms, shiru (shirimasu) and shitta (shirimáshita) mean "to learn" of something or "to have learned" of something and not "to know" something. The latter is expressed through the use of the progressive forms, shitte iru (shitte imasu) and shitte ita (shitté imáshita) (Lesson V).

Wakáru has the meaning "to understand" something or that something "is clear" to one. Wakáru never takes an object; that which is clear is the subject of the verb, wakáru. There is no distinction between "understand" and "able to understand"; wakáru occurs with both meanings.

EXAMPLES:

Compare the meanings and usage of shiru and wakáru.

Shiru

Do you know (are you acquainted with) Mr. Smith?

No, I don't. (Shirimásén)

Do you know that book?

No, I don't. (Shirimásén)

Did Mr. Smith go to New York yesterday?

I don't know (that fact). (Shirimásén)

Wakáru

Do you understand what kind of a person Mr. Smith is?

No, I don't. (Wakárimásén)

Can you understand that book?

No, I can't. (Wakárimásén)

Are you going to New York tomorrow?

It's not clear yet whether I'm going or not.

(Wakárimásén)

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES:

Kore ga wakárimásu ka?
 Konó hón ga wakárimásu ka?
 Tanaka-san wa konó hón ga
 wakárimásu ka?

Tanaka-san wa shirimásén.

Kinoo shirimáshita.

Tanaka-san o shitté ímasu ka?

(Form to be taught in Lesson V)

Do you understand this?
 Do you understand this book?
 Do you understand this book, Mr.
 Tanaka?

I don't know Mr. Tanaka.
 Mr. Tanaka doesn't know.
 I learned of it yesterday.
 Do you know Mr. Tanaka?

3.10 Sentence particle ne, née

(a) Ne, née, at the end of a sentence seeks confirmation of the statement.

EXAMPLES:

Ashita ikímasu ne?
 Arímásén ne?
 Áru deshoo ne?

You are going tomorrow, aren't you?
 There isn't any, is there?
 There probably are, aren't there?

(b) Ne, née occurring within a sentence functions as a pause indicator. (Informal form of speech, more commonly said by women.) (Do not overuse.)

EXAMPLE:

Watakushi wa né, ashita ikímasu yo. You know, I'm going tomorrow.

DRILL

1. Grammar (non-past: informal to semi-formal)

(iku)	Ikimasu.	I go, I will go, etc.
(áu)	Aimasu.	I meet, I will meet, etc.
(káeru)	Kaerimasu.	I return, I will return, etc.
(wakáru)	Wakarimasu.	I understand, I will understand, etc.
(suru)	Shimasu.	I do, I will do, etc.
(kúru)	Kimasu.	I come, I will come, etc.

2. Substitution

Kyóo ikímashóo.

(aímashóo) Kyóo aímashóo.
 (kaérímashóo) Kyóo kaérímashóo.
 (shimashóo) Kyóo shimashóo.
 (kimashóo) Kyóo kimashóo.

Let's go today.

Let's meet today.
 Let's return today.
 Let's do it today.
 Let's come today.

3. Response

Q: Aímasén ka?A: Aímasén.

Q: Won't you be seeing him?

A: I won't be seeing him.

(Ikímásén ka?)

Ikímásén.

I'm not going.

(Kaérímásén ka?)

Kaérímásén.

I'm not returning home.

(Wakárímásén ka?)

Wakárímásén.

I don't understand.

(Shirímásén ka?)

Shirímásén.

I don't know.

(Shimásén ka?)

Shimásén.

I don't do it.

(Kimásén ka?)

Kimásén.

I'm not coming.

4. Substitution

Kinoo ikímashita.

I went yesterday.

(aímashita)

Kinoo aímashita.

I saw him yesterday.

(kaérímashita)

Kinoo kaérímashita.

I returned yesterday.

(wakárímashita)

Kinoo wakárímashita.

I found out yesterday.

(shirímashita)

Kinoo shirímashita.

I learned [of it] yesterday.

(shimashita)

Kinoo shimashita.

I did it yesterday.

(kimashita)

Kinoo kimashita.

I came yesterday.

5. Conversation

Q: Kinoo kimáshita ka?

Q: Did you come yesterday?

A: Iie. Kinoo kimásén deshita.

A: No, I didn't come yesterday.

(ikímashita)

Kinoo ikímashita ka?

Did you go yesterday?

Iie. Kinoo ikímásén deshita.

No, I didn't go yesterday.

(aímashita)

Kinoo aímashita ka?

Did you see him yesterday?

Iie. Kinoo aímásén deshita.

No, I didn't see him yesterday.

(shimashita)

Kinoo shimashita ka?

Did you do it yesterday?

Iie. Kinoo shimásén deshita.

No, I didn't do it yesterday.

(wakárímashita)

Kinoo wakárímashita ka?

Did you find out yesterday?

Iie. Kinoo wakárímásén deshita.

No, I didn't find out yesterday.

6. Substitution

Ashita kaeru deshoo.

He'll probably return tomorrow.

(iku)

Ashita ikú déshoo.

He'll probably go tomorrow.

(kúru)

Ashita kúru deshoo.

He'll probably come tomorrow.

(wakáru)

Ashita wakáru deshoo.

He'll probably know tomorrow.

(suru)

Ashita surú déshoo.

He'll probably do it tomorrow.

(áu) Ashita áu deshoo.
 (áru) Ashita áru deshoo.

He'll probably meet him tomorrow.
 It'll probably be held tomorrow.

7. Substitution

Kyóo ka ashita shimasu.

He'll do it today or tomorrow.

(ikimasu) Kyóo ka ashita ikimasu.
 (aimasu) Kyóo ka ashita aimasu.
 (kimasu) Kyóo ka ashita kimasu.
 (kaerimasu) Kyóo ka ashita kaerimasu.
 (wakarimasu) Kyóo ka ashita wakarimasu.

He'll go today or tomorrow.
 He'll see him today or tomorrow.
 He'll come today or tomorrow.
 He'll return today or tomorrow.
 He'll know today or tomorrow.

8. Substitution

Ítsu aimashóo ka?

When shall we meet?

(ikímashóo) Ítsu ikímashóo ka?
 (kimashóo) Ítsu kimashóo ka?
 (kaérímashóo) Ítsu kaérímashóo ka?
 (shímashóo) Ítsu shímashóo ka?

When shall we go?
 When shall we come?
 When shall we return?
 When shall we do it?

9. Substitution

Nán de ikímashóo ka?

How shall we go?

(basu) B́asu de ikímashóo ka?
 (d́ensha) D́ensha de ikímashóo ka?
 (f́une) F́une de ikímashóo ka?
 (jidóosha) Jidóosha de ikímashóo ka?
 (kishá) Kishá de ikímashóo ka?
 (kuruma) Kuruma de ikímashóo ka?
 (takushii) Takushii de ikímashóo ka?
 (hikóoki) Hikóoki de ikímashóo ka?

Shall we go by bus?
 Shall we go by electric train?
 Shall we go by boat?
 Shall we go by automobile?
 Shall we go by train?
 Shall we go by car?
 Shall we go by taxi?
 Shall we go by plane?

10. Substitution

Yokohama e b́asu de kaérímashita..

He returned to Yokohama by bus.

(d́ensha) Yokohama e d́ensha de kaérímashita.

He returned to Yokohama by electric train.

(f́une) Yokohama e f́une de kaérímashita.

He returned to Yokohama by boat.

(jidóosha) Yokohama e jidóosha de kaérímashita.

He returned to Yokohama by auto.

(kishá) Yokohama e kishá de kaérímashita.

He returned to Yokohama by train.

(kuruma)	Yokohama e kuruma de kaerímashita.	He returned to Yokohama by car.
(tákušii)	Yokohama e tákušii de kaerímashita.	He returned to Yokohama by taxi.
(hikóoki)	Yokohama e hikóoki de kaerímashita.	He returned to Yokohama by plane.

11. Substitution

Yokohama e ikímashita.

He went to Yokohama.

(Hakone)	Hakone e ikímashita.	He went to Hakone.
(Níkkoo)	Níkkoo e ikímashita.	He went to Nikkō.
(Kamákurá)	Kamákurá e ikímashita.	He went to Kamakura.
(Kóobe)	Kóobe e ikímashita.	He went to Kōbe.
(Oosaka)	Oosaka e ikímashita.	He went to Ōsaka.
(Hiroshima)	Hiroshima e ikímashita.	He went to Hiroshima.
(Kyóoto)	Kyóoto e ikímashita.	He went to Kyōto.
(Nagásaki)	Nagásaki e ikímashita.	He went to Nagasaki.
(Nihón)	Nihón e ikímashita.	He went to Japan.
(Amerika)	Amerika e ikímashita.	He went to America.

12. Response

Tanaka-san wa kinoo Ōsaka e fúne de ikímashita.

Yesterday, Mr. Tanaka went to Ōsaka by boat.

- (1) Q: Nán de ikímashita ka?
A: Fúne de ikímashita.
- (2) Q: Dóko e ikímashita ka?
A: Oosaka e ikímashita.
- (3) Q: Ítsu ikímashita ka?
A: Kinoo ikímashita.

- Q: How did he go?
A: He went by boat.
- Q: Where did he go?
A: He went to Ōsaka.
- Q: When did he go?
A: He went yesterday.

(Tanaka-san wa kinoo Ōsaka e fúne de ikímashita.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Ōsaka by boat yesterday.)

(Tanaka-san wa kinoo Hiroshima e hikóoki de ikímashita.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Hiroshima by plane yesterday.)

(Tanaka-san wa áshita Hiroshima e hikóoki de ikimasu.)

(Mr. Tanaka is going to Hiroshima by plane tomorrow.)

(Tanaka-san wa áshita Hakone e básu de ikimasu.)

(Mr. Tanaka is going to Hakone by bus tomorrow.)

(Tanaka-san wa kyóo Kamákurá e básu de ikimasu.)

(Mr. Tanaka is going to Kamakura by bus today.)

(Tanaka-san wa kyóo Kamákurá e dénsa de ikímashita.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Kamakura by electric train today.)

(Tanaka-san wa kinoo Níkkoo e dénsa de ikímashita.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Nikkō by electric train yesterday.)

(Tanaka-san wa kinoo Yokohama e kuruma de ikímashita.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Yokohama by car yesterday.)

by

by

by

(Tanaka-san wa kyōo Nagasaki e kuruma de ikimashita.)

(Tanaka-san wa ashita Nagasaki e kuruma de ikimasu.)

(Tanaka-san wa ashita Kōobe e kishā de ikimasu.)

(Tanaka-san wa kyōo Kōobe e kishā de ikimashita.)

(Tanaka-san wa kyōo Kyōoto e hikōoki de ikimashita.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Nagasaki by car today.)

(Mr. Tanaka is going to Nagasaki by car tomorrow.)

(Mr. Tanaka is going to Kōbe by train tomorrow.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Kōbe by train today.)

(Mr. Tanaka went to Kyōto by plane today.)

13. Substitution

Tookyoo kara kimashita.

He has come from Tōkyō.

(Hakone) Hakone kara kimashita.

He has come from Hakone.

(Nikkoo) Nikkoo kara kimashita.

He has come from Nikkō.

(Kōobe) Kōobe kara kimashita.

He has come from Kōbe.

(Oosaka) Oosaka kara kimashita.

He has come from Ōsaka.

(Hiroshima) Hiroshima kara kimashita.

He has come from Hiroshima.

(Kyōoto) Kyōoto kara kimashita.

He has come from Kyōto.

(Nagasaki) Nagasaki kara kimashita.

He has come from Nagasaki.

ca

14. Grammar (e to m_{ade})

(Tookyoo e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Tōkyō.)

Toōkyōō m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Tōkyō.

(Yokohama e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Yokohama.)

Yokōhāmā m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Yokohama.

(Hakone e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Hakone.)

Hakōné m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Hakone.

(Kamakūrā e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Kamakura.)

Kamākūrā m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Kamakura.

(Kōobe e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Kōbe.)

Kōobe m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Kōbe.

(Oosaka e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Ōsaka.)

Oōsākā m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Ōsaka.

(Kyōto e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Kyōto.)

Kyōoto m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Kyōto.

(Hiroshima e ikimasu.)

(I'm going to Hiroshima.)

Hirōshīmā m_{ade} ikimasu.

I'm going as far as Hiroshima.

at

y

ma

by

a

15. Substitution

Tookyoo kara Yokōhāmā m_{ade} ikimashita.

I went from Tōkyō to (as far as) Yokohama.

(Yokohama, Hakone) Yokohama kara Hakōné m_{ade} ikimashita.

I went from Yokohama to Hakone.

18. Grammar (e to ni)

(Áto de Yokohama e ikímáshita.)
 Áto de Yokohama ni ikímáshita.
 (Áto de Kamakúrá e ikímáshita.)
 Áto de Kamakúrá ni ikímáshita.
 (Áto de Híroshima e ikímáshita.)
 Áto de Híroshima ni ikímáshita.
 (Áto de Nagásaki e ikímáshita.)
 Áto de Nagásaki ni ikímáshita.
 (Áto de Tanáká-sán nó úchí e ikímáshita.)
 Áto de Tanáká-sán nó úchí ni ikímáshita.
 (Áto de tabakoya e ikímáshita.)
 Áto de tabakoya ni ikímáshita.
 (Áto de depáato e ikímáshita.)
 Áto de depáato ni ikímáshita.

(Later I went to Yokohama.)
 Later I went to Yokohama.
 (Later I went to Kamakura.)
 Later I went to Kamakura.
 (Later I went to Hiroshima.)
 Later I went to Hiroshima.
 (Later I went to Nagasaki.)
 Later I went to Nagasaki.
 (Later I went to Mr. Tanaka's house.)
 Later I went to Mr. Tanaka's house.
 (Later I went to the tobacco store.)
 Later I went to the tobacco store.
 (Later I went to the department store.)
 Later I went to the department store.

19. Grammar (é mo to ní mo)

(Tabákóyá é mo ikímáshóo.)
 Tabákóyá ní mo ikímáshóo.
 (Depáato e mo ikímáshóo.)
 Depáato ni mo ikímáshóo.
 (Éki e mo ikímáshóo.)
 Éki ni mo ikímáshóo.
 (Shímizu-san no uchi e mo ikímáshóo.)
 Shímizu-san no uchi ni mo ikímáshóo.
 (Súmisu-san no uchi e mo ikímáshóo.)
 Súmisu-san no uchi ni mo ikímáshóo.
 (Kyóoto e mo ikímáshóo.)
 Kyóoto ni mo ikímáshóo.

(Let's also go to the tobacco store.)
 Let's also go to the tobacco store.
 (Let's also go to the department store.)
 Let's also go to the department store.
 (Let's also go to the station.)
 Let's also go to the station.
 (Let's also go to Mr. Shimizu's home.)
 Let's also go to Mr. Shimizu's home.
 (Let's also go to Mr. Smith's home.)
 Let's also go to Mr. Smith's home.
 (Let's also go to Kyōto.)
 Let's also go to Kyōto.

20. Substitution

Ashita Tanaka-san ni aimasu.

I'll be seeing Mr. Tanaka tomorrow.

(Suzuki) Ashita Sūzuki-san ni aimasu.

I'll be seeing Mr. Suzuki tomorrow.

(Yamamoto) Ashita Yamamoto-san ni aimasu.

I'll be seeing Mr. Yamamoto tomorrow.

(Shímizu) Ashita Shímizu-san ni aimasu.

I'll be seeing Mr. Shimizu tomorrow.

(Súmisu) Ashita Súmisu-san ni aimasu.

I'll be seeing Mr. Smith tomorrow.

(Jóonzu) Ashita Jóonzu-san ni aimasu.

I'll be seeing Mr. Jones tomorrow.

21. Substitution

Suzuki-san ni depáato de aímashita.

I met (ran into) Mr. Suzuki in the department store.

(hónya) Suzuki-san ni hónya de aímashita.

I met Mr. Suzuki in the bookstore.

(éki no máe) Suzuki-san ni éki no máe de aímashita.

I met Mr. Suzuki in front of the station.

(dénsha) Suzuki-san ni dénsa de aímashita.

I met Mr. Suzuki in the train.

(rajioya) Suzuki-san ni rajioya de aímashita.

I met Mr. Suzuki in the radio store.

(Yamamoto-san no uchi) Suzuki-san ni Yamamoto-san no uchi de aímashita.

I met Mr. Suzuki at Mr. Yamamoto's home.

(Hakone) Suzuki-san ni Hakone de aímashita.

I met Mr. Suzuki in Hakone.

(tabakoya no sóba) Suzuki-san ni tabakóyá nó sóba de aímashita.

I met Mr. Suzuki near the tobacco store.

22. Response and Grammar (ní mo plus positive verb to ní wa plus negative verb)

(Tanaka-san ní mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you also see Mr. Tanaka?)

Tanaka-san ní wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't see Mr. Tanaka.

(Suzuki-san ní mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you also see Mr. Suzuki?)

Suzuki-san ní wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't see Mr. Suzuki.

(Yamamoto-san ní mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you also see Mr. Yamamoto?)

Yamamoto-san ní wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't see Mr. Yamamoto.

(Shimizu-san ní mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you also see Mr. Shimizu?)

Shimizu-san ní wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't see Mr. Shimizu.

(Súmisu-san ní mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you also see Mr. Smith?)

Súmisu-san ní wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't see Mr. Smith.23. Response and Grammar (dé mo plus positive verb to dé wa plus negative verb)

(Kamákúrá de mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you meet him in Kamakura also?)

Kamákúrá de wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't meet him in Kamakura.

(Hakone dé mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you meet him in Hakone also?)

Hakone dé wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't meet him in Hakone.

(Oosaka dé mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you meet him in Ōsaka also?)

Oosaka dé wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't meet him in Ōsaka.

(Kyóoto de mo aímashita ka?)

(Did you meet him in Kyōto also?)

Kyóoto de wa aímásén deshita.

I didn't meet him in Kyōto.

24. Substitution

Tanaka-san to kimáshita.

I came with Mr. Tanaka.

(Shímizu) Shímizu-san to kimáshita.

I came with Mr. Shimizu.

(Súmisu) Súmisu-san to kimáshita.

I came with Mr. Smith.

(Suzuki) Suzuki-san to kimáshita.

I came with Mr. Suzuki.

(Yamamoto) Yamamoto-san to kimáshita.

I came with Mr. Yamamoto.

25. Substitution and Response

Q. Tanaka-san to kimáshita ka?

Q. Did you come with Mr. Tanaka?

A. Iie. Tanaka-san tó wa kimásén deshita.

A. No, I didn't come with Mr. Tanaka.

(Yamamoto) Yamamoto-san to kimáshita ka?

Did you come with Mr. Yamamoto?

Iie. Yamamoto-san tó wa kimásén deshita.

No, I didn't come with Mr. Yamamoto.

(Shímizu) Shímizu-san to kimáshita ka?

Did you come with Mr. Shimizu?

Iie. Shímizu-san to wa kimásén deshita.

No, I didn't come with Mr. Shimizu.

(Súmisu) Súmisu-san to kimáshita ka?

Did you come with Mr. Smith?

Iie. Súmisu-san to wa kimásén deshita.

No, I didn't come with Mr. Smith.

(Suzuki) Suzuki-san to kimáshita ka?

Did you come with Mr. Suzuki?

Iie. Suzuki-san tó wa kimásén deshita.

No, I didn't come with Mr. Suzuki.

26. Substitution

Tsugí no dénsha de kaérímáshóo.

Let's return on the next train.

(básu) Tsugí no básu de kaérímáshóo.

Let's return on the next bus.

(kishá) Tsugí no kishá de kaérímáshóo.

Let's return on the next train.

(fúne) Tsugí no fúne de kaérímáshóo.

Let's return on the next ship.

(hikóoki) Tsugí no hikóoki de kaérímáshóo.

Let's return on the next plane.

27. Conversation

Q. Tsugí no básu de wa ikága desu ka?

Q. How would the next bus be?

A. Soré dé kékkoo desu.

A. That would be fine.

(dénsha) Tsugí no dénsa de wa ikága desu ka?

How would the next train be?

Soré dé kékkoo desu.

That would be fine.

(kishá) Tsugí no kishá de wa ikága desu ka?

How would the next train be?

Soré dé kékkoo desu.

That would be fine.

(fúne) Tsugí no fúne de wa ikága desu ka?

How would the next ship be?

Soré dé kékkoo desu.

That would be fine.

(hikóoki) Tsugí no hikóoki de wa ikága desu ka? How would the next plane be?
 Soré dé kékkoo desu. That would be fine.

28. Conversation

Q. Tabako wa ikága desu ka?

Q. How about a cigarette
 (offering it)?

A. Kékkoo desu née.

A. (It's fine.) Thank you.

(kono isu) Kono isu wa ikága desu ka?
 Kékkoo desu née.

How about this chair?
 It's fine. Thank you.

(kono hako) Kono hako wa ikága desu ka?
 Kékkoo desu née.

How about this box?
 It's fine. Thank you.

(kono heya) Kono heya wa ikága desu ka?
 Kékkoo desu née.

How about this room?
 It's fine. Thank you.

(kono hón) Kono hón wa ikága desu ka?
 Kékkoo desu née.

How about this book?
 It's fine. Thank you.

29. Expansion

Tanaka-san wa kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this, Mr. Tanaka?

(wakárimásu ka) Wakárimásu ka? Do you understand it?
 (kore ga) Kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this?

(Tanaka-san wa) Tanaka-san wa kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this, Mr. Tanaka?

Suzuki-san wa kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this, Mr. Suzuki?

(wakárimásu ka) Wakárimásu ka? Do you understand it?
 (kore ga) Kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this?

(Suzuki-san wa) Suzuki-san wa kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this, Mr. Suzuki?

Yamamoto-san wa kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this, Mr. Yamamoto?

(wakárimásu ka) Wakárimásu ka? Do you understand it?
 (kore ga) Kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this?

(Yamamoto-san wa) Yamamoto-san wa kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this, Mr. Yamamoto?

Shímizu-san wa kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this, Mr. Shimizu?

(wakárimásu ka) Wakárimásu ka? Do you understand it?

(kore
 (Shí

Tana

(wak
 (kon

(Tan

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

e be?

(kore ga) Kore ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this?
 (Shímizu-san wa) Shímizu-san wa kore ga Do you understand this, Mr.
 wakárimásu ka? Shímizu?

te

you.

Tanaka-san wa konó hón ga wakárimásu ka? Do you understand this book, Mr.
 Tanaka?
 (wakárimásu ka) Wakárimásu ka? Do you understand it?
 (konó hón ga) Konó hón ga wakárimásu Do you understand this book?
 ka?
 (Tanaka-san wa) Tanaka-san wa konó hón Do you understand this book, Mr.
 ga wakárimásu ka? Tanaka?

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

aka?

aka?

zuki?

zuki?

moto?

moto?

imizu?

- A. Ashita Hakóné ká Níkkoo e ikímásén ka?
 B. Anáta no jidóosha de?
 A. Ée. Ikága desu ka? Ikímásén ka?
 B. Sore wa kékkoo desu nee. Soó shímáshóo.
 A. Dóko de aímáshóo ka?
 B. Éki no mae de aímáshóo.
- A. Kinoo Súmisu-san ga Ámerika kara kaérímáshita.
 B. Áa, sóo desu ka? Shirímásén deshita. Jóonzú-san mo?
 A. Iie. Jóonzú-san wa áto de fúne de kúru deshoo.
 B. Áa. Súmisu-san wa hikóoki deshita ka?
 A. Ée.
 B. Jóonzú-san wa ítsu káeru deshoo ka?
 A. Wakárimásén nee. Watakushi wa shirímásén.
- A. Kóobe made no kishá ga arímásu ka?
 B. Háí. Arimasu.
 A. Konó kishá wa Kóobe made desu ka?
 B. Iie. Konó kishá wa Oósáká made desu. Kono tsugí no tsugí no ga
 Kóobe ni ikimasu.
 A. (to C) Sonó kishá de ikímáshóo ka?
 C. Soó shímáshóo.
- (Looking at some gifts)
 A. Sono Nihón nó rájio wa dáre kara kimáshita ka?
 B. Tanaka-san kara kimáshita.
 A. Shímizu-san kara wa nani ga kimáshita ka?
 B. Hón deshita. Kore ga sono Shímizu-san kara no hón desu.
 A. Súmisu-san kara mo hón ga kimáshita ne?
 B. Ée. Kyóo kimáshita.
- A. Básu de ikímáshóo ka, dénsa de ikímáshóo ka?
 B. Yokóhámá made wa dénsa de ikimashoo. Soko kara Ákiko-san no uchi,
 made tákushii de ikímáshóo.

- A. Déwa soó shimáshoo né.
6. A. Áa. Shimizu-san. Itsu kaerímashita ka?
 B. Kinoo Kamakúrá kara kaerímashita.
 A. Hakóné é wa ikímásén deshita ka?
 B. Ée. Sumisu-san to Tanaka-san wa Kamakúrá e mo Hakóné é mo ikímashita ga...
7. A. Kyóo Tanaká-sán ní áimashita.
 B. Ee? Dóno Tanaka-san ni?
 A. Oosaka no Tanaka-san ni.
 B. Doko de?
 A. Oosaka kara no kishá nó náka de. Tanaka-san mo kyóo wa Tookyoo ni imasu.
 B. Áa, sóo desu ka. Tanaka-san wa ashítá mo Toókyóó desu ka?
 A. Iie. Kyóo áto de Suzuki-san to Yokohama e kaerimasu. Tanaka-san wa ashita hikóoki de Oosaka e kaeru deshoo.

EXERCISES

A. Insert the proper particles in the following blanks.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Hakone ____ ikímashita. | He went to Hakone. |
| 2. Nán ____ ikímashita ka? | How did he go? |
| 3. Hiroshimá ____ ikímásén deshita. | I didn't go as far as Hiroshima. |
| 4. Kore wa doko ____ kimáshita ka? | Where did this come from? |
| 5. Oosaka ____ Kyóoto ____ kishá ____
ikímashita ka? | Did you go from Ōsaka to Kyōto by train? |
| 6. Éki ____ mae ____ áimashita. | I ran into him in front of the station. |
| 7. Dáre ____ ikímashita ka? | With whom did he go? |
| 8. Kore wa Oósaká ____ kishá desu. | This is the train from Ōsaka. |
| 9. Hakóné ____ basu ga arímásu ka? | Is there a bus that goes as far as Hakone? |
| 10. Yokóhámá ____ ikímashita ka? | Did you go to Yokohama, also? |
| 11. Kamakúrá ____ ikímásén deshita. | I didn't go to Kamakura. |
| 12. Suzuki-san ____ áimashita. | I met Mr. Suzuki. |
| 13. Amerika ____ kimasu. | They're coming from America, also. |
| 14. Kore ____ wakarímásu ka? | Do you understand this? |

B. Suggest:

1. going by electric train.
2. returning from Ōsaka by ship.
3. coming tomorrow, also.
4. doing it today.
5. meeting Mr. Yamamoto, also.
6. returning on the next plane.

7. returning by car.
8. meeting at the bookstore.
9. meeting in front of the radio store.
10. going to Mr. Yamamoto's home.
11. remaining where you are.
12. going to Hakone, also.

C. Insert a suitable noun word for time: kinóo, kyóo, or ashítá. There are two possibilities for each.

1. _____ kaérímáshita.
2. _____ shimáshóo.
3. _____ wakáru deshoo.
4. _____ kimásén deshita.
5. _____ aímáshóo.
6. _____ kaérímásén.
7. _____ shimáshita.

D. Complete the following sentences.

1. Kyóo wa tákushii de _____.
2. Hikóoki de _____.
3. Watakushi wa _____.
4. _____ ka?
5. Dénsha no náka de _____.
6. Ashita _____ deshoo.
7. Ítsu _____ ka?
8. Suzuki-sán nó wa _____.
9. Watakushi wa _____.
10. _____.
11. Asoko ni _____.
12. Tsugí no kishá de _____ deshoo.

I'm returning by taxi today.
 He didn't return by plane.
 I don't know.
 Did you understand?
 I met him on the (electric) train.
 He'll probably come tomorrow.
 When shall we do it?
 I didn't do Mr. Suzuki's.
 I didn't meet him.
 I didn't understand.
 It wasn't there.
 He'll probably come on the next train.

E. Give the questions to which the following could be the answers. (Occurrence or absence of ée or ie is of significance.)

1. Watakushi ga shimáshita.
2. Iie. Watakushi wa shimásén deshita.
3. Ée. Yokohama e ikímáshóo.
4. Kyóo ikímáshóo.
5. Kore wa Nagásaki made no kishá desu.
6. Iie. Suzuki-san ni aímásén deshita.
7. Yamamótó-sán nó jidóosha de kimáshita.
8. Konó basu wa Yokohamá made ikimasu.
9. Iie. Hakóné made no hikóoki wa arímásén.
10. Ée. Tá Kushii de kaérímáshita.

LESSON IV

denwa	telephone
mádo	window
shimbun	newspaper
to	door
dóo	how? in what manner?
kotó	fact
yo	(sentence particle of emphasis; See Grammar 4.6)
aku	to open (intr.)
akeru	to open (tr.)
déru	1) to come out, to appear, to attend, (to appear some place, --- <u>ni déru</u>); 2) to go out, to leave, to graduate, (to leave (graduate from) a place, --- <u>o déru</u>) (intr.)
dásu	1) to put out, to serve; 2) to take out; 3) to mail; 4) to send out (tr.)
háiru	1) to enter; 2) to enter for the first time; (to enter something, --- <u>ni háiru</u>) (intr. 2nd conj.)
ireru	to put in, to insert, to include (to put into something, --- <u>ni ireru</u>) (tr.)
isógu	to hurry (intr.)
káesu	to give back, to return (tr.)
kakáru	1) to hang; 2) to telephone (intr.)
kakéru	1) to hang; 2) to telephone; 3) to turn on; 4) to sit (to sit in a chair, --- <u>ni kakéru</u>) (tr.)
kau	to buy (tr.)
kiku	1) to ask (to ask someone, --- <u>ni kiku</u>); 2) to listen; 3) to hear (tr.)
mátsu	to wait (tr.)
omóu	to think (tr.)
shimáru	to close (intr.)
shiméru	to close (tr.)
shinu	to die (intr.)
tomaru	1) to stop; 2) to stop overnight (at a place --- <u>ni tomaru</u> , intr.)
tomeru	1) to stop, to park (i.e. a car at a specific spot --- <u>ni tomeru</u>); 2) to put up overnight (tr.)
yobu	1) to call; 2) to invite (tr.)
yómu	to read (tr.)
yuu	1) to say; 2) to call, to name (tr.)

Ogénk
Okage
Ikága
Shibá

A. T

B. K

A. K

B. S

A. I

B. I

A. I

B. I

A. I

B. I

A. I

B. I

4.1

obje
tran
ent
thos

USEFUL PHRASES

Ogénki desu ka?
 Okagesama de génki desu.
 Ikága desu ka?
 Shibároku deshita.

How are you? Are you well?
 Thank you, I'm fine.
 How are you (of someone who has been ill)?
 It's been a long time.

PATTERN PASSAGE

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. Tanaka-san wa Ikeda-san ni itsu hón o káesu to iimáshita ka? | A. When, did Mr. Tanaka say he would return the book to Mr. Ikeda? |
| B. Kinoo Ikeda-san ni káeshita to omóimasu ga... Tanaka-san ni denwa de kikimáshoo ka? | B. I thought he returned it to Mr. Ikeda yesterday. Shall I ask him over the telephone? |
| A. Kyoo denwa o kakéru to iimásén deshita ka? | A. Didn't he say he would telephone today? |
| B. Sôo desu ne. Áto de denwa ga kakáru deshoo. Are wa Ikeda-san no hón datta n' desu ne? Watakushi wa anáta no da to kiitá n' desu ga... | B. That's true. There'll probably be a call later. That was Mr. Ikeda's book, wasn't it? I had heard that it was yours. |
| A. Iie. Anó hón wa Ikeda-san ga éki no mae no depáato de kaitá n' desu. | A. No. Mr. Ikeda bought that book in the department store opposite the station. |
| B. Anó hón wa Yoshida-san ga kaita n' desu ne? | B. Mr. Yoshida wrote that book, didn't he? |
| A. Sôo desu. | A. That's right. |
| B. Áa. Kyoo no shimbun de Yoshida-san no kotó o yomimáshita ka? | B. Oh! Did you read about Mr. Yoshida in today's paper? |
| A. Iie. Doo shimashita ka? | A. No. What happened? |
| B. Sono Yoshida-san ga shindá n' desu yo. | B. That Mr. Yoshida died! |
| A. Sôo desu ka. Shirimásén deshita. Dôno shimbun de yônda n' desu ka? | A. Oh, really! I didn't know. Which paper did you see (read) this in? |
| B. Toókyôo Shimbun ni deta n' desu. | B. It appeared in the Tōkyō Shimbun. |

GRAMMAR

4.1 Transitive and intransitive verbs

Verbs are either transitive or intransitive; transitive verbs take an object and intransitive verbs do not. Many of the Japanese verbs exist in transitive and intransitive pairs which have the same verbal base but different endings. The following is a partial list of such pairs including only those which appear in this lesson.

Intransitive ending		Transitive ending	
<u>-u</u>	aku	<u>-eru</u>	akeru
<u>-aru</u>	shimáru tomaru kakáru	<u>-eru</u>	shiméru tomeru kakéru
<u>-eru</u>	déru	<u>-asu</u>	dásu
<u>-ru</u>	káeru	<u>-su</u>	káesu

EXAMPLES:

To o akeru.
To ga aku.

I open the door.
The door opens.

Denwa o kakéru.
Denwa ga kakáru.

He telephones.
There are telephone calls.

Hako ni ireru.
Hako ni háiru.

He puts them into boxes.
They fit into boxes.

4.2 Informal perfective of verbs

The perfective suffix, ta, added directly to the stem of a first-conjugation verb forms the informal perfective of the first conjugation.

EXAMPLES:

iru	i - ta	I (he, etc.) was there.
akeru	ake - ta	I (he, etc.) opened it.
déru	dé - ta	I (he, etc.) went out.

The following list indicates the changes which the final consonant of a second-conjugation stem undergoes when the perfective suffix is added.

Consonant stem	Perfective Suffix	Informal Perfective	English
m (yóm-u)	ta	yónda	I (he, etc.) read it.
b (yob-u)	ta	yonda	I (he, etc.) called.
n (shin-u)	ta	shinda	He (it, etc.) died.
k (kik-u)	ta	kiita	I (he, etc.) asked (heard; listened).
g (isóg-u)	ta	isóida	I (he, etc.) hurried.

r (kakár-u)	ta	kaká <u>tta</u>	There was a call.
w (kaw-u)	ta	k <u>atta</u>	I (he, etc.) bought it.
t (mát-su)	ta	má <u>tta</u>	I (he, etc.) waited.
s (dás-u)	ta	dá <u>shita</u>	I (he, etc.) mailed it.

The irregular verbs kúru and suru become kita and shita, respectively; iku and yu have irregular informal perfectives itta and itta, respectively. The semi-formal stem of yu is i, e.g. iimasu.

The perfective expresses an action or condition which has been perfect-ed or completed. In a sentence such as "Last week he forgot his hat here, but he has not come to get it," the verb "forgot" would be in the perfective, because it is the only action which has been completed. Since the action of coming to get the hat has not been completed, the Japanese would use the negative non-past rather than the negative perfective.

4.3 Particle o

The particle o occurs after a noun and indicates that the noun is a direct object of the verb.

EXAMPLES:

Mádo o shimémáshita.	I closed the window.
Shimbun o kaímáshóo.	Let's buy a newspaper.
Tanaka-san ni deñwá o kákémáshóo.	Let's telephone Mr. Tanaka.
Tákushii o yobímáshita.	I called a taxi.

Compare the following sets of examples.

Mádo o shimémáshita.	I closed the window.
Mádo wa shimémáshita.	The window, I closed (but I didn't close the door).
Shimbun o kaímáshóo.	Let's buy a newspaper.
Shimbun wa kaímáshóo.	Let's buy a <u>newspaper</u> (but not the other thing).

4.4 Direct and indirect quotations

A declarative sentence followed by to yuu, "to say (that)," to omóu, "to think (that)," or to kiku, "to hear (that)," and an interrogative sentence followed by to kiku, "to ask (that)," form direct and indirect quotations. The principal verb of the declarative or interrogative sentence is usually in the informal form.

A pause before to yuu, to kiku, etc. may indicate a direct quotation in quoting someone verbatim; otherwise, the differentiation between direct and indirect quotations is not observed.

EXAMPLES:

Kinoo itta to omoimasu.	I think he went yesterday.
Ashita iku to iímáshita.	He said he would go tomorrow.

Denwá gá kákárimáshita ka tō
kikimáshita.
Denwá ó káketa? tō kikimáshita.

He asked if there had been a tele-
phone call.
He asked, "Have you telephoned?"

Compare the following two quotations.

Tanáká-sán gá denwá ó káketa ka
tō kikimáshita.
Tanaka-san ga (pause) denwá ó
káketa ka tō kikimáshita.

He asked whether Mr. Tanaka had
telephoned.
Mr. Tanaka asked whether you had
telephoned.

The pause and the change in intonation show that the subject, Tanaka-san, goes with the principal verb, kikimáshita.

4.5 No desu, n' desu

No desu and its shortened form n' desu have the meaning "it is a fact that..." and make the entire sentence more emphatic. They occur after the non-past or perfective of verbs and verbal adjectives; ná no desu or ná n' desu occurs after nouns.

EXAMPLES:

A: Ikánái hoo ga íi deshoo?

Don't you think it's better not to go?

B: Iie. Ikú n' desu.

No. I'm going!

A: Ítsu ikimáshita ka?

When did you go (expressing disbelief)?

B: Kinoo iftá n' desu.

I went yesterday!

A: Sono hoo ga sonna ni
omóshirói n' desu ka?

Is that book that interesting? (Is it a fact that that book is so interesting?)

B: Ée. Omóshirói n' desu yo.

Yes, it is interesting!

A: Sore de isú desu ka?

Is a thing like that a chair (expressing disbelief)?

B: Ée. Kore de isú ná n' desu yo.

Yes. This is a chair (believe it or not)!

Compare the following:

Anáta mo ikimásu ka?

Are you going too?

Anáta mo ikú n' desu ka?

Are you going too (expressing surprise)?

Tanaka-san mo ikimáshita ka?

Did Mr. Tanaka go too?

Tanaka-san mo iftá n' desu ka?

Did Mr. Tanaka go too (expressing surprise)?

Kore wa isu desu.

This is a chair.

Kore wa isú ná n' desu.

This is a chair!

4.6 Sentence particle, yo

The sentence particle yo occurs at the end of a sentence and gives emphasis to the sentence. When the yo is level or rising, it has the meaning, "you know." When the yo is falling, there is a sharp tone of warning, anger, complaint, etc.

EXAMPLES:

Yomímáshita yo.

(level or rising)

I've read it.

Yomímáshita yo.

(falling)

Of course I've read it! (annoyance)

Mádo ga shimárimáshita yo.

(level or rising)

The window closed.

Mádo ga shimárimáshita yo.

(falling)

The window closed! (Do something about it!)

DRILL

1. Grammar (non-past: informal to semi-formal)

(aku)	Akimasu.	It opens.
(akeru)	Akemasu.	I open it.
(déru)	Demasu.	I go out. It appears.
(dásu)	Dashimasu.	I put it out. I mail it.
(háiru)	Hairimasu.	I enter. It fits.
(ireru)	Iremasu.	I put it in.
(kaeru)	Kaerimasu.	I return.
(kaesu)	Kaeshimasu.	I return it.
(kakáru)	Kakarimasu.	It hangs. The telephone rings.
(kakéru)	Kakemasu.	I hang it. I telephone.
(shimáru)	Shimarimasu.	It closes.
(shiméru)	Shimemasu.	I close it.
(tomaru)	Tomarimasu.	It stops.
(toméru)	Tomemasu.	I stop it.

2. Grammar (informal non-past: intransitive to transitive)

(aku)	Akeru.	(It opens.)	I open it.
(déru)	Dásu.	(It appears.)	I put it out.
(háiru)	Ireru.	(I enter.)	I put it in.
(kaeru)	Kaesu.	(I return.)	I return it.
(kakáru)	Kakéru.	(It hangs.)	I hang it.
(shimáru)	Shiméru.	(It closes.)	I close it.
(tomaru)	Toméru.	(It stops.)	I stop it.

3. Grammar (to semi-formal negative)

(Mádo ga akimasu.)	Mádo ga akimásén.	The window doesn't open.
(To ga akimasu.)	To ga akimásén.	The door doesn't open.
(Mádo ga shimarimasu.)	Mádo ga shimarímásén.	The window doesn't close.
(To ga shimarimasu.)	To ga shimarímásén.	The door doesn't close.
(Denwa ga kakarimasu.)	Denwá gá kakarímásén.	The telephone doesn't ring.
(Rájo ga kakarimasu.)	Rájo ga kakarímásén.	The radio doesn't work.
(Básu ga tomarimasu.)	Básu ga tomarímásén.	The bus doesn't stop.
(Kishá ga tomarimasu.)	Kishá ga tomarímásén.	The train doesn't stop.
(Hón ga hairimasu.)	Hón ga hairímásén.	The book doesn't fit.
(Shimbun ga hairimasu.)	Shimbún gá hairímásén.	The newspapers won't fit.
(Shimbun ga demasu.)	Shimbún gá demásén.	The newspapers won't come out.
(Hón ga demasu.)	Hón ga demásén.	The book won't come out.
(Fúne ga demasu.)	Fúne ga demásén.	The boat isn't leaving.
(Fúne ga hairimasu.)	Fúne ga hairímásén.	Ships don't come in.

4. Grammar (intransitive to transitive sentences)

(Mádo ga akímashita.)	(The window opened.)
Mádo o akémashita.	I opened the window.
(To gá akímashita.)	(The door opened.)
To o akémashita.	I opened the door.
(Hikidáshí gá akímashita.)	(The drawer opened.)
Hikidáshí o akémashita.	I opened the drawer.
(Mádo ga shimarímashita.)	(The window closed.)
Mádo o shimémashita.	I closed the window.
(To gá shimarímashita.)	(The door closed.)
To o shimémashita.	I closed the door.
(Denwá gá kakarímashita.)	(There was a telephone call.)
Denwá o kakémashita.	I telephoned.
(Rájo ga kakarímashita.)	(The radio turned on. The radio worked.)
Rájo o kakémashita.	I turned on the radio.
(Tanaká-sán gá tomarímashita.)	(Mr. Tanaka stayed overnight.)
Tanaká-sán o tómémashita.	I put Mr. Tanaka up overnight.
(Tákushii gá tomarímashita.)	(A taxi stopped.)
Tákushii o tomémashita.	I stopped a taxi.
(Jidóosha ga hairímashita.)	(The car fitted in.)
Jidóosha o irémashita.	I put the car in.
(Shimbún gá hairímashita.)	(The newspapers fitted in.)
Shimbún o íremashita.	I put the newspapers in.
(Shimbún gá demáshita.)	(The newspaper has come out.)
Shimbún o dāshímashita.	I put out (published) the newspaper.
(Hón ga demáshita.)	(The book came out.)
Hón o dashímashita.	I put out the book.

5. G

(yuu)
(yomu)
(yobu)
(shin)
(omou)
(mats)
(kiku)
(kau)
(isogu)

6. G

(a)
(kima)
(shin)
(ikim)
(shin)

(b)

(iim)
(omoi)
(kai)
(aim)

(c)

(arin)
(wake)
(kaki)
(shin)
(tom)
(hai)
(kae)
(shi)

(d)

(mac)

(e)

(aki)
(kik)

5. Grammar (non-past: informal to semi-formal)

pen.	(yuu)	Iimasu.	I say it.
n.	(yomu)	Yomimasu.	I read.
lose.	(yobu)	Yobimasu.	I call.
se.	(shinu)	Shinimasu.	It dies.
t ring.	(omou)	Omoimasu.	I think.
rk.	(matsu)	Machimasu.	I wait.
.	(kiku)	Kikimasu.	I ask it.
op.	(kau)	Kaimasu.	I buy it.
	(isogu)	Isogimasu.	I hurry.

6. Grammar (perfective: semi-formal to informal)

(a) Irregular

(kimashita)	Kita.	I came.
(shimashita)	Shita.	I did it.
(ikimashita)	Itta.	I went.
(shinimashita)	Shinda.	It died.

(b) Stems ending in "w"

(iimashita)	Itta.	I said it.
(omoiimashita)	Omotta.	I thought it.
(kaaimashita)	Katta.	I bought it.
(aimashita)	Atta.	I met him.

(c) Stems ending in "r"

(arimashita)	Atta.	It was there.
(wakarimashita)	Wakatta.	I understood it.
(kakarimashita)	Kakatta.	There was a telephone call.
(shimarimashita)	Shimatta.	It closed.
(tomarimashita)	Tomatta.	It stopped.
(hairimashita)	Haitta.	It fitted in.
(kaerimashita)	Kaetta.	I returned.
(shirimashita)	Shitta.	I learned of it.

(d) Stems ending in "t"

(machimashita)	Matta.	I waited.
----------------	--------	-----------

(e) Stems ending in "k"

(akimashita)	Aita.	It opened.
(kikimashita)	Kiita.	I asked it. I heard it.
		I listened.

(f) Stems ending in "g"

(isógímáshita) Isóida. I hurried.

(g) Stems ending in "s"

(kaéshímáshita) Káeshita. I returned it.
(dashímáshita) Dáshita. I put it out.

(h) Stems ending in "m"

(yomímáshita) Yónda. I read it.

(i) Stems ending in "b"

(yobímáshita) Yonda. I called.

(j) First-conjugation verbs

(imáshita) Ita. I was there.
(demáshita) Déta. I left.
(akémáshita) Aketa. I opened it.
(tomémáshita) Tometa. I stopped it.
(shimémáshita) Shímeta. I closed it.
(kakémáshita) Káketa. I telephoned. I hung it up.
(irémáshita) Ireta. I put it in.

(k) Copula

(Deñwá déshita.) Deñwá dátta. It was the telephone.

7. Substitution

Mátta deshoo ka?

I wonder if he waited?

(isóida) Isóida deshoo ka? I wonder if he hurried?
(katta) Káttá déshóo ka? I wonder if he bought it?
(shinda) Shínda déshóo ka? I wonder if he died?
(yónda) Yónda deshoo ka? I wonder if he read it?
(yonda) Yónda déshóo ka? I wonder if he invited them?
(káeshita) Káeshita deshoo ka? I wonder if he returned it?
(shimátta) Shimátta deshoo ka? I wonder if it closed?
(aita) Aítá déshóo ka? I wonder if it opened?
(kakátta) Kakátta deshoo ka? I wonder if he got the call through?
(kiita) Kíítá déshóo ka? I wonder if he asked?

8. Progressive substitution

Doo iimáshita ka?

What did you say?

(soo)	Soó iimáshita ka?
(omóimáshita)	Soó omóimáshita ka?
(doo)	Doo omóimáshita ka?
(kikimáshita)	Doo kikimáshita ka?
(soo)	Soó kikimáshita ka?
(deshita)	Soo deshita ka?
(doo)	Doo deshita ka?
(iimáshita)	Doo iimashita ka?

Did you say so?
 Did you think so?
 What did you think?
 How did you ask it?
 Did you ask it that way?
 Was it so?
 How was it?
 What did you say?

9. Substitution

Mado o aketa to omoimasu.

I think he opened the window.

(to)	To o aketa to omoimasu.	I think he opened the door.
(jidóosha no mado)	Jidóosha no mado o aketa to omoimasu.	I think he opened the car window.
(hako)	Hako o aketa to omoimasu.	I think he opened the box.
(hikidashi)	Hikidashi o aketa to omoimasu.	I think he opened the drawer.

up.

10. Substitution

Mado ga aita to omoimasu.

I think the window opened.

(to)	To ga aita to omoimasu.	I think the door opened.
(jidóosha no mado)	Jidóosha no mado ga aita to omoimasu.	I think the car window opened.
(hikidashi)	Hikidashi ga aita to omoimasu.	I think the drawer opened.
(hōnya)	Hōnya ga aita to omoimasu.	I think the bookstore opened.

11. Substitution

Shimbun o ireta to iimáshita.

He said he had put in the newspaper.

(hón)	Hón o ireta to iimáshita.	He said he had put in the books.
(hako)	Hako o ireta to iimáshita.	He said he had put in the boxes.
(empitsu)	Empitsu o ireta to iimáshita.	He said he had put in the pencils.
(tsukue)	Tsukue o ireta to iimáshita.	He said he had put in the desks.
(hito)	Hito o ireta to iimáshita.	He said he had let the people in.
(Ikeda-san)	Ikeda-san o ireta to iimáshita.	He said he had let Mr. Ikeda in.

ugh?

12. Substitution

Hón ga háitta to iímáshita.

He said the books had fitted in.

(hako) Hako ga háitta to iímáshita.

He said the boxes had fitted in.

(shimbun) Shimbun ga háitta to iímáshita.

He said the newspapers had fitted in.

(isu) Isu ga háitta to iímáshita.

He said the chairs had fitted in.

(hito) Hito ga háitta to iímáshita.

He said some people had gone in.

(Ikeda-san) Ikeda-san ga háitta to iímáshita.

He said Mr. Ikeda had gone in.

13. Substitution

Mádo o shíméta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if I had closed the window.

(to) To ó shíméta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if I had closed the door.

(Jidóosha no mádo) Jidóosha no mádo o shíméta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if I had closed the car windows.

(hikidashi) Hikidáshí ó shíméta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if I had closed the drawer.

(tsukue no hikidashi) Tsukúé nó hikidáshí ó shímeta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if I had closed the desk drawer.

14. Substitution

Mádo ga shimátta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if the window had closed.

(to) To gá shimátta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if the door had closed.

(jidóosha no mádo) Jidóosha no mádo ga shimátta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if the car window had closed.

(hikidashi) Hikidáshí gá shimátta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if the drawer had closed.

(depáato) Depáato ga shimátta ka to kikímáshita.

He asked if the department store had closed.

15. Substitution

Jidóosha o tometa to iímáshita.

He said he stopped the cars.

(tákushii) Tákushii o tometa to iímáshita.

He said he stopped a taxi.

(kuruma) Kuruma o tometa to iímáshita.

He said he stopped his car.

(dénsha) Dénsha o tometa to iímáshita.

He said he stopped the electric train.

(Yoshida-san) Yoshida-san o tometa to iímáshita. He said he stopped Mr. Yoshida.

Tákus

(dén

(kuru

(Yosh

san)

(Suzu

san)

Ikeda

(depá

(hóny

(raji

(Suzu

(Yosh

no u

Yaman

ii

(Suzu

(hóny

(raji

Sonó.

(dás)

(shi

16. Substitution

ted in.	Takushii ga tomatta to omoimasu.	I think a taxi has stopped.
ted in. d fitted	(dénsha) Dénsha ga tomatta to omoimasu.	I think the streetcar has stopp- ed.
tted in.	(kuruma) Kuruma ga tomatta to omoimasu.	I think a car has stopped.
one in.	(Yoshida- san) Yoshida-san ga tomatta to omoimasu.	I think Mr. Yoshida stayed over- night.
e in.	(Suzuki- san) Suzuki-san ga tomatta to omoimasu.	I think Mr. Suzuki stayed over- night.

17. Substitution

d the	Ikeda-san ni denwá ó káketa to iímáshita.	He said he had telephoned Mr. Ikeda.
d the	(depáato) Depáato ni denwá ó káketa to iímáshita.	He said he had telephoned the department store.
d the	(hónya) Hónya ni denwá ó káketa to iímáshita.	He said he had telephoned the bookstore.
d the	(rajioya) Rajioya ni denwá ó káketa to iímáshita.	He said he had telephoned the radio store.
	(Suzuki-san) Suzuki-san ni denwá ó káketa to iímáshita.	He said he had telephoned Mr. Suzuki.
dow had	(Yoshida-san) Yoshida-san no uchi ni denwá no uchi) ó káketa to iímáshita.	He said he had telephoned Mr. Yoshida's home.

18. Substitution

r had	Yamamoto-san kara denwá gá kákatta to iímáshita.	He said there had been a tele- phone call from Mr. Yamamoto.
win-	(Suzuki-san) Suzuki-san kara denwá gá kákatta to iímáshita.	He said there had been a tele- phone call from Mr. Suzuki.
er had	(hónya-san) Hónya-san kara denwá gá kákatta to iímáshita.	He said there had been a tele- phone call from the bookstore man.
artment	(rajioya-san) Rajioya-san kara denwá gá kákatta to iímáshita.	He said there had been a tele- phone call from the radio store man.

19. Expansion

taxi. s car. e	Sonó kótó o shimbun ni dáshita to omoimasu.	I think they put [something about] that in the newspaper.
	(dáshita to omoimasu) Dáshita to omoimasu.	I think they put that out.
	(shimbun ni) Shimbun ni dáshita to omoimasu.	I think they put it in the news- paper.

(sonó kótó o) Sonó kótó o shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put something about that in the newspapers.

Yoshidā-sān nó kótó o shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put that matter about Mr. Yoshida in the newspapers.

(dāshita to omoimasu) Dāshita to omoimasu.
(shimbun ni) Shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put that out.
I think they put it in the newspapers.

(Yoshidā-sān nó kótó o) Yoshidā-sān nó kótó o shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put that matter about Mr. Yoshida in the newspapers.

Ikeda-sān nó kótó o kinoo no shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put that matter about Mr. Ikeda in yesterday's paper.

(dāshita to omoimasu) Dāshita to omoimasu.
(shimbun ni) Shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put that out.
I think they put it in the newspaper.

(kinoo no) Kinoo no shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put it in yesterday's paper.

(Ikeda-sān nó kótó o) Ikeda-sān nó kótó o kinoo no shimbun ni dāshita to omoimasu.

I think they put that matter about Mr. Ikeda in yesterday's paper.

20. Substitution

Anó kótó wa shimbun ni deta to kikimashita.

I heard that that matter appeared in the newspaper.

(sono koto) Sonó kótó wa shimbun ni deta to kikimashita.

I heard that that matter appeared in the newspaper.

(Yoshida-san) Yoshidā-sān nó kótó wa shimbun ni deta to kikimashita.

I heard that that matter about Mr. Yoshida appeared in the newspaper.

(Ikeda-san) Ikeda-sān nó kótó wa shimbun ni deta to kikimashita.

I heard that that matter about Mr. Ikeda appeared in the newspaper.

21. Progressive substitution

Hako no náka ni iréta ka to kikimashita.

He asked if we had put it in the box.

(hikidashi) Hikidashi ni iréta ka to kikimashita.

He asked if we had put it in the drawer.

(háitta) Hikidashi ni háitta ka to kikimashita.

He asked if it had fitted in the drawer.

(uchi)

(atta)

(hón)

(déta)

(shimbun)

(dāshita)

(depáato)

(itta)

(Ikeda-s
no uchi
(káketa)

(takushi
ushiro)
(tometa)

(depáato
māe)

(atta)

(Tookyoc)

(káeshi)

(Suzuki)

(dāshita)

(tsukue
ue)
(atta)

(hako no
náka)
(ireta)

thing news-	(uchi)	Uchí ní <u>háitta</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if they had gone into the house.
	(atta)	Uchí ní <u>atta</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had found it at home.
matter in the	(hón)	Hón ni <u>atta</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had found it in the book.
	(déta)	Hón ni <u>déta</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if it had appeared in the book.
out. in the	(shimbun)	Shimbun ni <u>déta</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if it had appeared in the newspapers.
matter in the	(dáshita)	Shimbun ni <u>dáshita</u> ka tō kiki- máshita.	He asked if we had put it in the papers.
	(depáato)	Depáato ni <u>dáshita</u> ka tō kiki- máshita.	He asked if we had put it out (to sell) in the department store.
matter n yester-	(itta)	Depáato ni <u>ittá</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had gone to the department store.
	(Ikeda-san no uchi)	Ikeda-san no uchí ni <u>ittá</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had gone to Mr. Ikeda's home.
out. in the	(káketa)	Ikeda-san no uchí ni <u>káketa</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had telephoned Mr. Ikeda's home.
in	(takushii no ushiro)	Tákushii no ushiro ni <u>káketa</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had hung it on the back of the taxi.
r. at matter in yester-	(tometa)	Tákushii no ushiro ni <u>tométá</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had parked in back of the taxi.
	(depáato no máe)	Depáato no máe ni <u>tométá</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had parked in front of the department store.
	(atta)	Depáato no máe ni <u>atta</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had found it in front of the department store.
atter ap- spaper.	(Tookyoo)	Tookyoo ni <u>atta</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if there were any in Tōkyō.
atter ap- spaper.	(káeshita)	Tookyoo ni <u>káeshita</u> ka tō kiki- máshita.	He asked if we had sent them back to Tōkyō.
atter a appeared	(Suzuki-san)	Suzuki-san ni <u>káeshita</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had returned it to Mr. Suzuki.
atter appeared	(dáshita)	Suzuki-san ni <u>dáshita</u> ka tō kiki- máshita.	He asked if we had sent it to Mr. Suzuki.
	(tsukue no ue)	Tsukue no ue ni <u>dáshita</u> ka tō kikímáshita.	He asked if we had put it out on top of the desk.
	(atta)	Tsukue no ue ni <u>atta</u> ka tō kiki- máshita.	He asked if we had found it on top of the desk.
it in the	(hako no náka)	Hakó nó náka ni <u>atta</u> ka tō kiki- máshita.	He asked if we had found it in the box.
it in the	(ireta)	Hakó nó náka ni <u>irétá</u> ka tō kiki- máshita.	He asked if we had put it in the box.
tted in the			

22. Substitution

Éki no náka de yónda to iímashita.

He said he had read it in the station.

(katta) Éki no náka de katta to iímashita.

He said he had bought it in the station.

(matta) Éki no náka de matta to iímashita.

He said he had waited in the station.

(shinda) Éki no náka de shinda to iímashita.

He said he had died in the station.

(kiita) Éki no náka de kiita to iímashita.

He said he had asked in the station. He said he had heard it in the station.

(káeshita) Éki no náka de káeshita to iímashita.

He said he had returned it in the station.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

1. (Man speaking with his wife)

- X A. Kyóo Tanaka-san kara deñwá gá átta ka?
 B. Iie. Tanáká-sán kára wa arímásén deshita ga, Shímizu-san kara kakarímashita yo.
 A. Shímizu-san kara kakátta?
 B. Ée.
 X A. Nán no deñwá¹ dátta ka?
 B. Shirímásén. Watakúshí ní wa iímásén deshita. Áto de deñwá ó kákéru to iímashita.
 A. Áa, sóo.

2. (Man speaking with his wife) (En route someplace)

- A. Dóo shita n' desu ka?²
 X B. Mádo o shíméta daroo ka. Shíméta ka?
 A. Watakushi wa to wá shímémashita ga, mádo wa shimémásén deshita... Jíroo ga shiméru deshoo.

3. A. Kono hako wa doko ni irémashóo ka?

- B. Tonari no heya no tsukue no hikidashi wa dóo deshoo ka?
 A. Háiru deshoo ka?
 B. Anó híkidáshí ní wa háiru to omóimasu ga... (áto de)
 B. Anó híkidáshí ní háitta deshoo?
 A. Ée. Háirímashita.

1. What was the call about?

2. What's the matter?

it in

ht it

ed in

in

d in
said
in therned
n.

...

4. (Man speaking with his wife)

- X A. Shímizu-san no koto o kiítá ka?
B. Nán no koto desu ka? ¹

- X A. Shímizu-san wa Amériká é ikú n' da yo.
B. Sôo! Dáre kara kikímáshita ka?

- X A. Tanaka-san kara kiítá n' da. Tanaka-san ga kyôo no shimbun ni dásu
to iítá ga, deta ka?
B. Iie.

5. (Man speaking with his wife)

- X A. Uchi no máe ni jidóosha ga tomatte yo.
B. Sôo? Dáre ga kitá n' deshoo ka. Áa. Shímizu-san desu.

- X A. Jidóosha o kattá n' daroo ka.
B. Doo deshoo ka nêe.² Shímizu-san ni kikímáshoo.

6. (Man speaking with his wife)

- X A. Shímizu-san no hón o kyôo káeshita ka?
B. Iie. Isôgu n' desu ka?

- X A. Sôo da yo.
B. Ashita kaeshimasu.

7. (Two men: B is in a higher position)

- A. Shímizu-san o denwá dé yóndá ga, kimásén deshita.

- X B. Ée. Shímizu-san wa kyôo Hakone e itta yo.
A. Hakone ni?

- X B. Ée. Hakone no Shímizu-san ga shiindá n' da yo.

8. (Man speaking with the maid)

- X A. Anó mádo ga aita ka?
B. Háí. Akímáshita ga...
A. Dáre ga aketa?
B. Watakushi ga akémáshita ga... Shimárimásén.

9. X A. Jidóosha wa dóko ni tometa ka?

- B. Éki no máe desu.

- X A. Tanaka wa?

- B. Jidóosha no náka de shímbún ó yómu to iímáshita.

10. A. Kinoo Tanaka-san mo Yokohama e ikímáshita ka?

- B. Iie. Éki no máe de Tanaka-san o mátta n' desu ga, kimásén deshita.

- A. Sôo desu ka? Depáato no máe de mátsu to iímásén deshita ka?

- B. Áa, sôo deshita ka.

1. About what?

2. I wonder.

EXERCISES

A. Insert the proper informal perfective in the following blanks.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Mádo o _____. | I opened the window. |
| 2. Denwá ga _____. | There was a telephone call. |
| 3. To ga _____. | The door closed. |
| 4. Mannénhitsu o _____. | I put in the fountain pen. |
| 5. Tákushii o _____. | I called for a taxi. |
| 6. Suzuki-san ga _____. | Mr. Suzuki mailed it. |
| 7. Shimbun o _____. | He put out the newspaper. |
| 8. Dénsha ga _____. | The streetcar has stopped. |
| 9. Ikeda-san ga _____. | Mr. Ikeda closed it. |
| 10. Tatémmono no naka ni _____. | He went into the building. |
| 11. Depáato e _____. | He went to the department store. |
| 12. Ikeda-san ni soó _____. | I said so to Mr. Ikeda. |

B. Change the following verbs to the informal non-past.

1. Shimbún ó yónda.
2. Denwá ó káketa.
3. Isóida.
4. Hón o katta.
5. Tanaka-san o mátta.
6. Tanaka-san ga shinda.
7. Tanaka-san kara kiita.
8. Tanaka-san o yonda.
9. Tabako ga átta.
10. Mannénhitsu o káeshita.
11. Jidóosha datta.
12. Yoshida-san ni átta.

C. Insert the proper particles in the following blanks.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Tanaka-san ____ mádo ____ akétá déshóo. | Mr. Tanaka probably opened the window. |
| 2. Uchi no máe ____ jidóosha ____ tomatta. | A car has stopped in front of our house. |
| 3. Depáato ____ pén ____ katta. | I bought a pen at the department store. |
| 4. Tookyoo e dénsa ____ kitá ____ itta. | He said that he had come to Tōkyō by electric train. |
| 5. Tonari no heyá ____ rájio ____ kiki-máshóo. | Let's listen in the next room to the radio (rather than in here). |
| 6. Tanaka-san ____ denwá ____ káketa. | I telephoned Mr. Tanaka. |
| 7. Suzuki-san ____ kiki-máshita. | I asked Mr. Suzuki. |
| 8. Yamamoto-san ____ Ikeda-san ____ Kyóoto ____ kaetta ____ kiita. | I heard that both Mr. Yamamoto and Mr. Ikeda have returned from Kyōto. |

78

9. Ma

10. De

11. Sú

12. Oc

D. Ch

1. KJ

2. R

3. S

4. D

5. H

6. T

7. M

8. M

9. H

10. S

11. T

12. S

13. J

14. N

15. T

16. S

17. I

18. F

19. T

20. T

21. F

22. V

23. I

24. I

E. I

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

9. Mañnéhitsu ____ hikidashi ____ iré-
máshita.
10. Depáato ____ kikímáshóo.
11. Sumisu-san wa Amerika ____ hikóoki
____ kita ____ itta.
12. Oosaka ____ denwá ____ kákaru ____
omou.

I put the fountain pen in the
drawer.
Let's ask at the department store.
Mr. Smith said that he had come
from America by plane.
I think there will be a telephone
call from Ōsaka.

D. Change the following verbs to the semi-formal perfective.

1. Kyóoto e ittá n' desu.
2. Rájio o kaftá n' desu.
3. Soó ómóttá n' desu.
4. Denwá gá kákáttá n' desu.
5. Hón o yónda n' desu.
6. Tanaka-san o yónda n' desu.
7. Mádo ga shimáttá n' desu.
8. Mañnéhitsu o káeshita n' desu.
9. Heya no náka ni háitta n' desu.
10. Soó íttá n' desu.
11. Tanaka-san ni kiitá n' desu.
12. Shimbun o kaftá n' desu.
13. Jidóosha no to ga aítá n' desu.
14. Máitchi ga áttá n' desu.
15. Tookyoo de shiéndá n' desu.
16. Shimizu-san datta n' desu.
17. Depáato de máttá n' desu.
18. Heya no náka ni itá n' desu.
19. Uchi e káetta n' desu.
20. Tanaka-san ni áttá n' desu.
21. Kyóoto kara kitá n' desu.
22. Watakushi ga shitá n' desu.
23. Kinoo wakáttá no desu.
24. Shimbun de shiítá n' desu.

E. Give the following information in Japanese.

Tell your friend, Mr. Ikeda:

1. that Mr. Tanaka asked whether Mr. Ikeda were going to Yokohama tomorrow.
2. that Mr. Tanaka said he was going to Yokohama tomorrow.
3. that you think Mr. Yamamoto went to Yokohama yesterday.
4. that you heard there was a telephone call from Ōsaka for Mr. Ikeda.
5. that Mr. Tanaka said that he would telephone Mr. Shimizu tomorrow.
6. that Mr. Suzuki said he would return Mr. Ikeda's book tomorrow.
7. that you think you heard it over the radio.
8. that you think the ship has left.
9. that Mr. Tanaka asked if Mr. Ikeda had bought the newspaper.
10. that Mr. Shimizu said that Mr. Tanaka died yesterday.
11. that Mr. Shimizu said he would wait for Mr. Suzuki here.

LESSON V

eego	English language
nihongo	Japanese language
-go	(suffix added to names of countries to mean the language of that country, i.e. <u>Furansu</u> , "France" and <u>furansugo</u> , the "French language.")
daigaku	university
gakkoo	school
seńsée	teacher
kamí	paper
tegami	letter
okáshi	cakes, cookies
isóide	in a hurry, quickly
dóozo	please (offering something or urging someone to do something)
dóomo	very much, very
aríгатоо (gozaimasu)	thank you (semi-formal with <u>gozaimasu</u> ; informal without)
benkyoo	studies
benkyoo suru	to study (tr.)
káku	to write (tr.)
míru	1) to look, to see (tr.); 2) to try (as an auxiliary verb)
miséru	to show (tr.)
mótsu	1) to carry, to hold; 2) to have (tr.)
naráu	to learn (under someone's instruction; used of skills and school subjects) (tr.)
oku	1) to place, to put, to leave (tr.); 2) to do something for future use (as an auxiliary verb)
shimau	1) to put away, to store away (tr.); 2) to finish doing something irrevocably (as an auxiliary verb)
tsukau	to use (tr.)
wasureru	to forget (tr.)
kudásai	1) please give me (us), (tr.); 2) (with the gerund of a verb, it forms the semi-formal imperative

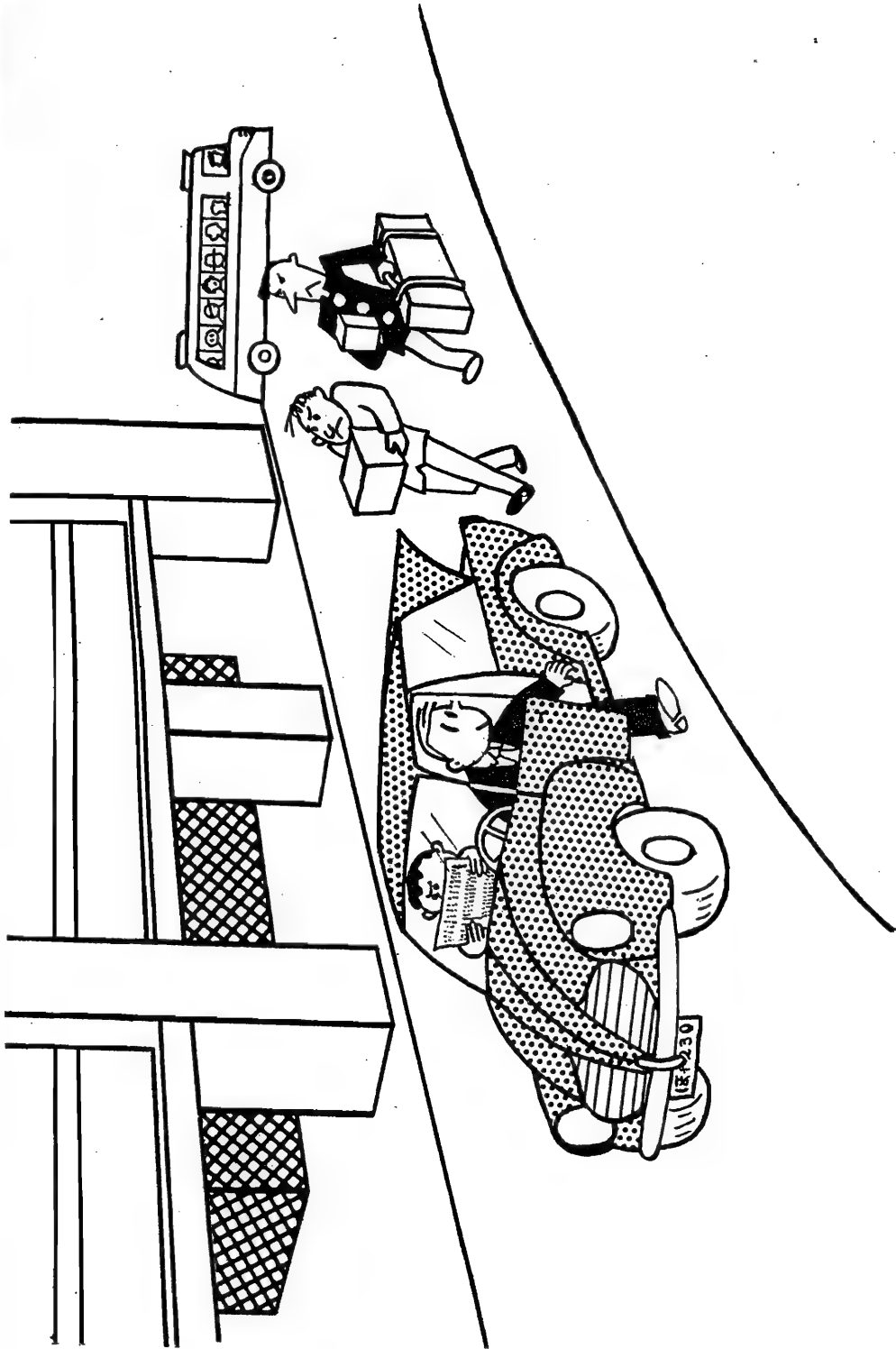
lan-
and

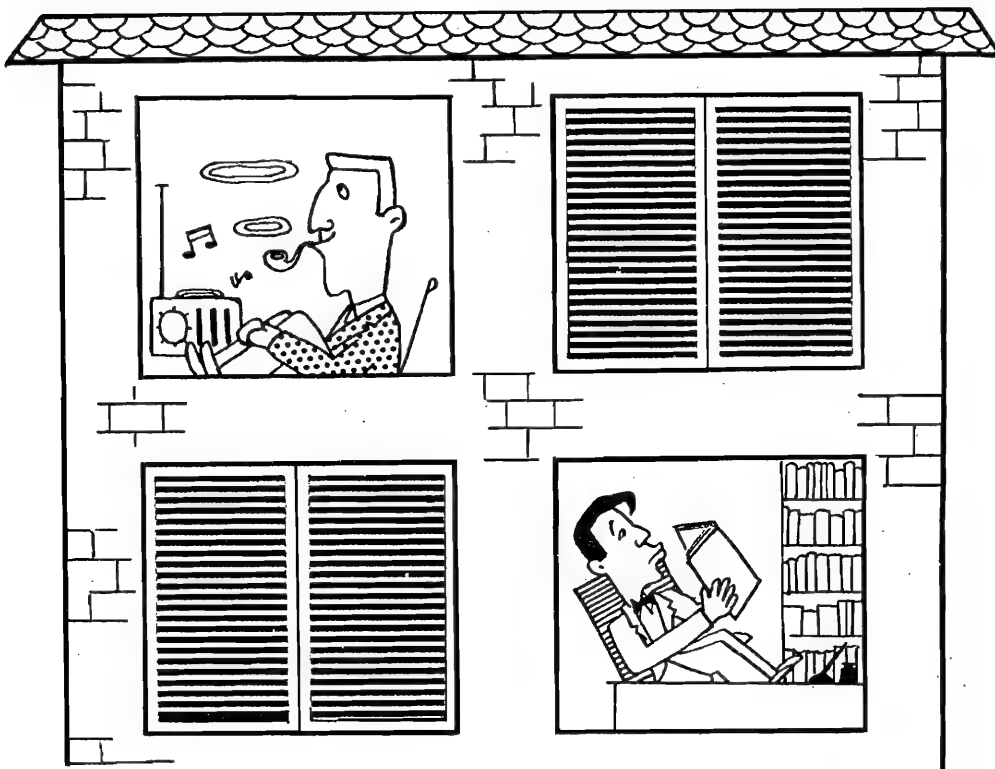
do

ili-

o)
sh

und





PATTERN PASSAGE

- A. Oosaka no Tanaka-san ga kinoo Amerika kara kaette kimashita yo.
- B. Sôo desu ka? Ima Tôokyoo ni tomatté imasu ka?
- A. Êe. Ashita Suzûki-sénsée ni Amériká nó hön o môtte iku to itté imashita. Sonô âto de Oosaka e kaette shimau deshoo.
- B. Kyôo Tanaka-san o uchi e yonde, Amériká nó kôtô o kikimásén ka?
- A. Sôo desu ne. Denwá ô kâkete kiitê mimashôo. Okâshi ga kattê arimasu ka?
- B. Âa. Wasûrêté imashita. Isôide itte kimasu. Anâta wa Tanaka-san ni denwâ ô kâkete oite kudasai né.

- A. Mr. Tanaka of Ôsaka returned yesterday from America, you know.
- B. Oh, really! Is he staying in Tôkyô now?
- A. Yes. He was talking about taking a book on America to Professor Suzuki tomorrow. He'll probably return to Ôsaka after that.
- B. How about inviting Mr. Tanaka over today and hearing about America?
- A. Mmm. I'll telephone and ask. Have you bought some cakes?
- B. Oh, I'd forgotten about that. I'll hurry and go [get some]. [In the meantime,] you telephone to Mr. Tanaka, won't you?

GRAMMAR

5.1 Gerund or -te form of the verb

The verb in its -te form is the gerund. The suffix -te is added directly to the stem of a first-conjugation verb. In adding -te to a second-conjugation verb, the final consonant of the stem makes the same changes as in the case of the suffix -ta. (Lesson IV)

EXAMPLES:

First conjugation

míru	míte	I see	seeing
miséru	mísete	I show it	showing it

Second conjugation

yómu	yónde	I read	reading
yobu	yonde	I call	calling
shinu	shinde	It dies	dying
kiku	kiite	I ask	asking
káku	káite	I write	writing
isógu	isóide	I hurry	hurrying
shimáru	shimátte	It closes	closing
ka(w)u	katte	I buy it	buying
shima(w)u	shimatte	I put it away	putting it away
mátsu	mátte	I wait	waiting
mótsu	mótte	I carry it	carrying it
dásu	dáshite	I mail it	mailing it

Irregular (in the gerund)

kúru	kité	I come	coming
suru	shite	I do it	doing it
iku	itte	I go	going
yu (or iuu)	itte	I say	saying

5.2 Use of the -te form to express "and"

(a) The -te form occurs in the sense of "and" in a sentence, with a series of actions, usually performed by one subject. In such sequences, the action of a preceding -te form must be completed before any subsequent action can occur. This medial -te form has no tense or mood of its own; the principal verb of the sentence indicates the tense or mood. The -te form occurs everywhere in a sentence except in its final position.

EXAMPLES:

Kamí o katte, tegámí ó kákímáshita.	I bought some paper and wrote the letter.
Kamí o katte, tegámí ó kákímáshóo.	Let's buy some paper and write the letter.
Kamí o katte, tegami o kakimasu.	I buy paper and write the letter.

Kamí o katte, tegámí ó káite kudasai.	Please buy some paper and write the letter.
Dénsha de itte, katte, kaérímáshita.	I went by electric train, bought it, and returned.
Hón o mótte, gakkoo e itte, beńkyóó shímáshita.	I took my books and went to school and studied.

The above examples illustrate a series of actions performed by one subject. The gerund form of verbs, in the sense of "and," also occurs in linking clauses where different subjects are performing the same or related actions.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san wa Yokohama e itte,	Mr. Tanaka went to Yokohama, and
Suzuki-san wa Hakóné é ikímáshita.	Mr. Suzuki went to Hakone.
Súmisu-san wa eégó dé káite, Shímizu-san wa nihóngó dé kákímáshita.	Mr. Smith wrote in English, and Mr. Shimizu wrote in Japanese.

(b) The -te form indicates how or under what conditions the action of the final verb occurs.

EXAMPLES:

Isóide kakímáshita.	I hurried and wrote it. (or)
Mótte kimashita.	I wrote it hurriedly.
	I brought it (I came, carrying it).

5.3 Gerund of the copula desu

The gerund of the copula desu is de, and it occurs in the sense of "and" as described in 5.2 above.

EXAMPLES:

Kore wa watákúshí nó de, sore wa anáta no desu.	This is mine, and that is yours.
Kyóoto kara no shimbun wa kore de, Oósáká kárá no wa sore desu.	The newspaper from Kyóto is this one, and the one from Ōsaka is that one.

5.4 Imperative: semi-formal, positive

The gerund form of a verb followed by kudásái, the imperative form of the verb kudáaru, meaning "he gives me," forms the semi-formal positive imperative. The gerund form of the verb without kudásái is also an imperative, but slightly more informal than with kudásái. (Note: There is an informal form which will be taught later.)

EXAMPLES:

Kokó é kíté kudasai.	Please come here.
Koko e kite.	Please come here.
Isóide kudasai.	Please hurry.
Isóide.	Please hurry.
Dóozo tsukátté kúdásái.	Please use it.
Dóozo tsukatte.	Please use it.

(Note: Kudásái without the gerund means "please give me." Examples: Kamí

write
bought

o

sub-
link-
i

na, and
one.
h, and
apanese.

ion of

(or)

rying

of "and"

s yours.

is this
Osaka is

rm of
ive im-
erative,
formal

: Kamí

o kudasai, "Please give me the papers"; Okáshi o kudasai, "Please give me some cakes.")

5.5 Gerund form plus the auxiliary verb iru

(a) The gerund form of a transitive verb plus the auxiliary verb, iru, "to be," indicates continuative action in the sense of "being" or in the act of "doing something."

EXAMPLES:

Tegami o káite imasu.

Benkyoo shite imasu.

Tanaka-san ni mísete imashita.

Kinoo benkyóó shité imáshita.

Míte imasen.

Míte wa imasen.

Míte wa imasu.

I am writing a letter.

I am studying.

I was showing it to Mr. Tanaka.

I was studying yesterday.

I'm not looking at it.

I'm not looking at it.

I am looking at it.

(Note the insertion of wa for emphasis)

(b) The gerund form of an intransitive verb plus the auxiliary verb, iru, "to be," has a stative or descriptive meaning, one of "being" in a given condition.

EXAMPLES:

Íma uchi e kité imasu.

Gakkoo e itte imasu.

Mádo ga shimátte imashita.

Shinde imasu.

Shimbun ni déte imasen.

Déte wa imasen.

Wasurete imasu (exception:

wasureru is a transitive verb).

Shitte imasu (exception: shiru

is a transitive verb).

He is at our home now.

He is at school.

The window was closed.

It's dead. He's dead.

It isn't in the newspapers.

It isn't in it.

He has forgotten.

I know.

5.6 Gerund form plus the auxiliary verb aru

The gerund form of a transitive verb plus the auxiliary verb, aru, "to be," gives a stative description of a situation where an action which has occurred is still in effect.

EXAMPLES:

Mádo ga akete arimasu.

To gá shímete arimasu.

Tsukue no ué ni oite arimasu.

Okáshi ga katté árimásen.

The window has been opened [and is still open]. The window is open.

The door has been closed [and is still closed]. The door is closed.

It has been placed on the desk [where it still is]. It is on the desk.

The cakes have not been bought.

(The situation of not having bought the cakes still exists.)

Tegami ga kaite arimashita.
Tsukutte arimasen deshita.

The letters had been written.
They had not been made.

86

EXA

5.7 Gerund form plus the auxiliary verb shimau

The gerund form of a verb plus the auxiliary verb, shimau, indicates completion or finality of an action.

EXAMPLES:

Kyoo kaite shimaimashoo.

Let's finish writing it today.

(Let's complete the writing of it today.)

Shinde shimaimasu.

It will die.

Sore wa tsukatte shimaishita.

I've used that up.

Wasurete shimaishita.

I completely forgot about it.

the
Kúr
the
men
in

EXA

5.8 Gerund form plus the verb oku

The gerund form of a transitive verb plus the auxiliary verb, oku, means to perform an act with its future use in mind.

EXAMPLES:

Okashi o katte okimashoo.

Let's buy some cakes [so we'll have them].

Tsukue no ue ni oite oite kudasai.

Please leave it on top of the desk [and I'll get it later].

Hon o yonde okimashita.

I read the book [for future reference].

To wa akete okimasen.

I won't leave the door open.

5.9 Gerund form plus the verb miru

The gerund form of the verb plus the auxiliary verb, miru, has the meaning "to try doing something," or "to do something and see (what happens)."

EXAMPLES:

Ego o naratte mimashoo.

Let's try learning English.

Watakushi ga kaite mimasu.

I'll try writing it.

Kiite mite kudasai.

Please ask them and see.

Motte mimashita.

I tried carrying it.

Tsukatte mimasen deshita.

I didn't try using it.

the
fro
EXA

5.10 Gerund form plus the verbs iku and kuru

(a) The gerund form of verbs of motion or of mode of transportation plus the auxiliary verbs, iku or kuru (kaeru, etc.) indicates the direction of the action in terms of the location of the speaker, i.e. kuru, when the action is towards the speaker and iku, when the action is away from the location of the speaker or if it concerns two places not involving the speaker. (Note: In the case of kaeru, it is always in reference to the subject of the action, i.e. "he took it home," or "he took it to the office," etc.)

of
beg
EXA

EXAMPLES:

Oheya ni háitte kimashita.
 Heyá ni háitte ikimashita.
 Heyá kara déte kimasen.
 Oheya kara déte ikimashita.
 Tákushii ni noítte kímásén deshita.
 Arúite ikimashoo.
 Arúite kaerimashita.
 Mótte agarimashita.

He came into the room.
 He went into the room.
 He hasn't come out of the room.
 He has gone out of the room.
 He didn't come by taxi.
 Let's go on foot (walking).
 He went home on foot (walking).
 He took it upstairs. He's gone
 to your home with it.

(b) The gerund form of a verb of learning or performing a skill plus the auxiliary verbs, iku or kúru, locates the action in reference to time. Kúru expresses how the action has been performed up to a given time, usually the present, and iku expresses how the action will be performed from the moment on into the future. Kúru is usually in the perfective; iku is seldom in the perfective.

EXAMPLES:

Imá máde soó bényóó shité kímáshita.

I have studied it that way up to now.

Kinóo máde wa soó bényóó shité kímásén deshita.

I haven't studied it that way up to yesterday.

Íma kara sōo benkyoo shite ikimasu.

I will study that way from now on.

Kore-kara soó bényóó shité íkímáshóo.

Let's study that way from now on.

Imá máde sōo narátte kite imasen.

I haven't learned it that way up to now.

Kore-kara sōo shite ikimasu.

I will do it that way from now on.

(c) The gerund form of verbs plus kúru may have a meaning similar to the English, "to go do something." It expresses the idea of "coming back" from "having gone to do something."

EXAMPLES:

Shimbun o kátte kimasu.

I will go buy a newspaper.

Tanaka-san ni kiítte kímáshóo.

Let's go ask Mr. Tanaka.

Míte kimasu.

I'll go see.

Tegámí ó dáshite kite kudasai.

Please go mail the letter.

(d) The gerund form of intransitive verbs (but not verbs of motion) and of certain transitive verbs plus the auxiliary verb, kúru, indicates "the beginning" of an action.

EXAMPLES

To gá shímátte kimashita.

The door has begun to close.

Áme ga fútte kimashita.

It has begun to rain.

Áme ga fútte kuru deshoo.

It will probably begin to rain.

Dandan wasúrétte kímáshita. (Exception: wasureru is a transitive verb.)

He has begun to forget it gradually.

5.11 Gerund plus pause plus míru, shimau, oku, kúru and iku

When there is a pause break between the gerund and the verbs mentioned above, the verbs míru, shimau, oku, kúru and iku occur not with their meanings as auxiliary verbs but in their full meanings of "to see," "to put away," "to place," "to come" and "to go."

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san ga kité, mimáshita.
Wasurete, okímáshita.
Kamí o katte, shimatte okimasu.

Hako kara dáshite, shimáimáshita.

Jidóosha o tomete, kimáshita.
Yónde, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka came and looked.
I forgot and put it down.
I'll buy the paper and put it away.
I took it out of the box and put it away.
I parked the car and came.
He read it and went.

DRILL

1. Grammar (informal: non-past to perfective)

(káku)	Káita.	(I write.)	I wrote.
(míru)	Míta.	(I see it.)	I saw it.
(mótsu)	Mótta.	(I hold it.)	I held it.
(miséru)	Míseta.	(I show it.)	I showed it.
(naráu)	Narátta.	(I learn it.)	I learned it.
(isógu)	Isóida.	(I hurry.)	I hurried.
(benkyoo suru)	Benkyoo shita.	(I study.)	I studied.
(oku)	Oita.	(I put it down.)	I put it down.
(shimau)	Shimatta.	(I put it away.)	I put it away.
(tsukau)	Tsukatta.	(I use it.)	I used it.
(wasureru)	Wasureta.	(I forget.)	I forgot.

2. Substitution

Átte kudasai.

(dáshite)	Dáshite kudasai.
(déte)	Déte kudasai.
(háitte)	Háitte kudasai.
(káeshite)	Káeshite kudasai.
(kaette)	Kaette kudasai.
(káite)	Káite kudasai.
(kákete)	Kákete kudasai.
(mátte)	Mátte kudasai.
(mísete)	Mísete kudasai.
(míte)	Míte kudasai.
(mótte)	Mótte kudasai.
(shímete)	Shímete kudasai.

Please meet him.

Please mail it.
Please appear.
Please enter.
Please return it.
Please go home.
Please write it.
Please telephone.
Please wait.
Please show me.
Please look at it.
Please hold it.
Please close it.

(yónde)
(isóide)
(narátta)
(wakáita)
(kité)
(shítte)
(benkí)
(aket)
(iret)
(itte)
(itte)
(katt)
(kiit)
(oite)
(shim)
(toma)
(tome)
(tsuk)
(yond

3. S

Dáshi

(káes)
(káit)
(káke)
(mátt)
(míse)
(míte)
(mótt)
(shín)
(yónc)
(narí)
(benk)
(aket)
(iret)
(itt)
(katt)
(kiit)
(oite)
(tome)
(tsul)
(yon)
(shi)

oned
ean-
away,"

d.

t it

and

(yónde)	Yónde kudasai.
(isóide)	Isóide kudasai.
(narátte)	Narátte kudasai.
(wakátte)	Wakátte kudasai.
(kité)	Kité kudasai.
(shite)	Shité kúdasái.
(benkyoo shite)	Bénkyóó shité kúdasái.
(akete)	Akété kúdasái.
(irete)	Ireté kúdasái.
(itte)	Itté kúdasái.
(itte)	Itté kúdasái.
(katte)	Katté kúdasái.
(kiite)	Kiité kúdasái.
(oite)	Oité kúdasái.
(shimatte)	Shimátté kúdasái.
(tomatte)	Tomátté kúdasái.
(tomete)	Tomété kúdasái.
(tsukatte)	Tsukátté kúdasái.
(yonde)	Yónde kúdasái.

Please read it.
Please hurry.
Please learn it.
Please understand.
Please come.
Please do it.
Please study.
Please open it.
Please put it in.
Please go.
Please say it.
Please buy it.
Please ask.
Please put it down.
Please put it away.
Please stay overnight.
Please stop them.
Please use it.
Please call them.

3. Substitution

Dáshite imasu.

(káeshite)	Káeshite imasu.
(kaite)	Kaite imasu.
(kákete)	Kákete imasu.
(mátte)	Mátte imasu.
(mísete)	Mísete imasu.
(míte)	Míte imasu.
(mótte)	Mótte imasu.
(shímete)	Shímete imasu.
(yónde)	Yónde imasu.
(narátte)	Narátte imasu.
(benkyoo shite)	Benkyoo shite imasu.
(akete)	Akete imasu.
(irete)	Irete imasu.
(itte)	Itte imasu.
(katte)	Katte imasu.
(kiite)	Kiite imasu.
(oite)	Oite imasu.
(tomete)	Tomete imasu.
(tsukatte)	Tsukatte imasu.
(yonde)	Yonde imasu.
(shimatte)	Shimatte imasu.

He is putting it out.

He is returning it.
He is writing it.
He is telephoning.
He is waiting.
He is showing it.
He is looking at it.
He is holding it. He has it.
He is closing it.
He is reading it.
He is learning it.
He is studying.
He is opening it.
He is putting it in.
He is saying it.
He is buying it.
He is asking.
He is putting it down.
He is stopping it.
He is using it.
He is calling them.
He is putting it away.

4. Substitution

Watanabe-san o m^atte imasu.

I am waiting for Mr. Watanabe.

(sénsée)	Sénsée o matte imasu.
(eégó nó sénsée)	Eégó nó sénsée o matte imasu.
(nihóngó nó sénsée)	Nihóngó nó sénsée o matte imasu.
(Matsumoto-san)	Matsumoto-san o matte imasu.

I am waiting for the teacher.
I am waiting for the English teacher.
I am waiting for the Japanese teacher.
I am waiting for Mr. Matsumoto.

(akété
(irété
(itté
(katté
(kiité
(oité
(tomét
(tsuka
(shima
(wasúr
(yondé

5. Substitution

Hón o shimatte imasu.

He is putting the books away.

(nihóngó no	Nihóngó nó hón o shimatte
hón)	imasu.
(eégó nó hón)	Eégó nó hón o shimatte
	imasu.
(tegami)	Tegami o shimatte imasu.
(okáshi)	Okáshi o shimatte imasu.
(kamí)	Kamí o shimatte imasu.

He is putting the Japanese
books away.
He is putting the English
books away.
He is putting the letters away.
He is putting the cakes away.
He is putting the paper away.

8. Su
Tegami
(dáshi
(káesh
(yónde
(irete
(oite)
(shima

6. Substitution

Uchi de narátte imasu.

I am learning at home.

(gakkoo)	Gakkoo de narátte imasu.
(daigaku)	Daigaku de narátte imasu.
(Watanabe-san no uchi)	Watanabe-san no uchi de narátte imasu.
(Matsúmótó- sénsée no uchi)	Matsúmótó-sénsée no uchi narátte imasu.
(Kyóoto)	Kyóoto de narátte imasu.

I am learning at school.
I am learning at the university.
I am learning at Mr. Watanabe's home.
I am learning at Professor Matsumoto's home.
I am learning in Kyōto.

9. Su
Kamí g
(katte
(míte)
(oite)
(shima
(tsuka
(wasur

7. Grammar (Transitive plus áru: non-past informal to semi-formal)

(dáshite aru)	Dáshite arimasu.	They are out [on the table]. They have been put out.
(káite aru)	Káite arimasu.	It is written.
(kákete aru)	Kákete arimasu.	It is hung up.
(mísete aru)	Mísete arimasu.	It has been shown [them].
(míte aru)	Míte arimasu.	It has been looked at.
(shímete aru)	Shímete arimasu.	It is closed.
(yónde aru)	Yónde arimasu.	It has been read.

(to)
(shíme
(hikid
(akete
(jidóo
no má
(shíme

(mádo)
(akete

atanabe.	(akété áru)	Akete arimasu.	It is open. It has been opened.
teacher.	(irété áru)	Irete arimasu.	It is in it. It has been put in it.
English	(itté áru)	Itte arimasu.	It has been told them.
	(katté áru)	Katte arimasu.	It has been purchased.
	(kiité áru)	Kiite arimasu.	It has been asked.
	(oité áru)	Oite arimasu.	It is there. It has been left there.
Japanese	(tomété áru)	Tomete arimasu.	It has been stopped.
	(tsukátté áru)	Tsukatte arimasu.	It has been used.
	(shimátté áru)	Shimatte arimasu.	It is put away. It has been put away.
atsumoto.	(wasuréte áru)	Wasurete arimasu.	It has been forgotten.
	(yondé áru)	Yonde arimasu.	They have been invited.

8. Substitution

s away.	Tegami wa <u>kaite</u> arimasu.	The letter has been written.
rese	(dáshite) Tegami wa <u>dáshite</u> arimasu.	The letter has been left out.
ish	(káeshite) Tegami wa <u>káeshite</u> arimasu.	The letter has been returned.
	(yónde) Tegami wa <u>yónde</u> arimasu.	The letter has been read.
ers away.	(irete) Tegami wa <u>irete</u> arimasu.	The letter has been put in.
s away.	(oite) Tegami wa <u>oite</u> arimasu.	The letter has been left there.
r away.	(shimatte) Tegami wa <u>shimatte</u> arimasu.	The letter has been put away.

9. Substitution

l.	Kamí ga <u>dáshite</u> arimasu.	The paper has been put out.
niversi-	(katte) Kamí ga <u>katte</u> arimasu.	The paper has been bought.
atanabe's	(míte) Kamí ga <u>míte</u> arimasu.	The paper has been looked at.
ssor	(oite) Kamí ga <u>oite</u> arimasu.	The paper has been put there.
	(shimatte) Kamí ga <u>shimatte</u> arimasu.	The paper has been put away.
	(tsukatte) Kamí ga <u>tsukatte</u> arimasu.	The paper has been used.
	(wasurete) Kamí ga <u>wasurete</u> arimasu.	The paper has been forgotten.

10. Progressive substitution

	<u>Mádo</u> ga <u>akete</u> arimasu.	The window is open [having been opened.]
They	(to) To ga <u>akete</u> arimasu.	The door is open.
	(shímete) To ga <u>shímete</u> arimasu.	The door is closed.
	(hikidashi) Hikidáshí ga <u>shímete</u> arimasu.	The drawer is closed.
	(akete) Hikidashi ga <u>akete</u> arimasu.	The drawer is open.
	(jidóosha no mádo) Jidóosha no <u>mádo</u> ga <u>akete</u> arimasu.	The car window is open.
	(shímete) Jidóosha no <u>mádo</u> ga <u>shímete</u> arimasu.	The car window is closed.
	(mádo) Mádo ga <u>shímete</u> arimasu.	The window is closed.
	(akete) <u>Mádo</u> ga <u>akete</u> arimasu.	The window is open.

11. Grammar (stative -te iru: non-past; informal to semi-formal)

(dète iru)	Dète imasu.	It's out.
(háitte iru)	Háitte imasu.	It's in.
(kaette iru)	Kaette imasu.	He's back.
(isóide iru)	Isóide imasu.	He's in a hurry.
(kakátte iru)	Kakátte imasu.	There is a telephone call.
(shimátte iru)	Shimátte imasu.	It's closed.
(wakátte iru)	Wakátte imasu.	He understands.
(kité iru)	Kité imasu.	He's here.
(aite iru)	Aite imasu.	It's open.
(itte iru)	Itte imasu.	He's there.
(tomatte iru)	Tomatte imasu.	It's stopped.
(wasurete iru)	Wasurete imasu.	He has forgotten.
(shinde iru)	Shinde imasu.	It's dead.
(shitte iru)	Shitte imasu.	He knows.

12. Substitution

Seńsée ga kité imasu.

The teacher is here.

(háitte)	Seńsée ga háitte imasu.	The teacher is in there.
(kaette)	Seńsée ga kaette imasu.	The teacher is back.
(isóide)	Seńsée ga isóide imasu.	The teacher is in a hurry.
(itte)	Seńsée ga itte imasu.	The teacher is there.
(tomatte)	Seńsée ga tomatte imasu.	The teacher is staying overnight.
(wasurete)	Seńsée ga wasurete imasu.	The teacher has forgotten.
(shitte)	Seńsée ga shitte imasu.	The teacher knows.

13. Grammar (intransitive stative to transitive stative)

(Jidóosha ga tomatte imasu.)	(A car is parked.)
Jidóosha ga tomete arimasu.	A car has been parked.
(Kuruma ga tomatte imasu.)	(A car is parked.)
Kuruma ga tomete arimasu.	A car has been parked.
(Básu ga tomatte imasu.)	(A bus is parked.)
Básu ga tomete arimasu.	A bus has been parked.
(Mádo ga aite imasu.)	(The window is open.)
Mádo ga akete arimasu.	The window has been left opened.
(To ga aite imasu.)	(The door is open.)
To ga akete arimasu.	The door has been left opened.
(Mádo ga shimátte imasu.)	(The window is closed.)
Mádo ga shíméte arimasu.	The window has been closed.
(To ga shimátte imasu.)	(The door is closed.)
To ga shíméte arimasu.	The door has been closed.
(Hikídáshí gá shimátte imasu.)	(The drawer is closed.)
Hikídáshí gá shíméte arimasu.	The drawer has been closed.
(Deńwá gá kakátte imasu.)	(There is a telephone call.)
Deńwá gá kákéte arimasu.	They have been called.

(Rájio ga kakátte imasu.)
 Rájio ga kákete arimasu.
 (Okáshi ga háitte imasu.)
 Okáshi ga irete arimasu.
 (Kamí ga háitte imasu.)
 Kamí ga irete arimasu.

(The radio is on.)
 The radio is turned on.
 (There are cakes in there.)
 The cakes have been put in there.
 (There is paper in there.)
 Paper has been put in there.

14. Substitution

Átte mimasu.

(dáshite) Dáshite mimasu.
 (káeshite) Káeshite mimasu.
 (káite) Káite mimasu.
 (kákete) Kákete mimasu.
 (mísete) Mísete mimasu.
 (míte) Míte mimasu.
 (mótte) Mótte mimasu.
 (yónde) Yónde mimasu.
 (narátte) Narátte mimasu.
 (shímete) Shímete mimasu.
 (shite) Shite mimasu.
 (benkyoo shite) Benkyoo shite mimasu.
 (akete) Akete mimasu.
 (irete) Irete mimasu.
 (itte) Itte mimasu.
 (katte) Katte mimasu.
 (kiite) Kiite mimasu.
 (oite) Oite mimasu.
 (tsukatte) Tsukatte mimasu.
 (yonde) Yonde mimasu.

I'll try meeting him.

I'll try mailing it.
 I'll try returning it.
 I'll try writing it.
 I'll try telephoning.
 I'll try showing it.
 I'll take a look.
 I'll try holding it.
 I'll try reading it.
 I'll try learning it.
 I'll try closing it.
 I'll try doing it.
 I'll try studying.
 I'll try opening it.
 I'll try putting it in.
 I'll try saying it.
 I'll try buying it.
 I'll try asking them.
 I'll try putting it down.
 I'll try using it.
 I'll try calling them.

15. Grammar (perfective: semi-formal to informal)

(dáshite mimashita)	Dáshite mita.	I tried mailing it.
(káite mimashita)	Káite mita.	I tried writing it.
(kákete mimashita)	Kákete mita.	I tried telephoning.
(mísete mimashita)	Mísete mita.	I tried showing it.
(míte mimashita)	Míte mita.	I tried looking at it.
(mótte mimashita)	Mótte mita.	I tried carrying it.
(yónde mimashita)	Yónde mita.	I tried reading it.
(shímete mimashita)	Shímete mita.	I tried closing it.
(narátte mimashita)	Narátte mita.	I tried learning it.
(shité mimashita)	Shité mita.	I tried doing it.
(benkyóó shité mimashita)	Benkyóó shité mita.	I tried studying.
(akété mimashita)	Akété mita.	I tried opening it.
(irété mimashita)	Irété mita.	I tried putting it in.
(itté mimashita)	Itté mita.	I tried saying it.
(katté mimashita)	Katté mita.	I tried buying it.
(kiité mimashita)	Kiité mita.	I tried asking.

(tomátté mímáshita)	Tomátté míta.	I tried stopping there.
(tomété mímáshita)	Tomété míta.	I tried stopping it.
(tsukátté mímáshita)	Tsukátté míta.	I tried using it.
(yóndé mímáshita)	Yóndé míta.	I tried calling them.

16. Grammar (non-past: informal to semi-formal)

(dáshite oku)	Dáshite okimasu.	I'll leave it out [for later use].
(káeshite oku)	Káeshite okimasu.	I'll return it [for others who may need it].
(káite oku)	Káite okimasu.	I'll write it [and leave it for them].
(kákete oku)	Kákete okimasu.	I'll telephone them [so they'll know].
(mísete oku)	Mísete okimasu.	I'll show them [so they'll know].
(míte oku)	Míte okimasu.	I'll take a look [now so that I'll know about it].
(yónde oku)	Yónde okimasu.	I'll read it [so I won't have to later].
(shímete oku)	Shímete okimasu.	I'll leave it closed.
(narátte oku)	Narátte okimasu.	I'll learn it [for later use].
(shite oku)	Shite okimasu.	I'll have it done.
(benkyoo shite oku)	Benkyoo shite okimasu.	I'll study it [for later use].
(akete oku)	Akete okimasu.	I'll leave it open.
(irete oku)	Irete okimasu.	I'll leave it in.
(itte oku)	Itte okimasu.	I'll tell them [for their information].
(katte oku)	Katte okimasu.	I'll buy it [for later use].
(kiite oku)	Kiite okimasu.	I'll ask them [for my information].
(oite oku)	Oite okimasu.	I'll put it down and leave it.
(yonde oku)	Yonde okimasu.	I'll invite them [now so I won't have to later].
(shimatte oku)	Shimatte okimasu.	I'll put it away [for later use].

17. Grammar (perfective: informal to semi-formal)

(dáshite shimatta)	Dáshite shimaimashita.	I've mailed it.
(káeshite shimatta)	Káeshite shimaimashita.	I've returned it.
(káette shimatta)	Káette shimaimashita.	He's gone home already.
(káite shimatta)	Káite shimaimashita.	I've finished writing it.
(kákete shimatta)	Kákete shimaimashita.	I've already telephoned.
(mísete shimatta)	Mísete shimaimashita.	I've already shown it.
(míte shimatta)	Míte shimaimashita.	I've already seen it.
(shímete shimatta)	Shímete shimaimashita.	I've already closed it.
(yónde shimatta)	Yónde shimaimashita.	I've already read it.
(shite shimatta)	Shité shímáimáshita.	I've already done it.

(akete
(irete
(itte s
(katte
(shimat
(shinde
(tsukat

18. Su

Okáshi

(kamí)
(shimbu
(empits
(tabako

(eégó n

(nihóng
hón)

19. Pi

Sénsée

(Watana
(mísete
(rajio)

(kákete

(tonari

(oite)

(gakkoc

(káeshi

(Matsur

(dáshi

(sénsée

(kiite)

(akete shimatta)	Akété shímáímáshita.	I've already opened it.
(irete shimatta)	Irété shímáímáshita.	I've already put it in.
(itte shimatta)	Iíté shímáímáshita.	He's already gone away.
(katte shimatta)	Katté shímáímáshita.	I've already bought it.
(shimatte shimatta)	Shimátté shímáímáshita.	I've already put it away.
(shinde shimatta)	Shíndé shímáímáshita.	He died.
(tsukatte shimatta)	Tsukátté shímáímáshita.	I've already used it up.

ter

s who

it for

hey'll

l

that

have

use].

use].

18. Substitution

Okáshi o katté kite kudasai.

Please go buy some cakes.

(kamí)	Kamí o katté kite kudasai.
(shimbun)	Shimbun o katté kite kudasai.
(empitsu)	Empitsu o katté kite kudasai.
(tabako)	Tabako o katté kite kudasai.

Please go buy some paper.
Please go buy the newspaper.
Please go buy some pencils.
Please go buy some ciga-
rettes.

(eégó nó hón) Eégó nó hón o katté kite kudasai. Please go buy an English book.

(nihóngó nó hón) Nihóngó nó hón o katté kite kudasai. Please go buy a Japanese book.

19. Progressive substitution

Seúsée ni kiite kimasu.

I'll go ask the teacher.

(Watanabe-san)	Watanabe-san ni <u>kiite</u> kimasu.	I'll go ask Mr. Watanabe.
(mísete)	<u>Watanabe-san</u> ni <u>mísete</u> kimasu.	I'll go show Mr. Watanabe.
(rajioya-san)	<u>Rajioya-san</u> ni <u>mísete</u> kimasu.	I'll go show the radio store man.
(kákete)	<u>Rajioya-san</u> ni <u>kákete</u> kimasu.	I'll go telephone the radio store man.
(tonari no heyá)	Tonari no heyá ni <u>kákete</u> kimasu.	I'll go hang it up in the next room
(oite)	<u>Tonari no heyá</u> ni <u>oite</u> kimasu.	I'll go leave it in the next room.
(gakkoo)	Gakkoo ni <u>oite</u> kimasu.	I'll go leave it at school.
(káeshite)	Gakkoo ni <u>káeshite</u> kimasu.	I'll go return it to the school.
(Matsumoto-san)	Matsumoto-san ni <u>káeshite</u> kimasu.	I'll go return it to Mr. Matsumoto.
(dáshite)	<u>Matsumoto-san</u> ni <u>dáshite</u> kimasu.	I'll go mail it to Mr. Matsumoto.
(seúsée)	Seúsée ni <u>dáshite</u> kimasu.	I'll go mail it to the teacher.
(kiite)	<u>Seúsée</u> ni <u>kiite</u> kimasu.	I'll go ask the teacher.

infor-

e].

orma-

e it.

I

er

20. Substitution (location: -te kimasu)Matsumoto-san ga dáshite kimashita.

Mr. Matsumoto brought it out.

(dète) Matsumoto-san ga dète kimashita.

Mr. Matsumoto came out.

(háitte) Matsumoto-san ga háitte kimashita.

Mr. Matsumoto came in.

(káette) Matsumoto-san ga káette kimashita.

Mr. Matsumoto has come back.

(káite) Matsumoto-san ga káite kimashita.

Mr. Matsumoto has written to us.

(mótte) Matsumoto-san ga mótte kimashita.

Mr. Matsumoto brought it here.

(itte) Matsumoto-san ga itté kímáshita.

Mr. Matsumoto informed us.

(kiite) Matsumoto-san ga kiité kímáshita.

Mr. Matsumoto asked us.

21. Substitution (location: -te ikimasu)Sénsée ga dète ikimashita.

The teacher has gone out.

(háitte) Sénsée ga háitte ikimashita.

The teacher went in.

(káette) Sénsée ga káette ikimashita.

The teacher went home.

(mótte) Sénsée ga mótte ikimashita.

The teacher took it with him.

22. Substitution (-te in the sense of "and")Tanaka-san ga káite, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka wrote it and went off.

(dáshite) Tanaka-san ga dáshite, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka put it out and went off.

(káeshite) Tanaka-san ga káeshite, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka returned it and went off.

(kákete) Tanaka-san ga kákete, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka telephoned and went.

(míte) Tanaka-san ga míte, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka looked at it and went off.

(shímete) Tanaka-san ga shímete, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka closed it and went off.

(yónde) Tanaka-san ga yónde, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka read it and went away.

(kité) Tanaka-san ga kité, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka came and went.

(shite) Tanaka-san ga shite, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka did it and left.

(benkyoo shite) Tanaka-san ga benkyoo shite, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka did his studying and left.

(akete) Tanaka-san ga akete, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka opened it and went off.

(oite) Tanaka-san ga oite, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka left it and went away.

(shimatte) Tanaka-san ga shimatte, ikímáshita.

Mr. Tanaka put it away and went off.

(tomatte)	Tanaka-san ga tomatte, ikimashita.	Mr. Tanaka stayed overnight and went on.
(tsukatte)	Tanaka-san ga tsukatte, ikimashita.	Mr. Tanaka used it and went off.
(wasurete)	Tanaka-san ga wasurete, ikimashita.	Mr. Tanaka forgot and went off.

23. Substitution

Isóide káite, dáshite kudasai.

Please write it in a hurry and mail it.

(mísete)	Isóide káite, mísete kudasai.	Please write it in a hurry and show it to me.
(mótte kite)	Isóide káite, mótte kite kudasai.	Please write it in a hurry and bring it to me.
(mótte itte)	Isóide káite, mótte itte kudasai.	Please write it in a hurry and take it over there.

24. Substitution

Koko e kité, káite imasu.

He has come here and is writing it [here].

(kákete)	Koko e kité, kákete imasu.	He has come here and is telephoning [from here].
(mátte)	Koko e kité, mátte imasu.	He has come here and is waiting [here].
(mísete)	Koko e kité, mísete imasu.	He has come here and is showing it [here].
(míte)	Koko e kité, míte imasu.	He has come here and is looking at it [here].
(yónde)	Koko e kité, yónde imasu.	He has come here and is reading it [here].
(narátte)	Koko e kité, narátte imasu.	He has come here and is learning it [here].
(shite)	Koko e kité, shite imasu.	He has come here and is doing it [here].
(benkyoo shite)	Koko e kité, benkyoo shite imasu.	He has come here and is studying [here].
(itte)	Koko e kité, itte imasu.	He has come here and is talking about it [here].
(katte)	Koko e kité, katte imasu.	He has come here and is buying it [here].
(kiite)	Koko e kité, kiite imasu.	He has come here and is asking about it [here].
(shimatte)	Koko e kité, shimatte imasu.	He has come here and is putting it away [here].
(tomatte)	Koko e kité, tomatte imasu.	He has come here and is staying overnight [here].

25. Grammar (combining two sentences into one, using the gerund)

(Tegami o kakímashóo.)

(Dashímashóo.)

Tegami o káite, dashímashóo.

(Let's write a letter.)

(Let's mail it.)

Let's write a letter and mail it.

(Eego no tegami o kakímashóo.)

(Misémashóo.)

Eego no tegami o káite, misémashóo.

(Let's write a letter in English.)

(Let's show it to him.)

Let's write a letter in English and show it to him

(Okáshi o kaímashóo.)

(Mótte kaerimashóo.)

Okáshi o katte, mótte kaerimashóo.

(Let's buy some cakes.)

(Let's take them home.)

Let's buy some cakes and take them home.

(Okáshi o kaímashóo.)

(Mótte ikimashóo.)

Okáshi o katte, mótte ikimashóo.

(Let's buy some cakes.)

(Let's bring them over.)

Let's buy some cakes and take them over.

(Seńsée ni deńwá ó kákémashóo.)

(Kiíte mímashóo.)

Seńsée ni deńwá ó kárete, kiíte mímashóo.

(Let's telephone the teacher.)

(Let's try asking him.)

Let's try telephoning the teacher and asking him.

(Gakkoo e mótte ikimashóo.)

(Seńsée ni misémashóo.)

Gakkoo e mótte itte, seńsée ni misémashóo.

(Let's take it to school.)

(Let's show it to the teacher.)

Let's take it to school and show it to the teacher.

(Gakkoo e mótte ikimashita.)

(Seńsée ni misémashita.)

Gakkoo e mótte itte, seńsée ni misémashita.

(I took it to school.)

(I showed it to the teacher.)

I took it to school and showed it to the teacher.

(Daigaku e mótte ikimashita.)

(Wasúréte kímashita.)

Daigaku e mótte itte, wasúréte kímashita.

(I took it to the university.)

(I forgot it there.)

I took it to the university and forgot it there.

(Uchí é káerímashita.)

(Beńkyóo shímashita.)

Uchí é káette, beńkyóo shímashita.

(I returned home.)

(I studied.)

I returned home and studied.

(Uchí é káerímashita.)

(Kiíte mímashita.)

Uchí é káette, kiíte mímashita.

(I returned home.)

(I asked about it.)

I returned home and asked about it.

(To ó ákémashita.)

(Déte ikimashita.)

To o akete, déte ikimashita.

(He opened the door.)

(He went out.)

He opened the door and went out.

(Kyóo ka
(AshitaKyóo ka
san(íma sh
(Ashita
íma sh(Katte
(Shimat
Katte,(Dáshit
(Tsukat
Dáshit(Katte
(Shimat
Katte,(Ítté
(Míte
Ítté,(Mótte
(Tsuka
Mótte(Káett
(Beńky
Káett(Káite
(Míset
Káite(Mótte
(Wasúr
Mótte(Dáshi
(Tsuka
Dáshi(Koré
(Soré
Koré

(Kyôo katte okimasu.)
(Ashita Tanaka-san ni dashimasu.)

(I will buy it today [to use later].)
(I will serve it to Mr. Tanaka tomorrow.)

it.
h.) Kyôo katté ôite, ashita Tanaka-san ni dashimasu.

I will buy it today and serve it to Mr. Tanaka tomorrow.

h and
(Ima shimatte okimasu.)
(Ashita dashimasu.)
Ima shimatté ôite, ashita dashimasu.

(I will put it away for now.)
(I will serve it tomorrow.)
I will put it away for now and serve it tomorrow.

them
(Katte arimasu.)
(Shimatte arimasu.)
Katte, shimatte arimasu.

(It is bought.)
(It is put away.)
It is bought and put away.

them
(Dâshite arimasu.)
(Tsukatte arimasu.)
Dâshite, tsukatte arimasu.

(It's been taken out.)
(It's been used.)
It's been taken out and used.

her and
(Katte okimasu.)
(Shimatte okimasu.)
Katte, shimatte okimasu.

(I will buy it [to use later].)
(I will put it away [to use later].)
I will buy it and put it away.

ow it
(Ittê kûdasâi.)
(Mite kudasai.)
Ittê, mite kudasai.

(Please go.)
(Please look at it.)
Please go and look at it.

it to
(Motte itte kudasai.)
(Tsukatté kûdasâi.)
Motte itte, tsukatté kûdasâi.

(Please take it.)
(Please use it.)
Please take it with you and use it.

l for-
(Kâette kudasai.)
(Benkyôo shitê kûdasâi.)
Kâette, benkyôo shitê kûdasâi.

(Please go home.)
(Please study.)
Please go home and study.

it.
(Kâite kudasai.)
(Mîsete kudasai.)
Kâite, mîsete kudasai.

(Please write it.)
(Please show it to me.)
Please write it and show it to me.

(Motte kaette shimaimashita.)
(Wasûrétê shimâimashita.)
Motte kaette, wasûrétê shimâimashita.

(He took it home.)
(He forgot about it.)
He took it home and forgot about it.

it.
(Dâshite shimaimashita.)
(Tsukatté shimâimashita.)
Dâshite, tsukatté shimâimashita.

(I took them out.)
(I used them up.)
I took them out and used them up.

(Koré gâ wâtakûshî nô desu.)
(Soré gâ Tânakâ-sân nô desu.)
Koré gâ wâtakûshî nô de, soré gâ Tânakâ-sân nô desu.

(This one is mine.)
(This one is Mr. Tanaka's.)
This one is mine and that one is Mr. Tanaka's.

(Kore ga mannénhitsu desu..)

(Sore ga empitsu desu.)

Kore ga mannénhitsu de, sore ga
empitsu desu.

(This is the fountain pen.)

(That is the pencil.)

This is the fountain pen and that is
the pencil.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

1. A. Ima daigaku e itte imasu¹ ka?
B. Ee. Watakushi wa daigaku ni hairimashita.
A. Aa, soo desu ka. Daigaku de nani o benkyoo shite imasu ka?
B. Nihongo o naratte imasu.
A. Dono hon o tsukatte benkyoo shite imasu ka?
B. Watanabe-sensee no hon de naratte imasu.
A. Sono nihongo no hon o ima motte imasu ka?
B. Hai.
A. Sono hon o misete kudasai.
B. Hai. Doozo.
A. Arigatoo gozaimasu.
2. A. Sumisu-san e no tegami o kakimashita ga...
B. Aa. Doozo arigatoo. Ego de kaita deshoo ne?
A. Hai. Ego de kaita mimashita. Yonde mite kudasai.
B. Kore de kekko desu ga...Watanabe-sensee no koto wa kaita arimasen ne.
A. Wasurete shimaimashita.
B. Dewa sono koto mo kaita oite kudasai.
A. Hai.
3. A. Konoe kami o katte kimashita ga, ikaga desu ka?
B. Ee. Kekko desu.
A. Doko ni okimashoo ka?
B. Tsukue no hikidashi ni shimatte oite kudasai. Mannenitsu wa?
A. Aa. Katte depaato ni wasurete kimashita. Isoide itte kimasu.
B. Ee. Isoide mite kite kudasai.
4. A. Ikeda-san kara no tegami o mimashita ka?
B. Iie. Nan to itte kimashita² ka?
A. Haabado daigaku ni hairu to itte imasu yo.
B. Ima sono tegami o motte imasu ka?
A. Iie. Uchi ni oite arimasu. Ashita motte kimashoo.

1. Are you attending
2. What did he say?

A.
B.
A.
B.

A.

B.

6. A.

B.

A.

B.

A.

7. A.

B.

A.

B.

8. (A

A.

B.

A.

B.

9. A.

B.

A. CH

1. Ka

2. Be

3. Na

4. Te

5. Mo

6. Mi

7. Oi

8. Mo

9. Si

10. Wa

11. Ki

hat is

- A. Kyōo Tanáká-sán gá kúru tō ima denwá gá kákátte kimashita.
 B. Déwa isóide okáshi o katté kímashōo.
 A. Kono hako ni okáshi ga háitte imasen ka?
 B. Háitte imasu ga, sōre wa Yamamoto-san no uchí e ashita mōtte iku n' desu.
 A. Déwa kore o Tanaka-san ni dāshite, Yamámótó-sán nó wa áto de depáato e itte kaímashōo.
 B. Déwa sōo shimasu.

6. A. Watakushi no mannénhitsu wa dōko ni áru deshoo ka? Shitté ímasu ka?
 B. Kinoo Yamamoto-san ga tsukátté ímāsén deshita ka?
 A. Sōo deshita nēe. Sonó áto de dōko ni shimátté shimáttá n' deshoo ka?
 B. Yamamoto-san ni denwa o kákete kiité mímashōo ka?
 A. Soó shíté kudásái.

7. A. Tanaka-san ga tsukúé nó úé ni hako o wasúrété íkimashita yo.
 B. Nani ga háitte iru deshoo ka? Akété mímashōo.
 A. Áa. Okáshi desu. Tanaka-san no uchí e denwá ó kákete okimashoo.
 B. Watakushi ga áto de mōtte iku tō itté óite kudasai.

8. (A-san ga denwá ó kákete imasu.)
 A. Kinoo Matsúmótó-sénsée e no tegami o anáta ni míseta deshoo?
 B. Ée.
 A. Ano tegami ga watakúshí nó tsúkúé nó úé ni oité árimásén ka?
 B. Ano tegami wa watakushi ga kinoo sénsée ni dāshite shimaimashita.

isen né.

9. A. Depáato e ikímásén ka?
 B. Kyōo wa ikímásén. Benkyoo ga arimasu.

EXERCISES

- A. Change the following verbs into their semi-formal imperative forms.

1. Káku.
2. Benkyoo suru.
3. Naráu.
4. Tsukau.
5. Míru.
6. Miséru.
7. Oku.
8. Mōtsu.
9. Shimau.
10. Wasureru.
11. Kúru.

12. Iku.
13. Yuu.
14. Kiku.

B. Select the suitable particle for the following blanks from among the particles ga, o, ni, and de.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ego _____ benkyoo shite imasu. | I am studying English. |
| 2. Daigaku _____ benkyoo shite imasu. | I am studying at the university. |
| 3. Gakkoo _____ tsukatte imasu. | I am using it at school. |
| 4. Dóno kami _____ tsukátté ímasu ka? | Which paper are you using? |
| 5. Kami _____ háitte imasu. | The paper is in there. |
| 6. Benkyoo no kotó _____ wasurete imasu. | He has forgotten about his studies. |
| 7. Hikidashi _____ háitte imasu. | It's in the drawer. |
| 8. Tegami _____ kaite imasu. | He is writing a letter. |
| 9. Sensée _____ mísete imasu. | He is showing it to the teacher. |
| 10. Deńwá _____ kákátte imasu. | There is a telephone call. |
| 11. Deńwá _____ kákete imasu. | He is telephoning. |
| 12. Hako _____ shimatte imasu. | He is putting it away in the box. |
| 13. Hako _____ shimatte imasu. | He is putting the boxes away. |
| 14. Mádo _____ shimátte imasu. | The windows are closed. |
| 15. To _____ shímete imasu. | He is closing the door. |
| 16. Náni _____ míte imasu ka? | What are you looking at? |
| 17. Watanabe-san _____ kité imasu. | Mr. Watanabe is here. |
| 18. Matsumoto-san no uchi _____ itte imasu. | He is over at Mr. Matsumoto's home. |
| 19. Seńsée no uchi _____ mísete imasu. | He is showing it over at the teacher's house. |
| 20. Kami _____ káite imasu. | He is writing it on (onto) the paper. |

C. Select the suitable auxiliary verbs for the following blanks from among the verbs kúru, iku, miru, aru, iru, oku, and shimau.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Kyóo benkyóó shité _____. | Let's study today [so we'll have it done]. |
| 2. Tanaka-san ga mótte itte _____. | Mr. Tanaka took it away. |
| 3. Okáshi o kátte _____. | I bought some cakes [to use]. |
| 4. Ego o narátte _____. | I'll try learning some English. |
| 5. Rájio o kiíté _____. | He was listening to the radio. |
| 6. Hako no ue ni pén o oite _____. | I will leave the pen on top of the box. |
| 7. Nihongo o benkyoo shite _____. | I'm going to try studying Japanese. |
| 8. Shimbun o yónde _____. | I am reading the newspaper. |
| 9. Mádo ga akete _____. | The window has been opened [and still is]. |
| 10. Mádo ga aite _____. | The window is open. |
| 11. Mádo o akete _____. | He is opening the window. |
| 12. Jidóosha no to o shímete _____. | I will leave the car door closed. |
| 13. Tanaka-san ga hón o mótte _____. | Mr. Tanaka took the book along. |

14. Hikidashi ni shimatte _____.
 15. Depáato e isóide itte _____.
 16. To ga shimátte _____.
 17. Gakkoo kara káette _____.
 18. Kyóoto e itte _____.
 19. Watanabe-san ni soo itte _____.
 20. Kuruma o tomete _____.
 21. Denwá gá kakátte _____.
 22. Wasúrété _____.

It is put away in the drawer.
 I'm going to the department store
 and back in a hurry.
 The door is closed.
 He didn't come home from school.
 Let's go to Kyōto and see.
 I'll go tell Mr. Watanabe that.
 He parked the car and went off.
 There is a telephone call.
 I forgot about it completely.

D. Combine each of the following sets of sentences into one compound sentence.

1. Dénsha de ikímáshita.
Jidóosha de kaérímáshita.
2. Kamí o kaímáshita.
Tegami o kakímáshita.
3. Tanaka-san ga to ó akémáshita.
Náka ni haírímáshita.
4. Denwá ó kakémáshita.
Matsumoto-san o yobímáshita.
5. Uchi e kaérímáshita.
Benkyóo shímáshita.
6. Kátté mímáshita.
Tsukátté mímáshita.
7. Tegami o mótte kite kudasai.
Mísete kudasai.
8. Tegami ga káite arimasu.
Hikidashi ni shimatte arimasu.
9. Gakkoo e itté kúdásái.
Narátte kudasai.
10. Okáshi o kátté okímáshoo.
Dáshite okimashoo.
11. Tsukátté shímáímáshita.
Wasurete imasu.
12. Shimbun de yomímáshita.
Shitte imasu.

LESSON VI

gakusee	student
jibiki	dictionary
monó	1) thing (tangible object); 2) person
nóoto	notebook
góhan	1) meal; 2) cooked rice
gyuunyuu	fresh milk
koóhii	coffee
míruku	canned milk
ocha	green tea
pán	bread
konna	this kind of
sonna	that kind of, such
anna	that kind of
dónna	what kind of?
dóoshite	why?
daké	only
shika	only
kéredomo (kéredo)	but
onagai suru	to request something (tr.)
hanásu	to speak (tr.)
iru	to need, to be necessary (intr. 2nd conj.)
komáru	to be in difficulty, to be at a loss (intr.)
nómu	1) to drink; 2) to smoke (tr.)
obóeru	1) to memorize, to learn; 2) to remember, <u>obóete iru</u> (tr.)
oshieru	to teach, to show the way (tr.)
shirábéru	to investigate, to do research (tr.)
tabéru	to eat (tr.)
uru	to sell (tr.)

A. Wat

B. Tar

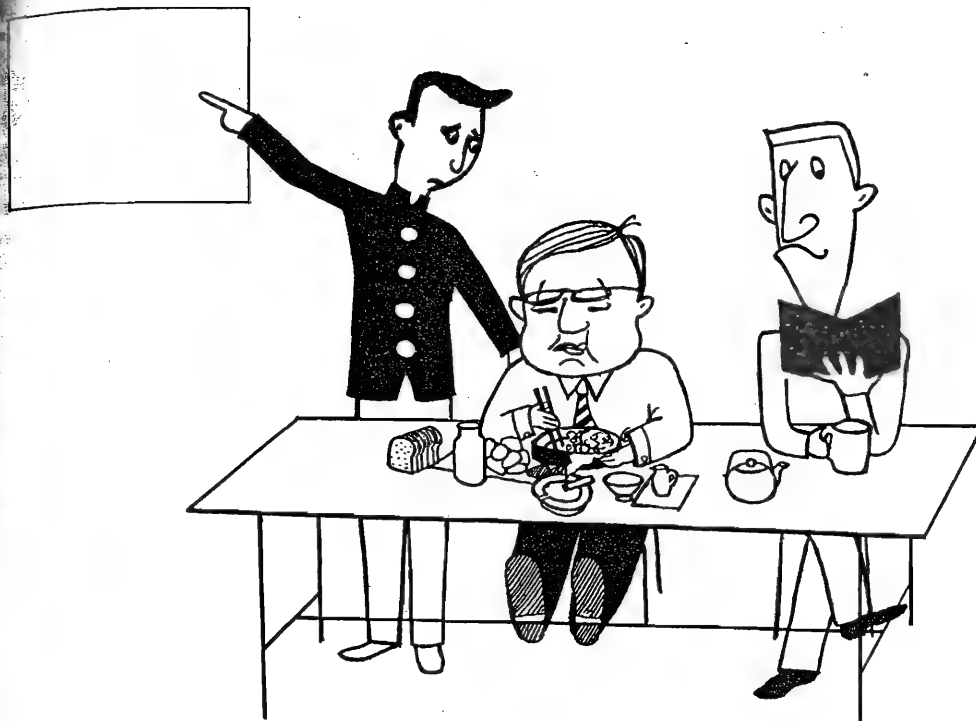
A. Tar

B. Arc

A. Dé

B. Ta

A. On



PATTERN PASSAGE

ate iru

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>A. Watakushi no hón ga náí n' desu ga, Tanaka-san ga mótte ikánákatta deshoo ka?</p> <p>B. Tanaka-san ga mótte ittá ka ikánákatta ka shirímásén.</p> <p>A. Tanaka-san wa anó hón ga hónya ni mo nákute komátte imashita né. Anó hón wa sonna ni útté ínái n' desu.</p> | <p>A. My book is missing; I wonder if Mr. Tanaka didn't take it with him?</p> <p>B. I don't know whether Mr. Tanaka took it with him or not.</p> <p>A. Mr. Tanaka was having a difficult time, wasn't he, because they don't have that book even in the bookstores. They don't sell that book in very many places (very much).</p> |
| <p>B. Are wa éki no máe no hónya de shika utte inai to omoimasu. Tanaka-san wa sore o shirázú ní írú no deshoo.</p> <p>A. Déwa anó hito wa watakushi ni iwánái de anó hón o mótte káetta no deshoo ka?</p> <p>B. Tanaka-san ga mótte iru ka doo ka kiíté mímashóo ka?</p> <p>A. Onegai shimasu. Kéredomo Tanáká-sán dáké de wa nákute Ikédá-sán ní mo kiíté kúdásái.</p> | <p>B. I think that is sold only in the bookstore in front of the station. Mr. Tanaka is probably not aware of that.</p> <p>A. Then, I wonder if he took that book home without telling me.</p> <p>B. Shall I ask and see if Mr. Tanaka has it?</p> <p>A. Please, [if you would]. However, please don't just ask Mr. Tanaka but ask Mr. Ikeda, too.</p> |

GRAMMAR

6.1 Informal negatives of verbs

(a) The non-past informal negative is the stem of a first-conjugation verb plus nai or the stem of a second-conjugation verb plus anai. The negative ending, nai or anai, is a verbal adjective and so the informal negative form of the verb is conjugated as a verbal adjective. (Lesson VIII)

EXAMPLES:

First conjugation

dé-ru	dé-nai	I don't go out.
mí-ru	mí-nai	I don't see.

Second conjugation

yóm-u	yom-ánai	I don't read.
yob-u	yob-anai	I don't call.
shin-u	shin-anai	I don't die.
kák-u	kak-ánai	I don't write.
isóg-u	isóg-ánai	I don't hurry.
kakár-u	kakár-ánai	It doesn't hang.
ka(w)-u	kaw-anai	I don't buy.
mát-su	mat-ánai	I don't wait.
dás-u	das-ánai	I don't put it out.

Irregular verbs

kúru	kó-nai	I don't come.
suru	shi-nai	I don't do it.
áru	nái	I don't have it. There isn't any.

Copula

dé-su	dé wa nái	It isn't ---.
-------	-----------	---------------

(b) The perfective informal negative is the stem of a first-conjugation verb plus nakatta or the stem of a second-conjugation verb plus anakatta.

EXAMPLES:

First conjugation

dé-ru	dé-nakatta	I didn't go out.
mí-ru	mí-nakatta	I didn't see it.

Second conjugation

yóm-u	yom-ánakatta	I didn't read it.
yob-u	yob-ánakatta	I didn't call them.
shin-u	shin-ánakatta	I didn't die.
kák-u	kak-ánakatta	I didn't write it.
isóg-u	isóg-ánakatta	I didn't hurry.
kakár-u	kakár-ánakatta	It didn't hang.
ka(w)-u	kaw-ánakatta	I didn't buy it.

mát-su
dás-u

mat-ánakatta
das-ánakatta

I didn't wait.
I didn't mail it.

Irregular verbs

kúru
suru
áru

kó-nakatta
shi-nákatta
nákatta

I didn't come.
I didn't do it.
I didn't have it. There wasn't any.

Copula

dé-su

dé wa nákatta

It wasn't ---.

6.2 Negative gerunds

(a) The stem of a first-conjugation verb plus nakute and the stem of a second-conjugation verb plus anakute form a gerund. The nakute form indicates causal relationship between two phrases, with the phrase following nakute being the resulting situation.

EXAMPLES:

Ano gakusee wa beńkyóó shínákute,
komarimasu.

Koóhii ga nákute, komátte ita.

Tanaka-san ga kónakute, komáří-
máshita.

Seńsée de wa nákute, yókatta desu.

I have difficulty because that stu-
dent doesn't study.

He was having difficulty because he
didn't have coffee.

We had a hard time because Mr.
Tanaka didn't come.

It's a good thing it wasn't the
teacher.

(b) The stem of a first-conjugation verb plus nai de and the stem of a second-conjugation verb plus anai de form a negative gerund. It is the negative equivalent of the positive -te form. It has the meaning "without doing" or "without having done" something.

EXAMPLES:

Shirábénai de dashímáshita.

Uránai de mótte imasu.

Kakánai de kudasai.

Tabénai de okimashoo.

Máda kaéránai de imasu.

I mailed it without having looked
it over.

I didn't sell it. I have it. (I
have it without having sold it.)

Please don't write it.

Let's not eat it. (Let's leave it
without eating it.)

I am still here (without having
gone home).

(c) The stem of a first-conjugation verb plus zu ni and the stem of a second-conjugation verb plus azu ni occur interchangeably with nai de (and anai de) with the meaning "without doing" or "without having done" something.

EXAMPLES:

Shirábezu ni dashímáshita.

I mailed it without having looked
it over.

Urazu ni mótte imasu.

I have it. (I have it without having sold it.)

Máda kaerazu ni imasu.

I am still here (without having gone home.)

Yamamoto-san o mátazu ni kaerí-máshoo.

Let's go home and not wait for Mr. Yamamoto (without waiting for Mr. Yamamoto).

Benkyoo sézu ni gakkoo é ikimashita. He went to school without studying.

Sayonara mo iwazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without even saying, "Goodbye."

(Note: For the irregular verbs suru and kuru, the forms are sézu and kózu. The form arazu from aru occurs only in classical usage.)

Compare the following examples.

Akénai de kudasai.

Please don't open it.

Akénai de, (pause) kudásai.

Please give it to me without opening it.

Akézu ní kudásai.

Please give it to me without opening it.

(Note: The two forms, nai de and zu ni, are not interchangeable before the imperative auxiliary, kudásai as in the first example above, Kudásai in the latter two examples is not an auxiliary.)

6.3 Chart on the inflections of the negative

INFORMAL		SEMI-FORMAL		
Non-past	-nai	-nai desu	-masén	-masén desu*
Perfective	-nakatta	-nakatta desu	-masén deshita	-masén deshita desu*
Gerund	-nai de	-nai de	-masén de*	-masén deshite*
	-nakute	-nakute		
	-zu ni	-zu ni		

After verbs of the second conjugation, each of the endings in the first two columns is preceded by an "a." Of the three columns under "Semi-formal," the nai desu column is the least formal and masén desu is the most formal.

* The asterisk denotes that the form is not commonly used.

108

6.4

anna
modi

EXAM

6.5

noun
adje
tent

EXAM

6.6

"me

EXA

sp
th

EX

6.4 Konna, sonna, anna and donna
Konna meaning "this kind of," sonna meaning "that kind of" or "such,"
anna meaning "that kind of," and donna meaning "what kind of" occur as noun
 modifiers without the particle no.

EXAMPLES:

Konna monó wa tabémásén.

I don't eat things like this. I
 don't eat this kind of thing.

Sonna koóhii ga arímásu ka?

Do they have such coffee? Do they
 have that kind of coffee?

Dónna hito desu ka?

What kind of person is he?

6.5 Particle ni

The particle ni occurring after nouns of the konna type and adjectival
 nouns (Lesson VIII) indicates the noun to be a modifier of the verb or verbal
 adjective. It tells "how" (the manner) or "how much" (to what degree or ex-
 tent) an action is performed, or "how" a situation has become.

EXAMPLES:

Sonna ni isógímásén.

I'm not in such a hurry. I'm not
 in that much of a hurry.

Anáta mo anna ni koóhii o nomí-
 másu ka?

Do you also drink that much coffee?

Shízuka ni shimasu.

I will do it quietly.

6.6 Particles dake, shika, and daké shika

The particles dake, shika, and daké shika mean "only," "but only," or
 "merely" and occur in the following combinations.

Preceding word		Particle		Inflected word
Noun	plus	dake	plus	positive verb or copula
Noun	plus	dake	plus	negative verb or copula
Noun	plus	shika	plus	negative verb
Noun	plus	daké shika	plus	negative verb

EXAMPLES:

Koohii dake nomimasu.

He drinks only coffee.

Koohii dake nomímásén.

Coffee is the only thing he doesn't
 drink.

Koóhii shika nomímásén.

He drinks nothing else but coffee.

Koóhii daké shika nomímásén.

He drinks nothing else but coffee
 (more emphatic than the above).

Dake usually replaces the particles o, ga, and wa, but in instances of
 special emphasis it is followed by these particles. Dake never occurs with
 the particle mo; it occurs together in combination with all other particles.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san dake kimasu.

Only Mr. Tanaka is coming.

Tanáka-sán daké ga kimasu.

Mr. Tanaka alone is coming.

Pán dake tabemasu.
 Pan dáké o tabemasu.
 Tanáká-sán dáké ni misémáshita.
 Tanaka-san ni dake misémáshita.
 Toókyóó dáké de mimáshita.
 Koré dáké de kékkoo desu.
 Kokó dáké nó hanáshí desu.

I eat only bread.
 I eat only bread.
 I showed it only to Mr. Tanaka.
 I showed it only to Mr. Tanaka.
 I saw it only in Tōkyō.
 Just this is fine.
 It's a story to be told only here
 (and not to be repeated).

6.7 Conjunction kéredomo (kéredo)

Kéredomo and its more informal form kéredo have the same meaning and function as the conjunction ga with which they are interchangeably used. In formal speeches and writings, ga occurs more frequently than the colloquial kéredomo.

EXAMPLES:

Uchi e mótte kimáshita ga, kaímásén	They brought it to our home, but I
deshita.	didn't buy it.
Uchi e mótte kimáshita keredomo,	They brought it to our home, but I
kaímásén deshita.	didn't buy it.

6.8 ---ka ---ka plus verb

Two interrogative sentences, of similar pattern and in sequence, having the meaning "(whether)...or" (1.8c) may be followed by another verb. The contrasting interrogative questions may be:

- (a) a noun plus ka followed by a similar noun plus ka
- (b) a positive question followed by a negative question, using the same verb
- (c) a positive question followed by dóo ka

EXAMPLES:

Tanáka-sán nó ka Shímizu-san no ka	Can you tell whether it's Mr.
wakárimasu ka?	Tanaka's or Mr. Shimizu's?
Tanáka-sán nó ka Shímizu-san no ka	I can't tell whether it's Mr.
wakárimásén.	Tanaka's or Mr. Shimizu's.
Ikú ka ikánái ka wakárimásén.	I don't know whether I'm going or
	not.
Kúru ka dóo ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether they're com-
	ing or not.
Kitá ka dóo ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether they've come
	or not.
Tabéru ka tabénai ka kiité míte	Please ask and see if they eat it
kudasai.	or not.

6.9 Honorific prefixes o and go

O and go occur before nouns: 1) to indicate that the object belongs to the person being addressed, or a third person, but not the speaker.

EXAMPLES:

gobyooki
gobenkyoo
gohón
ogénki

your sickness, his sickness
your studies, his studies
your book, his book
your health, his health

2) to show politeness, particularly in formal or honorific speech

EXAMPLES:

oyasumi
okaimono
okane

vacation, your vacation
shopping, your shopping
money

3) because the noun in question always occurs preceded by the honorific.

EXAMPLE:

ocha

tea

DRILL

1. Grammar (informal non-past: positive to negative)

First conjugation

(kakéru)	kakénai	(I telephone.)	I don't telephone.
(miséru)	misénai	(I show it.)	I don't show it.
*(obóéru)	obóénai	(I memorize it.)	I don't memorize it.
*(obóete iru)	obóete inai	(I remember it.)	I don't remember it.
(shiméru)	shiménai	(I close it.)	I don't close it.
*(shirábéru)	shirábénai	(I investigate it.)	I don't investigate it.
*(tabéru)	tabénai	(I eat it.)	I don't eat it.
*(oshieru)	oshienai	(I teach it.)	I don't teach it.
(tomeru)	tomenai	(I stop it.)	I don't stop it.
(wasureru)	wasurenai	(I forget it.)	I don't forget it.
(iru)	inai	(I'm here.)	I'm not here.
(míru)	mínai	(I look at it.)	I don't look at it.

Second conjugation

(dásu)	dasánai	(I mail it.)	I don't mail it.
*(hanásu)	hanásánai	(I speak it.)	I don't speak it.
(káesu)	kaésánai	(I return it.)	I don't return it.

(káeru)	kaéránai	(I return.)	I don't return.
*(komáru)	komaránai	(I will be in difficulty.)	I will not be in difficulty.
(shimáru)	shimaránai	(It closes.)	It does not close.
(wakáru)	wakaránai	(I understand it.)	I don't understand it.

*(iru)	iranai	(I need it.)	I don't need it.
(shiru)	shiranai	(I learn of it.)	I don't know it.
*(uru)	uranai	(I sell it.)	I don't sell it.

*(nómu)	nománai	(I drink it.)	I don't drink it.
(yómu)	yománai	(I read it.)	I don't read it.

(yobu)	yobanai	(I call them)	I don't call them.

(káku)	kakánai	(I write it.)	I don't write it.
(aku)	akanai	(It opens.)	It doesn't open.
(iku)	ikanai	(I go.)	I don't go.
(oku)	okanai	(I put it down.)	I don't put it down.

(isógu)	isógánai	(I hurry.)	I don't hurry.

(mátsu)	matánai	(I wait for it.)	I don't wait for it.
(mótsu)	motánai	(I hold it.)	I don't hold it.

(áu)	awánai	(I meet them.)	I don't meet them.
(kau)	kawanai	(I buy it.)	I don't buy it.
(naráu)	naráwánai	(I learn it.)	I don't learn it.
(tsukau)	tsukawanai	(I use it.)	I don't use it.
(yuu)	iwanai	(I say it.)	I don't say it.

Irregular verbs

(áru)	nái	(There is.)	There isn't.
(kúru)	kónai	(I come.)	I don't come.
(benkyoo suru)	benkyoo shinai	(I study it.)	I don't study it.
*(onegai suru)	onegai shinai	(I request it.)	I don't request it.
(suru)	Shinai	(I do it.)	I don't do it.

The copula

(désu) (semi-formal)	dé wa náí (in-formal)	(It is....)	It isn't....
----------------------	-----------------------	-------------	--------------

*Indicates new verbs in this lesson

2. Grammar (negatives: semi-formal to informal)

First conjugation

(obóemásén)	obóénai	I don't memorize it.
(oboete imasen)	oboete inai	I don't remember it.
(shirábémásén)	shirábénai	I don't investigate it.
(tabémásén)	tabénai	I don't eat it.
(oshémásén)	oshienai	I don't teach it.

Second conjugation

(hanáshímásén)	hanásánai	I don't speak it.
(komárimásén)	komaránai	I don't have difficulty.
(irímásén)	iranai	I don't need it.
(urímásén)	uranai	I don't sell it.
(nomímásén)	nománai	I don't drink it.

Irregular verbs

(arímásén)	nái	There isn't any.
(kimásén)	kónai	I don't come.
(shimásén)	shinai	I don't do it.
(onégái shimásén)	onégai shinai	I don't request it.
(shinímásén)	shinanai	It doesn't die.

The copula

(dé wa arímásén)	dé wa nái	It isn't...
------------------	-----------	-------------

3. Substitution (negative imperative)

Nománai de kudasai.

Please don't drink.

(yománai)	Yománai de kudasai.	Please don't read it.
(yobanai)	Yobánai de kudasai.	Please don't call them.
(ikanai)	Ikánai de kudasai.	Please don't go there.
(kakánai)	Kakánai de kudasai.	Please don't write.
(okanai)	Okánai de kudasai.	Please don't put it down.
(isógánai)	Isógánai de kudasai.	Please don't hurry.
(matánai)	Matánai de kudasai.	Please don't wait.
(motánai)	Motánai de kudasai.	Please don't carry it.
(awánai)	Awánai de kudasai.	Please don't meet them.
(kawanai)	Kawánai de kudasai.	Please don't buy it.
(iwanai)	Iwánai de kudasai.	Please don't tell about it.
(shimawanai)	Shimáwánai de kudasai.	Please don't put it away.
(tsukawanai)	Tsukáwánai de kudasai.	Please don't use it.
(hanásánai)	Hanásánai de kudasai.	Please don't speak.

(dasánai)	Dasánai de kudasai.	Please don't put it out.
(kaésánai)	Kaésánai de kudasai.	Please don't return it.
(kaéránai)	Kaéránai de kudasai.	Please don't return.
(uranai)	Uránai de kudasai.	Please don't sell it.
(kónai)	Kónai de kudasai.	Please don't come.
(shinai)	Shínai de kudasai.	Please don't do it.
(onegai shinai)	Onégái shínai de kudasai.	Please don't request that.
(shinainai)	Shinánai de kudasai.	Please don't die.
(tabénai)	Tabénai de kudasai.	Please don't eat.
(shiménai)	Shiménai de kudasai.	Please don't close it.
(shirábénai)	Shirábénai de kudasai.	Please don't investigate it.
(kakénai)	Kakénai de kudasai.	Please don't telephone.
(misénai)	Misénai de kudasai.	Please don't show it.
(tomenai)	Toménai de kudasai.	Please don't stop me.
(akenai)	Akénai de kudasai.	Please don't open it.
(oshienai)	Oshiénai de kudasai.	Please don't teach them.
(mínai)	Mínai de kudasai.	Please don't look at it.

4. Substitution

Kawánai de kaerimashita.

He went home without buying it.

(iwanai)	Iwánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without saying [so].
(shimawanai)	Shimáwánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without putting it away.
(awánai)	Awánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without meeting him.
(motánai)	Motánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without it.
(matánai)	Matánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without waiting.
(dasánai)	Dasánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without putting it out.
(kaésánai)	Kaésánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without returning it.
(uranai)	Uránai de kaerimashita.	He went home without selling it.
(nománai)	Nománai de kaerimashita.	He went home without drinking.
(yománai)	Yománai de kaerimashita.	He went home without reading it.
(yobanai)	Yobánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without inviting them.
(kakánai)	Kakánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without writing it.
(kikanai)	Kikánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without asking.
(tabénai)	Tabénai de kaerimashita.	He went home without eating.
(shirábénai)	Shirábénai de kaerimashita.	He went home without investigating it.
(misénai)	Misénai de kaerimashita.	He went home without showing it.
(kakénai)	Kakénai de kaerimashita.	He went home without telephoning.
(shiménai)	Shiménai de kaerimashita.	He went home without closing it.
(obóénai)	Obóénai de kaerimashita.	He went home without learning it.

(mí
(shí
(shí
(oné

5.

Áwa

(mó
(má
(ká
(dá
(há(yó
(nó
(ká
(tá
(sh(mí
(sh
(ká
(ob
(mí
(sé
(on(kó
(ka
(sh
(ur
(yo
(ki
(ik

6.

(Mo

(Ma

(Ka

(Da

(Yo

(mínai)	Mínai de kaerimashita.	He went home without seeing it.
(shinanai)	Shinánai de kaerimashita.	He went home without dying.
(shinai)	Shinái de kaerimashita.	He went home without doing it.
(onegai shinai)	Onégái shinái de kaerimashita.	He went home without making the request.

5. Substitution

t.	Áwazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without meeting him.
	(mótazu)	Mótazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without it.
	(mátazu)	Mátazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without waiting.
	(káesazu)	Káesazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without returning it.
	(dásazu)	Dásazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without mailing it.
	(hanásazu)	Hanásazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without speaking about it.
	(yómazu)	Yómazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without reading it.
	(nómazu)	Nómazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without drinking.
g it.	(kákazu)	Kákazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without writing it.
	(tábezu)	Tábezu ni kaerimashita. He went home without eating.
g	(shirábezu)	Shirábezu ni kaerimashita. He went home without investigating it.
	(mísezu)	Mísezu ni kaerimashita. He went home without showing it.
ng it	(shímezu)	Shímezu ni kaerimashita. He went home without closing it.
	(kákezu)	Kákezu ni kaerimashita. He went home without telephoning.
ng	(obóezu)	Obóezu ni kaerimashita. He went home without learning it.
	(mízu)	Mízu ni kaerimashita. He went home without seeing it.
	(sézu)	Sézu ni kaerimashita. He went home without doing it.
ng.	(onégái sézu)	Onégái sézu ni kaerimashita. He went home without requesting it.
ng it		
	(kózu)	Kózu ni kaerimashita. He went home without coming here.
ning	(kawazu)	Kawazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without buying it.
	(shinazu)	Shinazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without dying.
ng it.	(urazu)	Urazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without selling it.
ng.	(yobazu)	Yobazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without inviting them.
ng it.	(kikazu)	Kikazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without asking them.
ting	(ikazu)	Ikazu ni kaerimashita. He went home without going there.

6. Grammar (-nái de to --zu ni)

ing it.	(Motánai de kaerimashita.)	Mótazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without it.
g.	(Matánai de kaerimashita.)	Mátazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without waiting.
g.	(Kaésánai de kaerimashita.)	Káesazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without returning it.
sti-	(Dasánai de kaerimashita.)	Dásazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without mailing it.
	(Yománai de kaerimashita.)	Yómazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without reading it.

(Nománai de kaerimashita.)	Nómazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without drinking.
(Kakánai de kaerimashita.)	Kákazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without writing.
(Tabénai de kaerimashita.)	Tábezu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without eating.
(Shirábénai de kaerimashita.)	Shirábezu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without investigating it.
(Misénai de kaerimashita.)	Mísezu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without showing it.
(Obóénai de kaerimashita.)	Obóezu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without learning it.
(Mínai de kaerimashita.)	Mízu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without seeing it.
(Shinái de kaerimashita.)	Sézu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without doing it.
(Kónai de kaerimashita.)	Kózu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without coming here.
(Kawánai de kaerimashita.)	Kawazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without buying it.
(Uránai de kaerimashita.)	Urazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without selling it.
(Kikánai de kaerimashita.)	Kikazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without asking.
(Ikánai de kaerimashita.)	Ikazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without going there.
(Yobánai de kaerimashita.)	Yobazu ni kaerimashita.	He went home without inviting them.

7. Substitution

Gyuunyuu ga irimasu.

I need some milk.

(koóhí)	Koóhí ga irimasu.
(míruku)	Míruku ga irimasu.
(ocha)	Ocha ga irimasu.
(pán)	Pán ga irimasu.
(góhan)	Góhan ga irimasu.
(jibiki)	Jibíki ga irimasu.
(nóoto)	Nóoto ga irimasu.

I need some coffee.
 I need some canned milk.
 I need some tea.
 I need some bread.
 I need some rice.
 I need a dictionary.
 I need a notebook.

8. Response (negative)

Q. Gyuunyúú ga írimásu ka?

Q. Do you need some milk?

A. Iie. Gyuunyúú wa írimásén.

A. No. I don't need any milk.

(koóhí)	Koóhí ga írimásu ka? Iie. Koóhí wa írimásén.
(míruku)	Míruku ga írimásu ka? Iie. Míruku wa írimásén.

Do you need some coffee?
 No. I don't need any coffee.
 Do you need some canned milk?
 No. I don't need any canned milk.

hout	(ocha)	Ocha ga irímásu ka?	Do you need some tea?
hout		Iie. Ocha wa irímásén.	No. I don't need any tea.
hout	(pán)	Pán ga irímásu ka?	Do you need some bread?
hout eat-		Iie. Pán wa irímásén.	No. I don't need any bread.
hout in-	(góhan)	Góhan ga irímásu ka?	Do you need some rice?
t.		Iie. Góhan wa irímásén.	No. I don't need any rice.
hout	(jibiki)	Jibíki ga irímásu ka?	Do you need a dictionary?
		Iie. Jibíki wa irímásén.	No. I don't need a dictionary.
hout	(nóoto)	Nóoto ga irímásu ka?	Do you need a notebook?
		Iie. Nóoto wa irímásén.	No. I don't need a notebook.

hout see-

9. Substitution

hout do-

(a) Koóná mónó wa tabénai deshoo.

They probably don't eat this kind of thing.

hout com-

(misénai) Koóná mónó wa misénai deshoo.

They probably don't show this kind of thing.

hout buy-

(mínai) Koóná mónó wa mínai deshoo.

They probably don't see this kind of thing.

hout

(dasánai) Koóná mónó wa dasánai deshoo.

They probably don't serve this kind of thing.

hout ask-

(yománai) Koóná mónó wa yománai deshoo.

They probably don't read this kind of thing.

hout go-

(nománai) Koóná mónó wa nománai deshoo.

They probably don't drink this kind of thing.

hout in-

(kakánai) Koóná mónó wa kakánai deshoo.

They probably don't write this kind of thing.

(kawanai) Koóná mónó wa kawánai deshoo.

They probably don't buy this kind of thing.

(iranai) Koóná mónó wa iránai deshoo.

They probably don't need this kind of thing.

(shiranai) Koóná mónó wa shiránai deshoo.

They probably don't know this kind of thing.

(tsukawanai) Koóná mónó wa tsukáwanai deshoo. They probably don't use this kind of thing.

(b) Soóná mónó wa tabénai deshoo.

They probably don't eat that kind of thing.

(c) Ánná mónó wa tabénai deshoo.

They probably don't eat that kind of thing.

(Use the list in Drill 9a)

k?

y milk.

10. Substitution

(a) Konna ni tabénai deshoo.

They probably don't eat this much.

offee.

milk?

anned milk.

(yománai)	Konna ni yománai deshoo.	They probably don't read this much.
(nománai)	Konna ni nománai deshoo.	They probably don't drink this much.
(shirábénai)	Konna ni shirábénai deshoo.	They probably don't investigate this much.
(komáránai)	Konna ni komáránai deshoo.	They probably don't have this much difficulty.
(kónai)	Konna ni kónai deshoo.	Probably this many don't come.
(iranai)	Konna ni iránai deshoo.	They probably don't need this much.
(shinai)	Konna ni shinai deshoo.	They probably don't do it this much.
(uranai)	Konna ni uránai deshoo.	They probably don't sell this much.
(oshienai)	Konna ni oshienai deshoo.	They probably don't teach this much.
(b)	Sonna ni <u>tabénai</u> deshoo.	They probably don't eat that much.
(c)	Anna ni <u>tabénai</u> deshoo.	They probably don't eat that much.

(Use list in Drill 10a)

11. Grammar (negative informal: non-past to perfective)

(kakénai)	kakénakatta	(I don't telephone.)	I didn't telephone.
(misénai)	misénakatta	(I don't show it.)	I didn't show it.
(obóénai)	obóénakatta	(I don't learn it.)	I didn't learn it.
(shiménai)	shiménakatta	(I don't close it.)	I didn't close it.
(shirábénai)	shirábénakatta	(I don't investigate it.)	I didn't investigate it.
(tabénai)	tabénakatta	(I don't eat it.)	I didn't eat it.
(mínai)	mínakatta	(I don't see it.)	I didn't see it.
(oshienai)	oshienakatta	(I don't teach it.)	I didn't teach it.
(tomenai)	tomenakatta	(I don't stop it.)	I didn't stop it.
(wasurenai)	wasurenakatta	(I don't forget it.)	I didn't forget it.
(inai)	inakatta	(I'm not here.)	I wasn't here.

(awánai)	awánakatta	(I don't meet them.)	I didn't meet them.
(naráwanai)	naráwanakatta	(I don't learn it.)	I didn't learn it.
(dasánai)	dasánakatta	(I don't mail it.)	I didn't mail it.
(hanásánai)	hanásánakatta	(I don't speak.)	I didn't speak.
(kaésánai)	kaésánakatta	(I don't return it.)	I didn't return it.
(kaéránai)	kaéránakatta	(I don't return.)	I didn't return.
(kakáranai)	kakáranakatta	(There is no call.)	There was no call.
(shimáranai)	shimáranakatta	(It doesn't close.)	It didn't close.
(wakáranai)	wakáranakatta	(I don't understand it.)	I didn't understand it.
(kakánai)	kakánakatta	(I don't write.)	I didn't write.
(isógánai)	isógánakatta	(I don't hurry.)	I didn't hurry.

(noma
(yoma
(mata
(motá
(kawa
(shin
(tsuk
(iwar
(irar
(toma
(akar
(ikar
(okai

(yoba

(nái
(kón

(shi
(ben
(one

12.

(Nóo
Nóo
(Nóo
Nóo
(Nóo
Nóo
(Nóo
Nóo
(Och
Och
(Och
Och
(Pár
Pár
(Pár
Pár
(Gór
Gór

is much	(nománai)	nománakatta	(I don't drink.)	I didn't drink.
his	(yománai)	yománakatta	(I don't read.)	I didn't read.
gate	(matánai)	matánakatta	(I don't wait.)	I didn't wait.
	(motánai)	motánakatta	(I don't carry it.)	I didn't carry it.

is much	(kawanai)	kawánakatta	(I don't buy it.)	I didn't buy it.
me.	(shimawanai)	shimáwánakatta	(I don't put it away.)	I didn't put it away.
is much	(tsukawanai)	tsukáwánakatta	(I don't use it.)	I didn't use it.
his	(iwanai)	iwánakatta	(I don't say it.)	I didn't say it.
	(iranai)	iránakatta	(I don't need it.)	I didn't need it.
is much	(tomaranai)	tomáranakatta	(It doesn't stop.)	It didn't stop.
his	(akanai)	akánakatta	(It doesn't open.)	It didn't open.
	(ikanai)	ikánakatta	(I don't go.)	I didn't go.
	(okanai)	okánakatta	(I don't put it down.)	I didn't put it down.
t much.	(yobanai)	yobánakatta	(I don't call.)	I didn't call.
t much.				

	(nái)	nákatta	(There isn't any.)	There wasn't any.
	(kónai)	kónakatta	(I don't come.)	I didn't come.
	(shinai)	shínakatta	(I don't do it.)	I didn't do it.
phone.	(benkyoo shinai)	benkyóó shínakatta	(I don't study.)	I didn't study.
it.	(onegai shinai)	onégái shínakatta	(I don't make a request.)	I didn't make a request.
1 it.				
2 it.				
stigate				

12. Grammar (negative informal: non-past to perfective)

it.	(Nóoto o yománai deshoo?)	(He doesn't read his notebook, does he?)
it.	Nóoto o yománakatta deshoo?	He didn't read his notebook, did he?
1 it.	(Nóoto o benkyóó shínai deshoo?)	(He doesn't study his notebook, does he?)
it.	Nóoto o benkyóó shínakatta deshoo?	He didn't study his notebook, did he?
at it.	(Nóoto o misénai deshoo?)	(He doesn't show his notebook, does he?)
	Nóoto o misénakatta deshoo?	He didn't show his notebook, did he?
	(Nóoto o kawánai deshoo?)	(He doesn't buy notebooks, does he?)
	Nóoto o kawánakatta deshoo?	He didn't buy any notebooks, did he?
	(Ocha o kawánai deshoo?)	(He doesn't buy tea, does he?)
them.	Ocha o kawánakatta deshoo?	He didn't buy tea, did he?
1 it.	(Ocha o nománai deshoo?)	(He doesn't drink tea, does he?)
it.	Ocha o nománakatta deshoo?	He didn't drink tea, did he?
t.	(Ocha o dasánai deshoo?)	(He doesn't serve tea, does he?)
on it.	Ocha o dasánakatta deshoo?	He didn't serve tea, did he?
n.	(Pán o dasánai deshoo?)	(He doesn't serve bread, does he?)
call.	Pán o dasánakatta deshoo?	He didn't serve bread, did he?
se.	(Pán o tabénai deshoo?)	(He doesn't eat bread, does he?)
stand	Pán o tabénakatta deshoo?	He didn't eat bread, did he?
	(Góhan o tabénai deshoo?)	(He doesn't eat rice, does he?)
	Góhan o tabénakatta deshoo?	He didn't eat rice, did he?

(Góhan o dasánai deshoo?)
 Góhan o dasánakatta deshoo?
 (Gyuunyuu o dasánai deshoo?)
 Gyuunyuu o dasánakatta deshoo?
 (Gyuunyuu o nománai deshoo?)
 Gyuunyuu o nománakatta deshoo?
 (Koóhíi o nománai deshoo?)
 Koóhíi o nománakatta deshoo?
 (Koóhíi o kawánai deshoo?)
 Koóhíi o kawánakatta deshoo?
 (Míruku o irenái deshoo?)
 Míruku o irenákatta deshoo?
 (Míruku o mótte konai deshoo?)
 Míruku o mótte konakatta deshoo?
 (Góhan o mótte ikanai deshoo?)
 Góhan o mótte ikanakatta deshoo?
 (Koóhíi o nónde inai deshoo?)
 Koóhíi o nónde inakatta deshoo?
 (Soóná mónó o útté inái deshoo?)
 Soóná mónó o útté inákatta deshoo?
 (Jibíkí o útté inái deshoo?)
 Jibíkí o útté inákatta deshoo?

(He doesn't serve rice, does he?)
 He didn't serve rice, did he?
 (He doesn't serve milk, does he?)
 He didn't serve milk, did he?
 (He doesn't drink milk, does he?)
 He didn't drink milk, did he?
 (He doesn't drink coffee, does he?)
 He didn't drink coffee, did he?
 (He doesn't buy coffee, does he?)
 He didn't buy coffee, did he?
 (He doesn't put milk in, does he?)
 He didn't put milk in, did he?
 (He doesn't bring milk, does he?)
 He didn't bring milk, did he?
 (He doesn't take his lunch, does he?)
 He didn't take his lunch, did he?
 (He isn't drinking coffee, is he?)
 He wasn't drinking coffee, was he?
 (He doesn't sell such things, does he?)
 He didn't sell such things, did he?
 (He doesn't sell dictionaries, does he?)
 He didn't sell dictionaries, did he?

13. Grammar (-máсэн deshita to -nákatta desu)

(Gakusee ni misémáсэн deshita.)	(I didn't show it to the students.)
Gakusee ni misénakatta desu.	I didn't show it to the students.
(Gakusee ni hanáshímáсэн deshita.)	(I didn't speak of it to the students.)
Gakusee ni hanásanakatta desu.	I didn't speak of it to the students.
(Gakusee ni wakárimáсэн deshita.)	(It wasn't clear to the students.)
Gakusee ni wakáranakatta desu.	It wasn't clear to the students.
(Gakusee ni kakémáсэн deshita.)	(I didn't telephone the students.)
Gakusee ni kakénakatta desu.	I didn't telephone the students.
(Gakusee ni aímáсэн deshita.)	(I didn't meet the students.)
Gakusee ni awánakatta desu.	I didn't meet the students.
(Gakusee ni onégái shímáсэн deshita.)	(I didn't request it of the students.)
Gakusee ni onégái shinákatta desu.	I didn't request it of the students.
(Gakusee ni kikímáсэн deshita.)	(I didn't ask the students.)
Gakusee ni kikánakatta desu.	I didn't ask the students.
(Gakusee ni iímáсэн deshita.)	(I didn't tell the students.)
Gakusee ni iwánakatta desu.	I didn't tell the students.

14. Grammar (using dake with a positive verb)

(a)	
(Ocha o nomimasu.)	(I drink tea.)
Ocha dake nomimasu.	I drink only tea.
(Koóhíi o nomimasu.)	(I drink coffee.)
Koóhíi dake nomimasu.	I drink only coffee.

(Gyuun
 Gyuun
 Pan o
 Pan d
 Okásh
 Okash
 Góhan
 Góhan
 Jibík
 Jibík
 Nóoto
 Nóoto
 Manné
 Manné
 Eego
 Eego
 Nihoi
 Nihoi

(b)
 (Señs
 Señs
 (Gaku
 Gaku
 (Wata
 Wata
 (Señs
 Señs
 (Tana
 Tana
 (Míru
 Míru
 (Ocha
 Ocha
 (Gyuun
 Gyuun
 (Mats
 Mats
 (Gaku
 Gaku
 (Kam
 Kam
 (Emp
 Emp
 (Nóo
 Nóo

(c)
 (Señ
 Señ
 (Ano
 Anó

) Gyuunyuu o nomimasu.)
) Gyuunyuu dake nomimasu.)
) Pan o tabemasu.)
) Pan dake tabemasu.)
 e?) Okashi o tabemasu.)
) Okashi dake tabemasu.)
) Gohan o tabemasu.)
) Gohan dake tabemasu.)
 ?) Jibiki o onegai shimasu.)
) Jibiki dake onegai shimasu.)
) Noto o onegai shimasu.)
) Noto dake onegai shimasu.)
) Mannenhitsu o onegai shimasu.)
 he?) Mannenhitsu dake onegai shimasu.)
 e?) Ego o oshiemasu.)
 ?) Ego dake oshiemasu.)
 he?) Nihongo o oshiemasu.)
 es he?) Nihongo dake oshiemasu.)
 he?
 es he?
 d he?

s.)
 s.
 dents.)
 dents.
 .)
 .)
 .)
 .)
 ents.)
 ents.

(b)
 (Sensee ga hanashimasu.)
 Sensee dake hanashimasu.)
 (Gakusee ga hanashimasu.)
 Gakusee dake hanashimasu.)
 (Watanabe-san ga hanashimasu.)
 Watanabe-san dake hanashimasu.)
 (Sensee ga oshiemasu.)
 Sensee dake oshiemasu.)
 (Tanaka-san ga oshiemasu.)
 Tanaka-san dake oshiemasu.)
 (Miruku ga arimasu.)
 Miruku dake arimasu.)
 (Ocha ga arimasu.)
 Ocha dake arimasu.)
 (Gyuunyuu ga arimasu.)
 Gyuunyuu dake arimasu.)
 (Matsumoto-san ga imasu.)
 Matsumoto-san dake imasu.)
 (Gakusee ga imasu.)
 Gakusee dake imasu.)
 (Kamí ga irimasu.)
 Kamí dake irimasu.)
 (Empitsu ga irimasu.)
 Empitsu dake irimasu.)
 (Noto ga irimasu.)
 Noto dake irimasu.)

(c)
 (Sensee ni misemasu.)
 Sensee dake ni misemasu.)
 (Ano gakusee ni misemasu.)
 Ano gakusee dake ni misemasu.)

(I drink milk.)
 I drink only milk.
 (I eat bread.)
 I eat only bread.
 (I eat cakes.)
 I eat only cakes.
 (I eat rice.)
 I eat only rice.
 (I request a dictionary.)
 I request only a dictionary.
 (I request a notebook.)
 I request only a notebook.
 (I request a fountain pen.)
 I request only a fountain pen.
 (I teach English.)
 I teach only English.
 (I teach Japanese.)
 I teach only Japanese.

(The teacher talks.)
 Only the teacher talks.
 (The student talks.)
 Only the student talks.
 (Mr. Watanabe talks.)
 Only Mr. Watanabe talks.
 (The teacher teaches.)
 Only the teacher teaches.
 (Mr. Tanaka teaches.)
 Only Mr. Tanaka teaches.
 (There is some canned milk.)
 There is only some canned milk.
 (There is some tea.)
 There is only some tea.
 (There is some milk.)
 There is only some milk.
 (Mr. Matsumoto is here.)
 Only Mr. Matsumoto is here.
 (The students are here.)
 Only the students are here.
 (I need some paper.)
 I only need some paper.
 (I need some pencils.)
 I only need some pencils.
 (I need some notebooks.)
 I only need some notebooks.

(I show it to the teacher.)
 I show it only to the teacher.
 (I will show it to that student.)
 I will show it only to that student.

(Ano gakusee ni oshiemasu.)
 Anó gákúsée dáké ni oshiemasu.
 (Sensee ni aimasu.)
 Sensee dáké ni aimasu.
 (Anó sénsée ni kikimasu.)
 Anó sénsée dáké ni kikimasu.

(Repeat, using ni dake)

(d)
 (Gakkoo de benkyoo shimasu.)
 Gakkóo dáké de benkyoo shimasu.
 (Gakkóo de oshiemasu.)
 Gakkóo dáké de oshiemasu.
 (Uchi de naraimasu.)
 Uchí dáké de naraimasu.
 (Tookyoo de aimasu.)
 Toókýoo dáké de aimasu.
 (Tookyoo de kikimasu.)
 Toókýoo dáké de kikimasu.

(Repeat, using de dake)

(I will teach it to that student.)
 I will teach it only to that student.
 (I will meet the teacher.)
 I will meet only the teacher.
 (I will ask that teacher.)
 I will ask only that teacher.

(I study at school.)
 I study only at school.
 (I teach at school.)
 I teach only at school.
 (I learn at home.)
 I learn only at home.
 (I meet them in Tōkyō.)
 I meet them only in Tōkyō.
 (I hear it in Tōkyō.)
 I hear it only in Tōkyō.

15. Grammar (using dake with a negative verb)

(a)
 (Ocha o nomimásén.)
 Ocha dake nomimásén.
 (Koohíi o nomimásén.)
 Koohíi dake nomimásén.
 (Gyuunyuu o nomimásén.)
 Gyuunyuu dake nomimásén.
 (Pán o tabémásén.)
 Pán dake tabémásén.
 (Góhan o tabémásén.)
 Góhan dake tabémásén.
 (Okashi o tabémásén.)
 Okashi dake tabémásén.
 (Nóoto o misémásén.)
 Nóoto dake misémásén.

(Jibíki o misémásén.)
 Jibíki dake misémásén.

(Jibíki o mimásén.)
 Jibíki dake mimásén.

(b)
 (Empitsu wa arimásén deshita.)
 Empitsu dake arimásén deshita.

(I don't drink tea.)
 Tea is the only thing I don't drink.
 (I don't drink coffee.)
 Coffee is the only thing I don't drink.
 (I don't drink milk.)
 Milk is the only thing I don't drink.
 (I don't eat bread.)
 Bread is the only thing I don't eat.
 (I don't eat rice.)
 Rice is the only thing I don't eat.
 (I don't eat cakes.)
 Cakes are the only things I don't eat.
 (I don't show my notebook.)
 My notebook is the only thing I don't show.
 (I don't show my dictionary.)
 My dictionary is the only thing I don't show.
 (I don't look at my dictionary.)
 My dictionary is the only thing I don't look at.

(There weren't any pencils.)
 Pencils were the only things lacking.

(Kamí
 Kamí
 (Sénsé
 Sénsé

(Sono
 Sono

(Shími
 de
 Shími
 de

(Ano t
 Ano t

(Tanak
 Tanak

(Matsu
 Matsu
 de

(c)
 (Sénsé
 Sénsé

(Sénsé
 Sénsé
 (Tanak
 Tanak
 de

(Ano g
 de

Ano g
 im

(Anó h

Anó h

(Watan
 de
 Watan
 de

(Sénsé
 Sénsé

(Ano g
 de

Ano g
 de

(Tanak
 Tanak

(Kamí wa kaímásén deshita.)
 Kamí dake kaímásén deshita.
 (Sénsée wa kimásén deshita.)
 Sénsée dake kimásén deshita.
 (Sono gakusee wa imásén deshita.)
 Sono gakusee dake imásén deshita.
 (Shímizu-san wa hanáshímásén deshita.)
 Shímizu-san dake hanáshímásén deshita.
 (Ano tegami wa yomímásén deshita.)
 Ano tegami dake yomímásén deshita.
 (Tanaka-san wa yobímásén deshita.)
 Tanaka-san dake yobímásén deshita.
 (Matsumoto-san wa tabémásén deshita.)
 Matsumoto-san dake tabémásén deshita.

(c)
 (Sénsée wa kité imasen deshita.)
 Sénsée dake kité imasen deshita.
 (Sénsée wa obóete imasen deshita.)
 Sénsée dake obóete imasen deshita.
 (Tanaka-san wa obóete imasen deshita.)
 Tanaka-san dake obóete imasen deshita.
 (Ano gakusee wa benkyóó shíté imásén deshita.)
 Ano gakusee dake benkyóó shíté imásén deshita.
 (Anó hito wa komátte imasen deshita.)
 Anó hito dake komátte imasen deshita.
 (Watanabe-san wa mótte imasen deshita.)
 Watanabe-san dake mótte imasen deshita.
 (Sénsée wa mótte kimasen deshita.)
 Sénsée dake mótte kimasen deshita.
 (Ano gakusee wa mótte ikimasen deshita.)
 Ano gakusee dake mótte ikimasen deshita.
 (Tanaka-san wa mátte imasen deshita.)
 Tanaka-san dake mátte imasen deshita.

(I didn't buy paper.)
 Paper is the only thing I didn't buy.
 (The teacher didn't come.)
 The teacher was the only one who didn't come.
 (That student wasn't there.)
 That student was the only one who wasn't there.
 (Mr. Shimizu didn't talk.)
 Mr. Shimizu was the only one who didn't talk.
 (I didn't read that letter.)
 That letter is the only one I didn't read.
 (I didn't invite Mr. Tanaka.)
 Mr. Tanaka is the only one I didn't invite.
 (Mr. Matsumoto didn't eat.)
 Mr. Matsumoto is the only one who didn't eat.

(The teacher wasn't there.)
 Only the teacher wasn't there.
 (The teacher didn't remember.)
 Only the teacher didn't remember.
 (Mr. Tanaka didn't remember.)
 Only Mr. Tanaka didn't remember.
 (That student wasn't studying.)
 That student was the only one not studying.
 (That man wasn't having a difficult time.)
 That man was the only one not having a difficult time.
 (Mr. Watanabe didn't have it.)
 Only Mr. Watanabe didn't have it.
 (The teacher didn't bring it.)
 Only the teacher didn't bring it.
 (That student didn't take it with him.)
 Only that student didn't take it with him.
 (Mr. Tanaka wasn't waiting.)
 Only Mr. Tanaka wasn't waiting.

16. Substitution

Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika tabénai
deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would eat that kind of thing.
(such a thing).

(nománai) Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika
nománai deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would drink such a thing.

(yománai) Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika
yománai deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would read such a thing.

(mínai) Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika
mínai deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would look at such a thing.

(kawanai) Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika
kawánai deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would buy such a thing.

(tsukawanai) Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika
tsukawánai deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would use such a thing.

(iranai) Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika
iránai deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would need such a thing.

(nái) Soóná mónó wa gākusee shika
nái deshoo.

Probably no one but a student
would have such a thing.

17. Substitution

Koóná jíbíkí shika mótte imasen.

I have but this kind of dictionary.

(nóoto) Koóná nóoto shika mótte
imasen.

I have but this kind of notebook.

(empitsu) Konna empitsu shika mótte
imasen.

I have but this kind of pencil.

(kamí) Koóná kamí shika mótte
imasen.

I have but this kind of paper.

(monó) Koóná mónó shika mótte
imasen.

I have but this kind of thing.

18. Progressive Substitution

Sénsée shika shīranai to omoimasu.

I think that no one but the
teacher knows.

(Tanaka-san) Tanaka-san shika shīranai
to omoimasu.

I think that no one but Mr.
Tanaka knows.

(kité inai) Tanaka-san shika kité inai to
omoimasu.

I think that no one but Mr.
Tanaka is here.

(gakusee) Gakusee shika kité inai to
omoimasu.

I think that no one but stu-
dents are here.

(shīranai) Gakusee shika shīranai to
omoimasu.

I think that no one but stu-
dents are doing that.

(anó hito) Anó hito shika shīranai to
omoimasu.

I think that no one but that
person is doing that.

(shiráb
inai)
(Yamamo
san)
(mótte

(sénsée

(shīrai

19. Si

Tanaka

(iránai

(ikánai

(nákai

(kónai

(tsuká

katt

(hanás

katt

(kikán

(yobán

(kawán

20. I

Pañ d

(ocha

(koóh

(gyuu

(okás

(jibí

(shim

(tsuk

(shirábeta inai) Anó hito shika shirábeta inai tō omoimasu.
 (Yamamoto-san) Yamamoto-san shika shirábeta inai tō omoimasu.
 (mōtte konai) Yamamoto-san shika mōtte konai tō omoimasu.
 (sēnsée) Sēnsée shika mōtte konai tō omoimasu.
 (shiranai) Sēnsée shika shiranai tō omoimasu.

I think that no one but that person is investigating it.
 I think that no one but Mr. Yamamoto is investigating that.
 I think that no one but Mr. Yamamoto will bring that.
 I think that no one but the teacher will bring that.
 I think that no one but the teacher knows.

19. Substitution

Tanaka-san shika inákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka there, was there?

(iránákatta) Tanaka-san shika iránákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who needed it, was there?

(ikánákatta) Tanaka-san shika ikánákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who went, was there?

(nákatta) Tanaka-san shika nákatatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who had it, was there?

(kónakatta) Tanaka-san shika kónakatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who came, was there?

(tsukáwánákatta) Tanaka-san shika tsukáwánákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who used it, was there?

(hanásánákatta) Tanaka-san shika hanásánákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who spoke, was there?

(kikánákatta) Tanaka-san shika kikánákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who asked, was there?

(yobánákatta) Tanaka-san shika yobánákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who invited them, was there?

(kawánákatta) Tanaka-san shika kawánákatta deshoo?

There was no one but Mr. Tanaka who bought it, was there?

20. Substitution

Pañ dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but bread.

(ocha) Ochá dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but tea.

(koóhíi) Koóhíi dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but coffee.

(gyuunyuu) Gyuunyúú dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but milk.

(okáshi) Okáshí dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but cakes.

(jibíki) Jibíki dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but dictionaries.

(shimbun) Shimbún dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but newspapers.

(tsukue) Tsukúé dáké shika nákatatta desu.

There was nothing but desks.

21. Substitution

Hón ga nakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because I don't have the books.

(eégó nó hón) Eégó nó hón ga nakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because I don't have the English books.

(nihóngó nó hón) Nihóngó nó hón ga nakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because I don't have the Japanese books.

(jibíkí) Jibíkí ga nakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because I don't have the dictionaries.

(kamí) Kamí ga nakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because I don't have the paper.

(koóhíi) Koóhíi ga nakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because I don't have coffee.

(iru)

(wakáru)

(tabéru)

(oshier)

(komáru)

(shinu)

(kúru)

(uru)

(áru)

22. Substitution

Benkyoo shinákute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because he doesn't study.

(tabénakute) Tabénakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because he doesn't eat.

(hanásanakute) Hanásanakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because he doesn't talk.

(wakáranakute) Wakáranakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because he doesn't understand.

(akánakute) Akánakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because it doesn't open.

(shimáranakute) Shimáranakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because it doesn't close.

(kakáranakute) Kakáranakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because I can't get the call through.

(obóete inakute) Obóete inakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because he doesn't remember.

(kónakute) Kónakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because he doesn't come.

(kaésanakute) Kaésanakute komarimasu.

I have a hard time because he won't return it.

24. Gi

Ittá ki

(nóna)

(yóna)

(hanási)

(itta)

(wakáti)

(tábeti)

(oshier)

(komát)

(kita)

(utta)

(átta)

23. Grammar

Ikú ka ikánái ka shirímásén.

I don't know whether he's going or not.

(nómu) Nómu ka nománai ka shirímásén.

I don't know whether he drinks it or not.

(yómu) Yómu ka yománai ka shirímásén.

I don't know whether he reads it or not.

(hanásu) Hanásu ka hanásánai ka shirímásén.

I don't know whether he speaks it or not.

don't	(iru)	Irú ka iránái ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he needs it or not.
don't	(wakáru)	Wakáru ka wakaránai ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he understands it or not.
don't	(tabéru)	Tabéru ka tabénai ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he eats it or not.
don't	(oshieru)	Oshíérú ka oshíénái ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he will teach it or not.
don't	(komáru)	Komáru ka komaránai ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he will have difficulty or not.
don't	(shinu)	Shinú ka shinánai ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he will die or not.
don't	(kúru)	Kúru ka kónai ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he will come or not.
	(uru)	Urú ka uránai ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he will sell it or not.
	(áru)	Áru ka náí ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he has it or not.

se he

se he

24. Gramnar

se he		Ittá ka <u>ikánákatta</u> ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he went or not.
se he	(nónnda)	Nónnda ka nománakatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he drank it or not.
se it	(yónnda)	Yónnda ka yománakatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he read it or not.
se it	(hanáshita)	Hanáshita ka hanásánakatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he spoke or not.
se I rough.	(ittá)	Ittá ka iránákatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he needed it or not.
se he	(wakátta)	Wakátta ka wakaránakatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he understood it or not.
se he	(tábeta)	Tábeta ka tabénakatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he ate it or not.
se he	(oshieta)	Oshíétá ka oshíénákatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he taught it or not.
	(komátta)	Komátta ka komaránakatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he had difficulty or not.
	(kita)	Kitá ka kónakatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he came or not.
's go-	(utta)	Uttá ka uránákatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether he sold it or not.
drinks	(átta)	Átta ka nákatatta ka shirímásén.	I don't know whether it was there or not.

reads

speaks

25. Grammar

Átta ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether it was there or not.

(yuu) Ittá ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether I said it or not.

(dásu) Dáshita ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether I mailed it or not.

(oshieru) Oshíetá ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether I taught that or not.

(áu) Átta ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether I met them or not.

(onegai suru) Onégái shítá ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether I requested it or not.

(kúru) Kitá ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether they came or not.

(shirábéru) Shirábeta ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether they investigated it or not.

(uru) Uttá ka doo ka obóete imasen.

I don't remember whether they sold it or not.

26. Substitution

Dóoshite tabénakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't eat it?

(kónakatta) Dóoshite kónakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't come?

(obóete inákatta) Dóoshite obóete inákatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't remember?

(uránákatta) Dóoshite uránákatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't sell it?

(oshíénákatta) Dóoshite oshíénákatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't teach it?

(shirábénakatta) Dóoshite shirábénakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't investigate it?

(onégái shínákatta) Dóoshite onégái shínákatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't request it?

(naráwánakatta) Dóoshite naráwánakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't learn it?

(yobánákatta) Dóoshite yobánákatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't invite them.

(yománakatta) Dóoshite yománakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't read it?

(matánakatta) Dóoshite matánakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't wait?

(isógánakatta) Dóoshite isógánakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't hurry?

(kakánakatta) Dóoshite kakánakatta n' deshoo ka?

I wonder why they didn't write?

(mínak)

(misén)

27. S

Tsukúé

(gakus)

(sensé)

(manné)

(jibík)

(gakko)

1. A.

B.

A.

B.

A.

B.

2. A.

B.

A.

B.

A.

3. A.

B.

A.

4. A.

B.

A.

B.

1. Th

2. Wh

r it was	(minakatta)	Dóoshite minakatta n' deshoo ka?	I wonder why they didn't see it?
r I said	(misénakatta)	Dóoshite misénakatta n' deshoo ka?	I wonder why they didn't show it?
r I	27. Substitution		
r I	Tsukúé dé wa náí keredo...		It isn't a desk, but...
r I met	(gakusee)	Gakúsée dé wa náí keredo...	He isn't a student, but...
r I re-	(seńsée)	Seńsée de wa náí keredo...	He isn't a teacher, but...
r they	(mannénhitsu)	Mannénhitsu de wa náí keredo...	It isn't a fountain pen, but...
r they	(jibíki)	Jibíki de wa náí keredo...	It isn't a dictionary, but...
ot.	(gakkoo)	Gakkoo dé wa náí keredo...	It isn't a school, but...
r they			

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

- t eat it?
- t come?
- t remem-
- t sell
- t teach
- t in-
- t request
- t learn
- t invite
- t read
- t wait?
- t hurry?
- t write?
- A. Súmisu-san mo Jóonzu-san mo ochá ó nómímasu ka?

B. Súmisu-san wa nomímasu ga, Jóonzu-san wa koóhíi shika nománai n' desu yo. Koóhíi wa áru deshoo ne?

A. Iie. Náí n' desu. Katte kimasu. Míruku mo irímasu ka?

B. Míruku wa iránái deshoo.

A. Déwa koóhíi dake kaíté kímáshóo.

B. Koóhíi dake kaíté kónai de okáshi mo kaíté kite kudasai.
 - A. Końná kótó wa oshíénákatta keredo, anó gákúsée dáké wa shítté ímáshita yo.

B. Jibíki de shirábete obóete kita n' de wa náí deshoo ka?

A. Watakushi wa jibíki nó kótó wa gákusee ni hanásénakatta tó omóímasu ga, sóo deshoo né.

B. Dónna jibiki o mótte iru ka kiíté mímáshita ka?

A. Iie.
 - A. Konó héyá de góhan o tabénai de kudasai tó káite arimasu yo.

B. Áa, sóo desu ka? Sońná mónó wa yománakatta. Tabákó nó kótó mo káite arimasu ka?

A. Ée. Tabako mo nománai de kudasai tó káite arimasu.
 - A. Depáato de końná nóoto o útté írú¹ deshoo ka?

B. Sońná nóoto wa útte inai tó omóímasu ga, ítté mímáshóo ka?

A. Ée. Onegai shimasu. Góhan wa dóo shimasu ka?² Uchi de tábezu ni depáato de tabémásén ka? Uchí ní wa pán dáké shika náí n' desu.

B. Déwa depáato de tabémáshóo.
1. They sell
 2. What shall we do?

5. (Two men speaking)

- A. Ano gakusee wa benkyōō shité kónakute komáru yo.
 B. Dóoshite benkyōō shité kónai n' daroo?
 A. Sore wa shiránái keredo anna gakusee wa komáru né.

6. A. Watakushi no jibíki ga nákute komátte imasu ga...anáta wa watakúshi nó o tsukátte inái deshoo ka?
 B. Iie. Watakúshi nó shika mótte imasen. Anáta no wa tsukúé nó úé ni oite nákata deshoo ka?
 A. Ée. Sore ga náí n' desu yo. Kinoo tsukúé nó úé ni oité kaetta n' desu ga...
 B. Déwa Tanaka-san ga uchi e mótte itta ka doo ka, denwá ó kárete kiité mímashóo ka?
 A. Iie. Tanaká-sán dé wa náí deshoo. Tanaka-san wa kinoo hón mo nóoto mo motánai de kaérímashita...Dóko e itté shímáttá n' deshoo ne?¹

7. Súmisu. Kinoo wa nihóngó ga wakaránakute komárimashita yo.
 Shímizu. Dóoshite desu ka?²
 Súmisu. Dóoshite ka shirímásén ga, Tanaka-san ga eégó dé hánásánai de nihongo dake tsukátte kúdásái to itá n' desu.
 Shímizu. Soko ni Yamamoto-san mo imáshita ka?
 Súmisu. Ée.
 Shímizu. Áa. Wakárimashita. Yamamoto-san wa nihongo shika wakaránai n' desu yo.

8. A. Matsúmotó-sán kára no tegami ni itsu kúru ka káite arimashita ka?
 B. Káite wa arimashita ga, kyóo ka ashíta ka obóete imasen.
 A. Sore wa komárimashita ne.³
 B. Tanaka-san ga shítté írú ka kiité mímashóo ka?
 A. Watakushi wa Tanaka-san ni kikímashita ga, Tanaka-san mo itsu kúru ka shirímásén deshita.
 9. A. Sonna ni hón o mótte dóko e ikú n' desu ka? Mochímashóo ka?
 B. Iie. Hón wa kékkoo desu. Sokó máde ikú dáké desu. Kéredomo kono tegami dake onegai shimasu.
 A. Anáta ga konna ni tegami o káita n' desu ka?
 B. Ée.
 A. Watakushi ga dashímashóo ka?
 B. Ée. Onegai shimasu. Wasurezu ni dáshite kudasai né.

1. I wonder where it could have gone?
 2. Why was (is) that?
 3. Now we are in difficulty! (That's a predicament!)

A. Cha

1. Pán
2. Wat
3. Teg
4. Wat
5. Éki
6. Tabi
7. Náo
8. Kyó
9. Tan
10. Hón
11. To
12. Són
13. Och
14. Koó

B. Cha

1. Tan
2. Nih
3. Och
4. Och
5. Má
6. Teg
7. Ben
8. Soo
9. Són
10. Kin
11. Tool
12. Ráj
13. Má
14. Isu

C. Giv

1. Mót
2. Míru
3. Wasu
4. Shi
5. Shi
6. Yuu
7. One
8. Isó
9. Kák
10. Káe
11. Iku

EXERCISES

A. Change the following verbs to the informal, non-past negative.

- | | |
|--------|---|
| ikúshí | 1. Pán o tabémásén. |
| ué ni | 2. Watanabe-san wa hanáshímásén deshoo. |
| ca n' | 3. Tegami o misémásén. |
| | 4. Watakushi wa komarímásén. |
| kiité | 5. Éki no mae ni imásén. |
| nóoto | 6. Tabákó dé wa arímásén. |
| ne?l | 7. Nóoto o kaeshímásén. |
| | 8. Kyóo shimásén deshoo. |
| | 9. Tanaka-san o machímásén. |
| ai de | 10. Hón o yomímásén. |
| | 11. To ga ákimásén. |
| | 12. Soóná kótó wa shirábémásén. |
| | 13. Ocha o kaímásén. |
| | 14. Koóhíi o nomímásén. |

B. Change the following verbs to the informal, perfective negative.

- | | |
|---------|---------------------------------------|
| ánai n' | 1. Tanaka-san o yobímásén deshita. |
| | 2. Nihongo o oshiémásén deshita. |
| ka? | 3. Ocha o urímásén deshita. |
| | 4. Ocha o útté imásén deshita. |
| | 5. Máchi wa irímásén deshita. |
| | 6. Tegami o kakímásén deshita. |
| kúru ka | 7. Benkyoo wa isógímásén deshita. |
| | 8. Soo iímásén deshita. |
| | 9. Soóná mónó wa tsukaímásén deshita. |
| | 10. Kinoo kimásén deshita. |
| kono | 11. Tookyoo de aímásén deshita. |
| | 12. Rájio o kikímásén deshita. |
| | 13. Mado wa shimarímásén deshita. |
| | 14. Isu no ué ni arímásén deshita. |

C. Give the negative imperatives of the following verbs.

1. Mótsu.
2. Míru.
3. Wasureru.
4. Shiméru.
5. Shimau.
6. Yuu.
7. Onegai suru.
8. Isógu.
9. Kakeru.
10. Kaeru.
11. Iku.

12. Dásu.
13. Naráu.
14. Akeru.
15. Uru.

D. Insert the verb in its zu ni form in the following blanks.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. _____ zu ni shité kúdásái. | Please do it without fail (forgetting). |
| 2. Jibíkí o _____ zu ni kimáshita. | He came without his dictionary. |
| 3. Gyuunyuu o _____ zu ni koóhíi
o nónde imasu. | He is drinking coffee instead of (without) drinking milk. |
| 4. _____ zu ni ikímáshóo. | Let's go without eating. |
| 5. Mañnénhitsu o _____ zu ni
kaette shimatta. | He went home without returning my fountain pen. |
| 6. Deñwá ó _____ zu ni ikímáshóo. | Let's go without telephoning. |
| 7. _____ zu ni mätte imasu. | He is waiting without entering. |
| 8. _____ zu ni mótte imasu. | He is holding on to it without mailing it. |
| 9. _____ zu ni kaérímáshita. | I returned without buying it. |
| 10. _____ zu ni mótte imasu. | He is holding on to it without selling it. |

E. Insert daké or shika in the following blanks.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Koñná jibíkí _____ mótte imasen. | I have but this kind of dictionary. |
| 2. Kono jibiki _____ mótte imasen. | This is the only dictionary which I don't have. |
| 3. Kono jibiki _____ kaímáshita. | I bought only this dictionary. |
| 4. Konó jibíkí _____ tsukaímasén. | This dictionary is the only one that I use. |
| 5. Señsée _____ obóete imashita. | Only the teacher remembered. |
| 6. Señsée _____ obóete imásén deshita. | Only the teacher didn't remember. |
| 7. Tanáká-sán _____ ni misémáshita. | I showed it only to Mr. Tanaka. |
| 8. Tanáká-sán ní _____ misémásén
deshita. | I didn't show it to anyone but Mr. Tanaka. |
| 9. Soñná mónó wa gākusee _____ iránái
deshoo. | Probably no one but a student would need such a thing. |
| 10. Pán _____ nákatte desu. | There was nothing but bread. |

F. Insert a konna-type noun or a konna-type noun plus ni.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. _____ hító wa shirímásén. | I don't know anyone like that. |
| 2. _____ hón wa yomímásén. | I don't read books like this. |
| 3. _____ kaímáshita. | I bought all this. |
| 4. _____ kótó o iímáshita ka? | Did he say such a thing? |
| 5. _____ tabémásén deshita. | I didn't eat that much. |
| 6. _____ mono ga irímásu ka? | What kind of thing do you need? |

_____ komátte imasen.
 _____ nónde imasu.

He isn't in so much difficulty.
 [See] how much he is drinking!

G. Tell your friend that:

- forget-
 ry.
 d of
 ng my
 ng.
 ut mail-
 ut sell-
1. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka is going or not. (2 ways)
 (Tanaka-san wa ikú ka ikánái ka shirimásén.)
 (Tanaka-san wa ikú ka doo ka shirimásén.)
 2. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka eats bread or not. (2 ways)
 3. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka has a car or not. (2 ways)
 4. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka drinks coffee or not. (2 ways)
 5. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka understood or not. (2 ways)
 6. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka mailed the letter or not. (2 ways)
 7. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka bought the newspaper or not. (2 ways)
 8. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka is listening to the radio or not. (2
 ways)
 9. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka is waiting or not. (2 ways)
 10. you don't know whether Mr. Tanaka knows or not. (2 ways)

ionary.
 which I

y.
 one

mber.
 ka.
 ut Mr.

t would

t.

ed?

LESSON VII

byooki
génki (na)

éega
kaimono
tabémóno
kekkon
kekkon suru

kane (okane)
nikki
shigoto
-jin

-kun

issho (ni)
minna, mina
sukóshi
takusan
yóku
dakara

tamé

sayóónára
aruku
asobu

chigau

náru
tsukúru
yasúmu

yasúmí

illness, sickness
healthy, in good spirits (to be treated more fully in Lesson VIII)

movies
1) shopping; 2) purchased articles
food
marriage
to marry (to marry someone, --san to kekkon suru; intr.)

money
diary
1) work; 2) place of work
(suffix added to the name of a country to indicate nationality)
(suffix like -san but used only by men or boys to their contemporaries or to younger men or boys with whom they are intimate. Men also use it in addressing younger women colleagues and assistants.)

together, along with
1) all; 2) everyone (-san may occur after miná)
a little
1) much; 2) enough (with desu, it is takúsán desu)
1) well; 2) often (Lesson VIII)
therefore (informal, occurs at the beginning of a sentence; semi-formal is desukara)

1) for the sake of; for the purpose of; 2) because of; 3) useful, use
goodbye (sayónára, informal)
to walk (intr.)

to amuse oneself, to play (to play doing ---, --- o shite asobu; intr.)

1) to differ (to differ from, --- to chigau); 2) to be wrong (intr.)

to become (intr.)
to make (tr.)

1) to rest; 2) to take a vacation (o indicates what one is taking a vacation from; tr.)
vacation, holiday

PATTERN PASSAGE

A. Aa. Ikeda-kun. Ítsu Nihón o déru n' desu ka?

B. Ashítá desu. Iki wa Suzúki-sénsée to goísshó ná no de, hikóoki desu ga, kaerí wa fúne ni naru to omoimasu.

A. Haneda e ikú no ni, watakushi no jidóosha o tsukaímasén ka?

B. Aríгато gozaimasu ga...Ákiko-san ni onégái shíté áru no de, kékkoo desu.

A. Hanáshí wa chigáímasu ga, eego no benkyoo no tamé ni ikú n' deshita né.

B. Háí. Káette kite kara sénsée ni narimasu kara...

A. Watakushi mo Ámerika e eégó nó bēnkyóó ó shí ní íttá no ni, asonde ita tame, íma komátte iru n' desu yo. Dákara yóku bēnkyóó shíté kite kudasai.

B. Háí.

A. Déwa ogénki de.

B. Itte kimasu.¹ Sayóónára.

1. I'm going and returning. Said when leaving a place where one belongs, i.e. one's home, one's office, one's country, etc.

A. Oh, Ikeda! When are you leaving Japan?

B. I'm leaving tomorrow. I'm going by plane on the way going, because I'll be together with Professor Suzuki, but I think my trip back will be by ship.

A. Won't you use my car to go to Haneda?

B. It's very kind of you (thank you), but since I've already asked Akiko, I'm fine, thank you.

A. This is a different subject, but you're going for the purpose of studying English, wasn't that it?

B. Yes, because I'm going to become a teacher after I return.

A. I, too, went to America to study English, but I was lazy, so I'm suffering now [as a result]! So, please study hard!

B. Yes, sir!

A. Then, good luck to you (lit. -- go in good health)!

B. Goodbye, sir.

GRAMMAR

7.1 Conjunction kara and áto

(a) The positive gerund or -te form of a verb followed by the conjunction kara has the meaning, "after doing ---." It indicates sequence of action.

EXAMPLES:

Shigoto o shité kara, gakkoo e ikímáshita.

Hón o yónde shimatte kara, tegami o kakimasu.

Tanaka-san ga kité kara, íssho ni ikímáshóo.

I went to school after I had finished my work.

I'll write the letter after I finish reading the book.

Let's go together after Mr. Tanaka comes.

(b) Áto (de) occurs after the positive perfective of a verb. Emphasis is on the part of the sentence after the áto (de). In a sentence "After A was completed, B occurred," emphasis is on situation B. The sentence tells when or under what conditions B will occur or has occurred.

EXAMPLES:

Káetta ato de denwá gá kákátte kimashita.

Tegami o káita ato de omóidashí-mashita.

Yamamoto-san ga káetta ato de shimasu.

Yamamoto-san ga káetta ato isó-gashikatta desu.

There was a telephone call after he had gone home.

I thought of it after I had written the letter.

I will do it after Mr. Yamamoto leaves (goes home).

I was busy after Mr. Yamamoto had left.

(c) The conjunction kara after the non-past or perfective of verbs, verbal adjectives, and the copula and the tentative of the copula has the meaning "because" or "since" and governs the phrase preceding the kara.

EXAMPLES:

Ashita tsukúru kara, kyóo wa tsukúrimásén.

Kinóo wa asóndá kara, kyóo wa benkyoo shimasu.

Pán ga náí kara, kátte kimasu.

Hón o yománakatta kara, hanáshí ga wakáranakatta.

Ashítá wa oyásúmí déshóo kara, kyóo odénwa o káketé okimasu.

Tegami o káita kara, dáshite kudasai.

I won't make any today because I'm making some tomorrow. I'm making some tomorrow, so I won't make any today.

I'm going to study today because I played yesterday, I played yesterday, so I'm going to study today.

I'll go buy some bread because we're out of it. There isn't any bread, so I'll go buy some.

Since I hadn't read the book, I was unable to understand the talk. I hadn't read the book, so I couldn't understand the talk.

Since tomorrow is probably a holiday, I'll telephone today. I'll telephone today because tomorrow is probably a holiday.

I've written the letter, so please mail it.

7.2 No plus de (gerund of desu)

The noun no plus the gerund de occurs after the non-past and perfective of verbs and verbal adjectives and ná no de after nouns. In a sentence, A ná no de B desu, the meaning is that A "being the case," B results.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san ga kúru no de, okáshi o kátté okímashoo.

Let's buy some cakes [and have them ready] because Mr. Tanaka is coming.

Kin

Tan

Ben

Kyó

Note: W
When the
of usage
tionship
premise
an imper
confirma

EXAMPLES

Yón

íma

Shi

Fuy

Oká

Wat

Pán

7.3 Not

(a)

verbal &
fact the

EXAMPLES

Ike

Tal

Oká

Wat

phasis
er A
ells

fter he

written

oto

o had

os,
the

se I'm
n mak-
on't

ause I
d yes-
tudy

se
sn't
some.
, I was
talk.
o I
alk.
holi-
. I'll
omorrow

please

ective
e, A

ve them
is

Kinoo yasúnda no de, kyóo wa
shigoto ga takusan arimasu.

Tanaka-san wa shigótó ó shínái
no de, komarimasu.
Benkyóó gá nakatta no de, asóndé
ímashita.
Kyóo mo oyásúmí ná no de, gakkoo
e ikímásén.

Note: Where the action is in the past, kara and nó de are interchangeable. When the action is in the present or in the future, kara has a broader range of usage than nó de, whose usage is restricted to situations where the relationship between the causal and resultant parts is a general and natural premise acceptable to all. Nó de does not occur when the resultant part is an imperative or an interrogative with the exception of interrogatives seeking confirmation.

EXAMPLES:

Yónde oita no de, yóku wakárí-
máshita.
Íma Tároo-san ga kité iru no de,
ashita ikímásén.
Shigoto ga takúsán áru no de,
komarimasu.
Fuyú na no de, samúi n' desu.
Okane ga nakute komátte imasu
kara, watakushi no hón o
katté kúdásái.
Watakushi wa ikánái kara, anáta
ga soó ítte kúdásái.
Pán ga arímásu kara, tsukurímásu
ka?

Because (lit.--- on account of the
fact that) I was absent yester-
day, there is lots of work for
me today.

We are inconvenienced because Mr.
Tanaka doesn't work.

I played because I didn't have any
studying to do.

Today being a holiday also, I'm not
going to school.

I understood it well, because I had
read it [beforehand].

I'm not going tomorrow, because
Tarō is here now.

I have a hard time, because I have
lots of work.

It's cold because it's winter.

Please buy my books, because I
don't have any money and am hav-
ing a hard time.

I'm not going, so you tell them
that, please.

We have some bread, so shall we
make some?

7.3 Noun no plus particle ni

(a) Nó ni occurs after the non-past and perfective forms of verbs and verbal adjectives and ná no ni after nouns with the meaning, "in spite of the fact that" or "although."

EXAMPLES:

Ikeda-san ga ikú no ni, Yoshida-
san wa ikímásén.

Takúsán átta no ni, minna tábete
shimaimashita.

Okáshi o sonna ni tabénai no ni,
anna ni katté kímashita.

Watakushi wa anó kótó o hanásá-
nakatta no ni, shitte ita.

In spite of the fact that Mr. Ikeda
is going, Mr. Yoshida is not
going. Although Mr. Ikeda is
going, Mr. Yoshida is not going.

In spite of the fact that there was
a lot, they ate it all up.

In spite of the fact that he
doesn't eat cakes very much, he
bought all that.

Although I hadn't told him about
that, he knew about it.

Byooki ná no ni, aánná mónó o
tábeta iru.

Although he's sick, he's eating
that kind of thing.

(b) Nó ni after the positive non-past of a verb has the meaning "in doing something," "in order to ---," or "for the purpose of ---." (The non-past verb plus nó ni occurs more frequently in this meaning than the meaning in (a) above. The two meanings are distinguished only through context.)

EXAMPLES:

Pán o kau no ni okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to (in order to)
buy bread.

Kishá nó náka de yómu no ni
shimbun o kaímashita.

I bought a newspaper to read on the
train.

7.4 Nominal root of a verb

When the ending masu is dropped from the semi-formal verb, what remains will, for the purpose of this text, be called the nominal root of the verb.

EXAMPLES:

yasumimasu
hanashimasu
asobimasu
kaerimasu
ikimasu

yasúmi
hanáshi
asobi
kaéri
iki

vacation, holiday
story, talk
game
the way back, the return
the way going

This nominal root also occurs as part of a compound. The following are examples of combinations with nouns. Combinations occur also with verbs and verbal adjectives. (To be treated later.)

EXAMPLES:

tabémóno
kaimono
shigoto
natsuyasumi

(tabe plus monó)
(kai plus monó)
(shi plus kotó)
(natsú plus yasumi)

food
shopping
work
summer vacation

7.5 Nominal root of a verb plus ni plus a verb of motion

The nominal root of a verb plus ni plus a verb of motion such as iku, "to go," kúru, "to come," kaeru, "to return," etc. has the meaning "to go (come, etc.) for the purpose of doing something."

EXAMPLES:

Pán o kai ní ikímashóo.
Tanaka-san ni ái ni kimashita.
Tábe ni uchi e kaerimasu.

Let's go buy some bread.
I came to see Mr. Tanaka.
I'm going home to eat.

Compare the following two sentences.

Kaimono ni ikímásén deshita.
Kaimono shi ni ikímásén deshita.

I didn't go shopping.
I didn't go do my shopping.

138

7.6 T

(

adject

tame (i

EXAMPLI

Be

Yo

On

SI

By

By

(i

nouns i

sake of

ly in 1

EXAMPLI

T

W

G

7.7 Ne

(e

EXAMPLI

As

St

By

(t

EXAMPLI

Ée

Hé

Gé

6 Tamé

(a) Tamé (ni) occurs after the non-past or perfective of verbs, verbal adjectives, and the copula with the meaning "because of" and "due to." No tamé (ni) occurs after a noun in this usage.

EXAMPLES:

Beñkyóó gá áru tame, kyóó wa ikú
kótó ga dekimásén.
Yokohama e itté ita tame, ano
ohanashi o kikiomásén deshita.
Okane ga sukóshi shika náí tame,
monó o sonna ni kaíomásén.
Shimbun o yománakatta tame, sonó
kótó wa shiríomásén deshita.
Byóókí dátta tame, ikíomásén
deshita.
Byóókí nó tamé (ni), ikíomásén
deshita.

I can't go today because I have
some studying to do.
I didn't hear that story because I
was in Yokohama.
I don't buy so many things because
I only have a little money.
I didn't know about it because I
hadn't read the papers.
I didn't go because I was sick.
I didn't go because of illness.

(b) Negative and positive non-past forms of verbs plus tamé (ni) and nouns plus no tamé (ni) have the meaning "for the purpose of---," "for the sake of---," "so that" or "in order to." (The non-past occurs more frequently in this usage than in the usage of (a) above.)

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san ni miséru tame ni
mótte kimashita.
Wasurenái tamé ni, kôko ni oite
ôita n' desu.
Gakúsée nó tamé ni kaíte imasu.

I brought it to show Mr. Tanaka.
I left it here so that I wouldn't
forget it.
I am writing it for the sake of the
students.

7.7 Noun plus ni naru or ni suru

(a) A noun plus ni naru means "to become ---," "or" "to turn into---."

EXAMPLES:

Ashítá kara seńsée ni narimasu.
Sukóshi tamé ni narimashita.
Byooki ni naríomásén deshita.

I will be (become) a teacher from
tomorrow.
It was useful a little bit. (Tamé
ni naru is an idiom.)
I didn't get sick.

(b) A noun plus ni suru means "to make it into---" or "to turn it into
---."

EXAMPLES:

Éega ni shimáshita.
Hón ni shimáshóo.
Gakko ni shimasu.

They made it into a movie.
Let's make it into a book.
I'll make it into a school.

7.8 Particle o

A noun followed by the particle o and a verb of motion indicates the route of the motion, with the meaning "along" or "through."

EXAMPLES:

Kono michi o ikimasu.

Koko o arukimasu.

Daigákú nó máe o toorimasu.

One goes along this street.

One walks here.

It passes in front of the university.

DRILL

1. Substitution

Byooki ni narímashita.

He became sick.

(génki) Génki ni narimashita.
 (éega) Éega ni narimashita.
 (Amérikájin) Amérikájin ni narimashita.
 (Nihónjín) Nihónjín ni narimashita.
 (sénsée) Sénsée ni narimashita.
 (gakusee) Gakúsée ni narímashita.
 (yasumi) Yasumi ni narimashita.
 (tamé) Tamé ni narimashita.
 (takúsán) Takúsán ni narimashita.
 (sukóshi) Sukóshi ni narimashita.
 (okane) Okané ni narímashita.
 (shigoto) Shigótó ni narímashita.

He became well. He recovered.
 It became a movie.
 He became an American.
 He became a Japanese.
 He became a teacher.
 He became a student.
 It became a holiday.
 It became useful.
 It turned into a lot.
 It turned into a little bit.
 It turned into money.
 It turned into work.

2. Substitution

Éega ni shimashita.

They made it into a movie.

(gakkoo) Gakkóo ni shímashita.
 (hón) Hón ni shimashita.
 (mádo) Mádo ni shimashita.
 (tsukue) Tsukúe ni shímashita.
 (sénsée) Sénsée ni shimashita.

They made it into a school.
 They made it into a book.
 They made it into a window.
 They made it into a desk.
 They made him a teacher.

3. Grammar (combining the following sets of two sentences into one, using -te kara)

(a) Perfectives

(Daigaku ni haírímashita.)

(Byooki ni narímashita.)

Daigaku ni haítte kara byooki ni narímashita.

(I entered the university.)

(I became ill.)

I became ill after I entered the university.

the

(Byooki ni narímashita.)
 (Yasúmíashita.)
 Byooki ni nátte kara yasúmíashita.

(I became ill.)
 (I rested.)
 I rested after I became ill.

iversi-

(Seénsée ni narimashita.)
 (Byooki ni narímashita.)
 Seénsée ni nátte kara byooki ni
 narímashita.

(I became a teacher.)
 (I became ill.)
 I became ill after I became a
 teacher.

(Nihón ni kaérímashita.)
 (Seénsée ni narimashita.)
 Nihón ni kaette kara seénsée ni
 narimashita.

(I returned to Japan.)
 (I became a teacher.)
 I became a teacher after I return-
 ed to Japan.

(Seénsée ni narimashita.)
 (Génki ni narimashita.)
 Seénsée ni nátte kara génki ni nari-
 mashita.

(I became a teacher.)
 (I became healthy.)
 I became healthy after I became a
 teacher.

(Génki ni narimashita.)
 (Gakkoo e ikímashita.)
 Génki ni nátte kara gakkoo e ikí-
 mashita.

(I became healthy.)
 (I went to school.)
 I went to school after I became
 well (healthy).

(Seénsée ni narimashita.)
 (Eego o benkyóó shímashita.)
 Seénsée ni nátte kara eego o benkyóó
 shímashita.

(I became a teacher.)
 (I studied English.)
 I studied English after I became a
 teacher.

(Gakkoo o demáshita.)
 (Seénsée ni narimashita.)
 Gakkoo o déte kara seénsée ni nari-
 mashita.

(I graduated from school.)
 (I became a teacher.)
 I became a teacher after I gradu-
 ated from school.

(Eéga o mimashita.)
 (Kaérímashita.)
 Eéga o míte kara kaérímashita.

(I saw the movie.)
 (I returned home.)
 I returned home after I saw the
 movie.

(Amerika e ikímashita.)
 (Kaímashita.)
 Amerika e ítté kara kaímashita.

(I went to America.)
 (I bought it.)
 I bought it after I went to Ameri-
 ca.

ing

(Pán o kaimashita.)
 (Kaérímashita.)
 Pán o kátté kara kaérímashita.

(I bought the bread.)
 (I returned home.)
 I returned home after I bought the
 bread.

the

(Sukóshi yasúmímáshita.)
 (Shigótó ó shímáshita.)
 Sukóshi yasúnde kara shigótó ó shí-
 máshita.

(b) Non-past

(Seńsée ni narimasu.)
 (Eego o benkyoo shimasu.)
 Seńsée ni nátte kara eego o benkyoo
 shimasu.

(Eego o benkyoo shimasu.)
 (Amerika e ikimasu.)
 Eégó ó bényóó shíté kara Amerika e
 ikimasu.

(Amerika e ikimasu.)
 (Yasumimasu.)
 Amériká é ítté kara yasumimasu.

(Sukóshi yasumimasu.)
 (Shigoto o shimasu.)
 Sukóshi yasúnde kara shigoto o
 shimasu.

(Shigoto o shite shimaimasu.)
 (Kaerimasu.)
 Shigoto o shité shímátté kara kaeri-
 masu.

(Nihón de kekkon shimasu.)
 (Amerika e ikimasu.)
 Nihón de kekkón shíté kara Amerika e
 ikimasu.

(Sukóshi machimasu.)
 (Ikimasu.)
 Sukóshi mátte kara ikimasu.

(Yóku shirabemasu.)
 (Kekkon shimasu.)
 Yóku shirábete kara kekkon shimasu.

(Tsukurimasu.)
 (Seńsée ni misemasu.)
 Tsukútte kara seńsée ni misemasu.

(I rested a little.)
 (I did the work.)
 I did the work after I rested a
 little.

(I will become a teacher.)
 (I will study English.)
 I will study English after I be-
 come a teacher.

(I will study English.)
 (I will go to America.)
 I will go to America after I study
 some English.

(I am going to America.)
 (I will rest.)
 I will rest after I get to America.

(I will rest a little.)
 (I will work.)
 I will work after I rest a little.

(I will finish my work.)
 (I will return.)
 I will return after I finish my
 work.

(I will get married in Japan.)
 (I will go to America.)
 I will go to America after I get
 married in Japan.

(I will wait a little.)
 (I will go.)
 I will go after I wait a little.

(I will investigate well.)
 (I will marry.)
 I will marry after I investigate
 well.

(I will make it.)
 (I will show it to the teacher.)
 I will show it to the teacher
 after I make it.

4. Gr

(futura

(Tsukú

(Misem
Tsukú(Yasúm
(Asobi
Yasún(Asóbí
(Yasun
Asóno(Sukós
(Yasun
Sukós(Yóku
(Kekk
Yóku(Kekk
(Amer
Kekk(Éega
(Góha
Éega(Góha
(Éega
Góha(Kaim
(Éega
Kaim(Éega
(Kaim
Éega

4. Grammar (combining sentences, using áto de)

(future meaning)

(Tsukúrimáshita.)

(Misemasu.)

Tsukútta áto de misemasu.

(I made it.)

(I will show it.)

After I have made it, I will show it [to you].

(Yasúmímáshita.)

(Asobimasu.)

Yasúnda áto de asobimasu.

(I rested.)

(I will play.)

I will play after I have rested.

(Asóbímáshita.)

(Yasumimasu.)

Asónda áto de yasumimasu.

(I played.)

(I will rest.)

I will rest after I have played.

(Sukóshi arúkímáshita.)

(Yasumimasu.)

Sukóshi arúita áto de yasumimasu.

(I walked a little.)

(I will rest.)

I will rest after I have walked a little.

(Yóku shirábémáshita.)

(Kekkon shimasu.)

Yóku shirábeta áto de kekkon shimasu.

(I investigated well.)

(I will marry.)

I will marry after I have investigated well.

(Kekkón shímáshita.)

(Amerika e ikimasu.)

Kekkón shitá áto de Amerika e ikimasu.

(I have married.)

(I am going to America.)

I am going to America after I am married.

(Éega o mimáshita.)

(Góhan o tabemasu.)

Éega o míta áto de góhan o tabemasu.

(I saw a movie.)

(I will eat.)

I will eat after I have seen the movie.

(Góhan o tabémáshita.)

(Éega o mimasu.)

Góhan o tábeta áto de éega o mimasu.

(I have eaten.)

(I will see the movie.)

I will see the movie after I have eaten.

(Kaimono o shimáshita.)

(Éega o mimasu.)

Kaimónó ó shitá áto de éega o mimasu.

(I did some shopping.)

(I will see the movie.)

I will see the movie after I have done some shopping.

(Éega o mimáshita.)

(Kaimono o shimasu.)

Éega o míta áto de kaimono o shimasu.

(I saw the movie.)

(I will do some shopping.)

I will do some shopping after I have seen the movie.

(Nikki o kaímáshita.)
 (Tabémóno o kaimasu.)
 Nikki o katta ato de tabémóno o
 kaimasu.

(Tabémóno o kaímáshita.)
 (Kaerimasu.)
 Tabémóno o katta ato de kaerimasu.

(Uchi e kaérímáshita.)
 (Nikki ni kakimasu.)
 Uchi e katta ato de nikki ni kaki-
 masu.

(past meaning)

(Tsukúrimáshita.)
 (Misémáshita.)
 Tsukútta ato de misémáshita.

(I bought a diary.)
 (I will buy the food.)
 I will buy the food after I have
 bought the diary.

(I bought some food.)
 (I will return.)
 I will return after I have bought
 some food.

(I returned home.)
 (I will write it in my diary.)
 I will write it in my diary after
 I have returned home.

(Use the same sentences as in the first part of Drill 4. Change the principal verbs to the perfective.)

5. Substitution

Okane ga nai kara, ikímásén.

I'm not going because I don't
 have any money.

(Ikeda-san mo ikedai) Ikeda-san mo ikedai kara, ikímásén.
 (Koóhíi shika dasanai) Koóhíi shika dasanai kara, ikímásén.
 (Ashítá wa yasúmi de wa nai) Ashítá wa yasúmi de wa nai kara, ikímásén.
 (Gakúsée dé wa nai) Gakúsée dé wa nai kara, ikímásén.
 (Denwá ga nákatte) Denwá ga nákatte kara, ikímásén.
 (Onégái shité okanakatta) Onégái shité okanakatta kara, ikímásén.
 (Shigótó ga áru) Shigótó ga áru kara, ikímásén.
 (Benkyóó ga áru) Benkyóó ga áru kara, ikímásén.
 (Uchi ni tabémóno ga áru) Uchi ni tabémóno ga áru kara, ikímásén.

I'm not going because Mr. Ikeda isn't going either.
 I'm not going because they don't serve anything other than coffee.
 I'm not going because tomorrow isn't a holiday.
 I'm not going because I'm not a student.
 I'm not going because there wasn't a telephone call.
 I'm not going because I didn't make a reservation (a request).
 I'm not going because I have some work [to do].
 I'm not going because I have some studying [to do].
 I'm not going because I have some food at home.

(Tároo ni i
 (Okane iru
 (Byook
 (Ashi
 da)
 (Kinoc

(Haná
 kii
 (Ikán

(Génk

(Okane
 tsu
 shi

6. S

Takus

(tsuk

(tsuk

(mótt

(tabé

(iru)

(shig

sur

(kain

sur

7. S

Sukó:

(tab

(kaw

have	(Tároo ga uchi ni iru)	Tároo ga uchi ní írú kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because Tarō is at home.
	(Okane ga takusan iru)	Okane ga takúsán írú kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because it costs a lot of money.
	(Byooki da)	Byoókí dá kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because I'm sick.
ought	(Ashítá wa yasúmí da)	Ashítá wa yasúmí da kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because tomorrow is a holiday.
	(Kinoo míta)	Kinoo míta kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because I saw it yesterday.
)	(Hanáshí wa kinoo kíta)	Hanáshí wa kinoo kíítá kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because I heard the talk yesterday.
after	(Ikánái to itta)	Ikánái to íttá kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because I said I wasn't going.
	(Génki ni nátta)	Génki ni nátta kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because I've gotten well.
it.	(Okane o minna tsukatte shimatta)	Okane o minna tsukátté shimáttá kara, ikímásén.	I'm not going because I've used up all my money.

6. Substitution

Takusan kaú kara, komarimasu.

I have a hard time because she buys a lot.

don't	(tsukau)	Takusan tsukáú kara, komarimasu.	I have a hard time because she uses a lot.
	(tsukúru)	Takusan tsukúru kara, komarimasu.	I have a hard time because she makes a lot.
her.	(mótte kuru)	Takusan mótte kuru kara, komarimasu.	I have a hard time because she brings a lot.
ey	(tabéru)	Takusan tabéru kara, komarimasu.	I have a hard time because she eats a lot.
other	(iru)	Takusan írú kara, komarimasu.	I have a hard time because she needs a lot.
mor-	(shigoto o suru)	Takusan shigótó ó súrú kara, komarimasu.	I have a hard time because she does a lot of work.
m not	(kaimono o suru)	Takusan kaímónó ó súrú kara, komarimasu.	I have a hard time because she does a lot of shopping.

7. Substitution

Sukóshi shika nái kara, komarimasu.

It's difficult because he only has a little.

have	(tabénai)	Sukóshi shika tabénai kara, komarimasu.	It's difficult because he only eats a little.
have	(kawánái)	Sukóshi shika kawánái kara, komarimasu.	It's difficult because he only buys a little.

(uránai) Sukóshi shika uránai kara,
komarimasu.
(benkyóo shínai) Sukóshi shika benkyóo shínai
kara, komarimasu.
(shigótó ó shínai) Sukóshi shika shigótó ó shínai
kara, komarimasu.
(tsukúránai) Sukóshi shika tsukúránai kara,
komarimasu.
(hanásánai) Sukóshi shika hanásánai kara,
komarimasu.

It's difficult because he'll
only sell a little.
It's difficult because he
only studies a little.
It's difficult because he
only does a little work.
It's difficult because he
only makes a little.
It's difficult because he
only speaks a little.

8. Substitution

Gakúsée da kara, yóku shitte imasu.

He knows a great deal [about it]
because he's a student.

(Améríkajin) Améríkajin da kara, yóku
shitte imasu.

He knows a great deal [about it]
because he's an American.

(Nihónjin) Nihónjin da kara, yóku
shitte imasu.

He knows a great deal [about it]
because he's a Japanese.

(sénsée) Sénsée da kara, yóku
shitte imasu.

He knows a great deal [about it]
because he's a teacher.

(eégó nó sénsée) Eégó nó sénsée da kara,
yóku shitte imasu.

He knows a great deal [about it]
because he's an English teach-
er.

(nihóngó nó sénsée) Nihóngó nó sénsée da kara,
yóku shitte imasu.

He knows a great deal [about it]
because he's a Japanese teach-
er.

9. Grammar (combining sentences, using nó de)

(Byoókí ó shímáshita.)

(I was ill.)

(Okane ga takusan irímáshita.)

(I spent (needed) a lot of money.)

Byoókí ó shítá no de, okane ga takusan
irímáshita.

I spent (needed) a lot of money
because I was ill.

(Byoókí ní nárímáshita.)

(I became ill.)

(Ikímásén deshita.)

(I didn't go.)

Byoókí ní nátta no de, ikímásén deshita.

I didn't go because I had become
ill.

(Shigótó gá árimáshita.)

(I had some work.)

(Ikímásén deshita.)

(I didn't go.)

Shigótó gá átta no de ikímásén deshita.

I didn't go because I had some
work.

(Kobayashi)

(Kobayashi)

Kobayashi

Kobayashi

(Tabémoto)

(Byoókí)

Tabémoto

ní

(Tabémoto)

(Komarimasu)

Tabémoto

más

(Kaímór)

(Okane)

Kaímór

ta

(Yasúmi)

(Asobin)

Yasúmi

(Kobayashi)

(Watake)

Kobayashi

wa

(Kekkō)

(Daigaku)

Kekkō

hai

(Nikkī)

(Sonó)

Nikkī

shi

10. St

Okashi

(gakkō)

(tabémoto)

(okane)

he'll (Kobayashi-kun ga kité imashita.)
 (Kobayashi-kun ni kikímashita.)
 he Kobayashi-kun ga kité ita no de,
 e. Kobayashi-kun ni kikímashita.
 he
 work. (Tabémóno ga chigáimashita.)
 he (Byoókí ní nárímashita.)
 he Tabémóno ga chigáttá no de, byoókí
 . ní nárímashita.

 (Tabémóno ga chigáimashita.)
 (Komárimashita.)
 Tabémóno ga chigáttá no de, komárimashita.

 it it] (Kaímónó ó shímashita.)
 it it] (Okane o takusan tsukáimashita.)
 it. Kaímónó ó shítá no de, okane o
 it it] takusan tsukáimashita.

 it it] (Yasúmi ni narimashita.)
 it it] (Asobimasu.)
 teach- Yasúmi ni natta no de, asobimasu.

 it it] (Kobayashi-san ga arúkímashita.)
 teach- (Watakushi mo arúkímashita.)
 Kobayashi-san ga arúita no de,
 watakushi mo arúkímashita.

 (Kekkon shímashita.)
 (Daigaku ni haírímásén deshita.)
 Kekkon shítá no de, daigaku ni
 haírímásén deshita.

 ney.) (Nikkí ó yómímashita.)
 ney (Sonó kótó o shitte imasu.)
 Nikkí ó yónda no de, sonó kótó o
 shitte imasu.

10. Substitution

Okáshi ga náí no de komarimasu.

(gakkoo) Gakkóó gá náí no de,
 komarimasu.
 (tabémóno) Tabémóno ga náí no de,
 komarimasu.
 (okane) Okané gá náí no de,
 komarimasu.

(Kobayashi was there.)
 (I asked Kobayashi.)
 Because Kobayashi was there, I
 asked him.

 (The food was different.)
 (I became ill.)
 I became ill because the food was
 different.

 (The food was different.)
 (I had difficulty.)
 I had difficulty because the food
 was different.

 (I did some shopping.)
 (I used a lot of money.)
 I used a lot of money because I
 did some shopping.

 (It's become vacation time.)
 (I am going to play.)
 I am going to play because it's
 now vacation time.

 (Mr. Kobayashi walked.)
 (I also walked.)
 Because Mr. Kobayashi walked, I
 also walked.

 (I got married.)
 (I didn't enter college.)
 I didn't enter college because I
 got married.

 (I read his diary.)
 (I know about that matter.)
 I know about that matter because
 I read his diary.

I'm in a predicament because there are no cakes.

I'm in a predicament because there isn't a school.

I'm in a predicament because there isn't any food.

I'm in a predicament because I don't have any money.

(shigoto) Shigótó gá nái no de,
kōmarimasu.
(oyasumi) Oyásúmí gá nái no de,
kōmarimasu.

I'm in a predicament because there
isn't any work.
I'm in a predicament because there
are no holidays.

(Byoók
(Kōhí
Byoók
no

11. Substitution

Gakkoo ná no de, hón wa takusan arimasu.

Being a school, there are many
books.

(seńsée) Seńsée na no de, hón wa
takusan arimasu.
(gakkóo nó
seńsée) Gakkóo nó seńsée na no de,
hón wa takusan arimasu.
(gakusee) Gakúsée ná no de, hón wa
takusan arimasu.
(hōnya) Hōnya na no de, hón wa
takusan arimasu.
(Tanáká-sán
nó héyá) Tanáká-sán nó héyá na no de,
hón wa takusan arimasu.

Being a teacher, he has many
books.
Being a school teacher, he has
many books.
Being a student, he has many
books.
Being a bookstore, there are
many books.
Being Mr. Tanaka's room, there
are many books.

(Hón o
(Yoku
Hón o
wa
(Tooky
(Súmisi
Tooky
sa
(Hanás
(Sonó
Hanás
kó
(Tanak
(Mínna
Tanak
mi

12. Substitution

Amerika e ikú no de, íma benkyoo shite
imasu.

I am studying now because I am
going to America.

(daigaku ni
háiru) Daigaku ni háiru no de, íma
benkyoo shite imasu.
(seńsée ni
náru) Seńsée ni náru no de, íma
benkyoo shite imasu.
(ashita
gakkoo o
yasúmu) Ashita gakkoo o yasúmu no de,
íma benkyoo shite imasu.
(áto de
asobu) Áto de asóbú no de, íma
benkyoo shite imasu.
(áto de
Tároo ga
kúru) Áto de Tároo ga kúru no de,
íma benkyoo shite imasu.
(ashita seń-
sée ni áu) Ashita seńsée ni áu no de,
íma benkyoo shite imasu.

I am studying now because I will
be entering the university.
I am studying now because I will
become a teacher.
I am studying now because I will
miss school tomorrow.
I am studying now because I will
play later.
I am studying now because Tarō
is coming over later.
I am studying now because I am
seeing the teacher tomorrow.

(Nikki
(Yoku
Nikki
ob
(Ego
(Améri
ma
Ego
to
(Shigo
(Okane
Shigo
ni

13. Grammar (combining sentences, using tame)

(Benkyoo ga arímashita.)
(Éega o mimásén deshita.)
Benkyoo ga átta tame, éega o mimásén
deshita.

(I had some studying [to do].)
(I didn't see the movie.)
I didn't see the movie because I
had some studying [to do].

(Okane
(Hón o
Okane

there

(Byoóki ní nárímáshita.)

(I became ill.)

there

(Koóhíi o nomímásén.)

(I don't drink coffee.)

Byoóki ní náttá tame, koóhíi o
nomímásén.I don't drink coffee because I
became ill.

many

(Hón o yónde okimashita.)

(I had read the book.)

(Yóku wakárimáshita.)

(I understood it well.)

Hón o yónde oíta tame, yóku
wakárimáshita.I understood it well because I had
read the book.

ny

(Tookyoo ni imásén deshita.)

(I wasn't in Tōkyō.)

(Súmisu-san ni aímásén deshita.)

(I didn't see Mr. Smith.)

has

Tookyoo ni inákatta tame, Súmisu-
san ni aímásén deshita.I didn't see Mr. Smith because I
wasn't in Tōkyō.

ny

(Hanáshí o kikímásén deshita.)

(I didn't hear the talk.)

(Sonó kótó wa shirímásén.)

(I don't know about that matter.)

re

Hanáshí o kikanákatta tame, sonó
kótó wa shirímásén.I don't know about that matter
because I didn't hear the talk.

here

(Tanaka-san ga kimásén deshita.)

(Mr. Tanaka didn't come.)

(Minná ga komárimáshita.)

(Everyone had difficulty.)

Tanaka-san ga konákatta tame,
minná ga komárimáshita.Everyone had difficulty because Mr.
Tanaka hadn't come.

I am

(Nikki ni káite imasu.)

(He is writing in a diary.)

[will
ity.

(Yóku obóete imasu.)

(He remembers well.)

[will

Nikki ni káite iru tame, yóku
obóete imasu.He remembers well because he is
writing in a diary.

: will

(Eego o narátte imasu.)

(He is learning English.)

(Améríkájin to wa eego de hanashi-
masu.)

(He speaks English with Americans.)

: will

Eego o narátte iru tame, Améríkájin
to wa eego de hanashimasu.He speaks English with Americans
because he is learning English.

arō

(Shigoto ga takusan arimasu.)

(There is lots of work.)

(Okane ni komárimásén.)

(He is not having financial difficul-
ty.)

: am

Shigoto ga takúsán áru tame, okane
ni komárimásén.He is not having financial difficul-
ty because there is lots of work.

row.

(Okane ga arímásén.)

(He doesn't have money.)

(Hón o kaímásén.)

(He doesn't buy books.)

Okane ga náí tame, hón o kaímásén.

He doesn't buy books because he
doesn't have money.

I

(Yasumi ga arimasen.)
 (Byooki ni narimasu.)
 Yasumi ga nai tame, byooki ni nari-
 masu.

(He has no vacation.)
 (He becomes ill.)
 He becomes ill because he has no va-
 cation.

(Jidousha ga arimasen.)
 (Arukimasu.)
 Jidousha ga nai tame, arukimasu.

(He doesn't have a car.)
 (He walks.)
 He walks because he doesn't have a
 car.

14. Grammar (combining sentences, using tame ni)

(Tanaka-san ni misemasu.)
 (Motte kimashita.)
 Tanaka-san ni miseru tame ni motte
 kimashita.

(I will show it to Mr. Tanaka.)
 (I brought it.)
 I brought it to show Mr. Tanaka.

(Okashi o tsukurimasu.)
 (Gyuunyuu ga irimasu.)
 Okashi o tsukuru tame ni gyuunyuu
 ga irimasu.

(I will make some cakes.)
 (I need some milk.)
 I need some milk to make some cakes.

(Kyoto e motte ikimasu.)
 (Kaishita.)
 Kyoto e motte iku tame ni kai-
 mashita.

(I am taking it to Kyoto.)
 (I bought it.)
 I bought it to take to Kyoto.

(Benkyoo shimasu.)
 (Jibiki o motte kite imasu.)
 Benkyoo suru tame ni jibiki o motte
 kite imasu.

(I will study.)
 (I have brought a dictionary.)
 I have brought a dictionary in order
 to study.

(Wasuremasen.)
 (Koko ni oite oita n' desu.)
 Wasurenai tame ni koko ni oite oita
 n' desu.

(I will not forget.)
 (I left it here.)
 I left it here in order not to forget
 it.

(Byooki ni narimasen.)
 (Yoku yasumimasu.)
 Byooki ni naranai tame ni yoku
 yasumimasu.

(I will not get sick.)
 (I rest well.)
 I rest well so that I will not get
 sick.

(Minna tsukatte shimaimasen.)
 (Sukoshi shimatte okimashita.)
 Minna tsukatte shimawanai tame ni
 sukoshi shimatte okimashita.

(I will not use it all.)
 (I put a little away.)
 I put a little away so that I would
 not use it all.

150

(Ameri
 (Hon o
 Ameri

(Benky
 (Ameri
 Benky
 ma

(Nihon
 (Tsuku
 Nihon

(Watak
 (Tsuku
 Watak

15. S

Asobi

(Eega
 (Hon o
 (Ikeda

(shige

(sayo

(Hon o
 (Tegai

(kami

16. S

Issho

(mi ni
 (ai ni
 (kai
 (nara
 (shiri
 (kiki
 (dash
 (oneg
 ni)

(Amérikájin desu.)

(They are Americans.)

(Hón o kakimasu.)

(I will write a book.)

Amérikájin no tame ni hón o kakimasu.

I will write a book for Americans.

(Benkyoo desu.)

(He is studying.)

(Amerika e ikimasu.)

(He is going to America.)

Benkyóó nó támé ni Amerika e ikimasu.

He is going to America to study.

(Nihónjín desu.)

(He is a Japanese.)

(Tsukurimasu.)

(I will make it.)

Nihónjín no tame ni tsukurimasu.

I will make it for Japanese people.

(Watakushi desu.)

(It's I.)

(Tsukútte kudasai.)

(Please make it.)

Watakushí nó támé ni tsukútte kudasai. Please make it for me.

15. Substitution

Asóbí ní íkímáshita.

He went to play.

(éega o mí ni)

Éega o mí ni ikimashita.

He went to see a movie.

(hón o kai ni)

Hón o kai ní íkímáshita.

He went to buy a book.

(Ikeda-san ni ái ni)

Ikeda-san ni ái ni ikimashita.

He went to see Mr. Ikeda.

(shigoto o shi ni)

Shigoto o shi ní íkímáshita.

He went to do some work.

(sayóónára o ii ni)

Sayóónára o ii ní íkímáshita.

He went to say goodbye.

(hón o káeshi ni)

Hón o káeshi ni ikimashita.

He went to return a book.

(tegámí ó dáshi ni)

Tegámí ó dáshi ni ikimashita.

He went to mail a letter.

(kamí o kai ni)

Kamí o kai ní íkímáshita.

He went to buy some paper.

16. Substitution

Issho ni asóbí ní íkímáshóo.

Let's go together to play.

(mí ni)

Issho ni mí ni ikimashoo.

Let's go see it together.

(ái ni)

Issho ni ái ni ikimashoo.

Let's go meet him together.

(kai ni)

Issho ni kai ní íkímáshóo.

Let's go buy it together.

(narái ni)

Issho ni narái ni ikimashoo.

Let's go learn together.

(shirábe ni)

Issho ni shirábe ni ikimashoo.

Let's go investigate together.

(kiki ni)

Issho ni kiki ní íkímáshóo.

Let's go ask together.

(dáshi ni)

Issho ni dáshi ni ikimashoo.

Let's go mail it together.

(onegai shi ni)

Issho ni onégái shi ní íkímáshóo.

Let's go together to make the request.

17. Substitution

Éega o míru no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to see a movie.

(uchi o kau) Uchi o kau no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to buy a house.

(denwá ó kákéru) Denwá ó kákéru no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to telephone.

(kekkon suru) Kekkon sūru no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to get married.

(daigákú ní háiru) Daigákú ní háiru no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to enter the university.

(jidóosha o kau) Jidóosha o kau no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to buy a car.

(Amerika e iku) Amériká é ikú no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to go to America.

(kaimono o suru) Kaímónó ó sūru no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to do shopping.

(tabémóno o kau) Tabémóno o kau no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to buy food.

(hikóoki de káeru) Hikóoki de káeru no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to return by plane.

(asobi ni iku) Asóbí ní ikú no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to go play.

(tábe ni iku) Tábe ni iku no ni, okane ga irimasu.

One needs money to go eat.

18. Grammar (combine sentences, using nó ni)

(Éega o mí ni ikimashita.)

(He went to see a movie.)

(Byoóki datta to itte imasu.)

(He says he was ill.)

Éega o mí ni itta no ni, byoóki datta to itte imasu.

In spite of the fact that he went to see a movie, he says that he was ill.

(Watakushi to iku to iimashita.)

(He said he would go with me.)

(Tanaka-san to ikimashita.)

(He went with Mr. Tanaka.)

Watakushi to iku to itta no ni, Tanaka-san to ikimashita.

In spite of the fact that he said he would go with me, he went with Mr. Tanaka.

(Sukóshi dake tabemashita.)

(I ate only a little.)

(Byoóki ní nárímashita.)

(I became sick.)

Sukóshi dake tabeta no ni, byoóki ní nárímashita.

In spite of the fact that I ate only a little, I became sick.

(Tanáká-sán ní aímashita.)

(He saw Mr. Tanaka.)

(Ano hanáshí wa shimásén deshita.)

(He didn't talk about that.)

Tanáká-sán ní átta no ni, ano hanáshí wa shimásén deshita.

In spite of the fact that he saw Mr. Tanaka, he didn't talk about that.

(Hón o
(Káesh
Hón o
to

(Onéga
(Mótte
Onéga
ki

(Wata
(Ikeda
Wata
I

(Wata
(Yama
Wata
Y

(Jibi
(Tsuk
Jibi
m

(Nikk
(Obóe
Nikk
i

(Okar
(Jidó
Okar
c

(Eege
(Tsu
Eege
f

(Okar
(Tak
Okar

(Byo
(Gak
Byo

(Hón o kaeshímásén deshita.)
(Káeshita to itte imasu.)
Hón o kaésanakatta no ni, káeshita
to itte imasu.

(Onégái shímásén deshita.)
(Motte kimashita.)
Onégái shinákatta no ni, motte
kimashita.

(Watakushi wa yasúmímásén deshita.)
(Ikeda-san wa yasúmímáshita.)
Watakushi wa yasúmanakatta no ni,
Ikeda-san wa yasúmímáshita.

(Watakushi wa hanáshímásén deshita.)
(Yamamoto-san wa shitté imóshita.)
Watakushi wa hanásanakatta no ni,
Yamamoto-san wa shitté imóshita.

(Jibíki o motte imasu.)
(Tsukáimásén.)
Jibíki o motte iru no ni, tsukái-
másén.

(Níkkí ní wa káite arimasu.)
(Obóete imasen.)
Níkkí ní wa káite aru no ni, obóete
imasen.

(Okane ga takusan arimasu.)
(Jidóosha o kaímásén.)
Okane ga takúsán áru no ni, jidóosha
o kaímásén.

(Eego o benkyoo shite imasu.)
(Tsukáimásén.)
Eego o benkyóó shité írú no ni,
tsukáimásén.

(Okane ga arímásén.)
(Takusan kaimasu.)
Okane ga nai no ni, takusan kaimasu.

(Byoókí dé wa arímásén.)
(Gakkoo e kimásén.)
Byoókí dé wa nai no ni, gakkoo e
kimásén.

(He didn't return the book.)
(He says he returned it.)
In spite of the fact that he didn't
return the book, he says he re-
turned it.

(I didn't request it.)
(He brought it.)
He brought it although I had not re-
quested it.

(I didn't take the day off.)
(Mr. Ikeda took the day off.)
In spite of the fact that I didn't
take the day off, Mr. Ikeda did.

(I didn't tell him.)
(Mr. Yamamoto knew about it.)
In spite of the fact that I hadn't
told him, Mr. Yamamoto knew about
it.

(He has a dictionary.)
(He doesn't use it.)
In spite of the fact that he has a
dictionary, he doesn't use it.

(It is written in the diary.)
(I don't remember.)
In spite of the fact that it is
written in the diary, I don't re-
member that.

(He has a lot of money.)
(He doesn't buy a car.)
In spite of the fact that he has a
lot of money, he doesn't buy a
car.

(He is studying English.)
(He doesn't use it.)
In spite of the fact that he is
studying English, he doesn't use
it.

(He doesn't have any money.)
(He buys a lot.)
In spite of the fact that he doesn't
have money, he buys a lot.

(He isn't ill.)
(He doesn't come to school.)
In spite of the fact that he isn't
ill, he doesn't come to school.

(Irímásén.)
(Kaimasu.)
Iranái no ni, kaimasu.

(He doesn't need it.)
(He buys it.)
In spite of the fact that he doesn't
need it, he buys it.

Ákiko-
ga ná

19. Substitution

Sénsée na no ni, mótte imasen.

Though he's a teacher, he
doesn't have it.

(gakusee) Gakúsée ná no ni, mótte imasen.

Though he's a student, he
doesn't have it.

(Améríkájin) Améríkájin na no ni, mótte imasen.

Though he's an American,
he doesn't have one.

(Nihónjin) Nihónjin na no ni, mótte imasen.

Though he's a Japanese, he
doesn't have one.

(eégó nó sénsée) Eégó nó sénsée na no ni, mótte
imasen.

Though he's an English
teacher, he doesn't
have one.

(rajioya-san) Rajióyá-sán ná no ni, mótte imasen.

Though he's a radio man,
he doesn't have one.

3. Ya
K
Kyóoto
shitte
ga, Am
Wataku
Tanaka
góhan
chigáu

A. Us

1. By

2. By

3. St

4. Si

5. Of

6. Of

7. As

8. To

9. By

10. By

11. St

12. St

13. To

14. To

15. N

16. N

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

1. Tároo-san e no otégami.

Tároo-san, ogénki desu ka? Otégami o aríгатoo gozaimashita.¹ Watakushi mo génki ni narimashita. Gakkoo wa itsu kara oyásúmí ní nárímásu ka? Hánako-san wa oyasumi ni Níkkoo e ikimasu. Issho ni Níkkoo e ikímashóo to Hánako-san ga ittá keredo, asóbí ní ikú no ni wa okane ga takúsán írímásu kara né. Watakushi wa byoókí nó tamé ni, okane o takusan tsukáttá no de, Hánako-san to ikánái de Yókohama ni imasu. Dóozo Yókohama ni asóbí ní kité kudasai. Uchí ní wa heyá ga takúsán árímásu kara, uchi ni tomátté kúdásái. Tsugí no otégami ni, kuru ka doo ka kaíte kudasai né. Mátte imasu. Déwa ogénki de.

Sayóónára,
Ákiko

2. Tanaka-kun no nikki.

Kyóo wa yasúmí datta kara, éega o mí ni itta. Sátóo-kun wa yasúmí na no ni, isogi no shigoto ga átta no de, ikanákatta. Dákara Ikeda-kun daké to itta. Éega o míte kara góhan o tábe ni depáato e háitta. Góhan o tábeta ato de depáato no náka o sukóshi arúite mita. Kobayashi-kun ga káimónó ní kité ita no de, Kobayashi-kun ga káimono o shité shímátté kara, minná de koóhí o nómi ni itte, soko de éega no kotó ya Ákiko-san no kekkón nó kótó o hanáshita.

¹I thank you [for what you have done].

Ákiko-san ga Amérikájin to kekkon-suru to Kobayashi-kun ga itté-ita. Okane ga nákatta no de, kaérl wa arúite káetta.

3. Yamamótó-sán kára no tegami.

Kyóo wa Tanaka-san no otaku de Súmisu-san ni aímáshita. Súmisu-san to Kyóoto no hanáshí o shimáshita ga, Amérikájin na no ni, Kyóoto no kotó o yóku shitte imasu. Íma Amerika no daigaku ga yasúmí na no de, Nihón ni kité imasu ga, Amerika e káette kara gakúsée nó tamé ni, hón o káku to itté imáshita. Watakushi wa eego ga wakaránai kara, Súmisu-san wa nihongo dake tsukáimáshita. Tanaka-san ga Súmisu-san no tamé ni góhan o tsukútta no ni, Súmisu-san wa góhan o tábezu ni ocha dake nónde imáshita. Nihón e kité kara tabémóno ga chigáú no de, byoóki ní nátta kara desu.

EXERCISES

A. Use the proper form of the verb or copula in the blanks below.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Byoóki _____ kara ikímásén. | I'm not going because I'm sick. |
| 2. Byoóki _____ kara ikímásén
deshita. | I didn't go because I was sick. |
| 3. Sukóshi _____ kara shigoto o
shimasu. | I'll do the work after I rest a lit-
tle. |
| 4. Sukóshi _____ kara génki ni
narimashita. | I've recovered because I rested a
little. |
| 5. Okané gá _____ kara ikímásén
deshita. | I didn't go because I didn't have
any money. |
| 6. Okané gá _____ kara ikímásén. | I'm not going because I don't have
any money. |
| 7. Ashita kúru _____ kara kyóo
katte okimasu. | They'll probably come tomorrow, so
I'll buy some today. |
| 8. Tanaka-san ga _____ kara
tabemasu. | We'll eat after Mr. Tanaka comes. |
| 9. Byoóki ní _____ kara yasúmí-
máshita. | I rested after I became ill. |
| 10. Byoóki ní _____ kara yasúmí-
máshita. | I rested because I became ill. |
| 11. Suzuki-san ni _____ kara
tegami o kakimasu. | I'll write the letter after I ask
Mr. Suzuki. |
| 12. Suzuki-san kara _____ kara
sóo deshoo. | It's probably so, because I heard it
from Mr. Suzuki. |
| 13. Takusan _____ kara urimasu. | I'll sell them after I make a lot. |
| 14. Takusan _____ kara urimasu. | I'll sell some because I made a lot. |
| 15. Nihongo de _____ kara wakárl-
másén deshita. | I didn't understand because they
spoke in Japanese. |
| 16. Nihongo de _____ kara eego de
hanáshimáshita. | They spoke in English after they
spoke in Japanese. |

B. Insert kara or nó de in the following blanks, using nó de wherever possible.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Yasúmi ni nátta _____ asobimasu. | I am going to play because it is now vacation time. |
| 2. Yasúmi ni nátta _____ asóbímásén ka? | Won't you play now that it is vacation time? |
| 3. Tabémóno ga chigáú _____ komarimasu. | I have a hard time because the food is different. |
| 4. Kore wa chigáú _____ tábete mite kudasai. | This is different, so please try eating it. |
| 5. Tanaka-san ga arúita _____ wata-kushi mo arúkímáshita. | Because Mr. Tanaka walked, I also walked. |
| 6. Tsukútta _____ tabémásén ka? | Won't you eat some, since I've made some? |
| 7. Tegami o káita _____ dáshite kudasai. | I've written the letter, so please mail it. |
| 8. Shigótó ó shínái _____ komarimasu. | I have a hard time because he doesn't work. |

C. Supply the proper forms of the verb in the following blanks.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. _____ ni kaérímáshita. | He went home to eat. |
| 2. Shigótó _____ ní ikímáshita. | He went to do some work. |
| 3. _____ ni ikímáshóo. | Let's go see. |
| 4. Dáre ni _____ ni ikímáshita ka? | Who did he go to meet? |
| 5. Benkyoo _____ ni kité imasu. | I am here to study. |
| 6. _____ ni mótte kaerimashita. | He took it home to show them. |
| 7. _____ ní ikímáshóo ka? | Shall I go call them? |
| 8. _____ ní kaérímáshita. | He went home to ask. |
| 9. Tegami o _____ ni itté kúdásai. | Please go mail the letter. |
| 10. Sonó kótó o _____ ní kímáshita. | I came to say that. |
| 11. _____ ni kitá deshoo? | They came here to learn, didn't they? |
| 12. _____ ní kímásu yo. | They'll come to sell it, you know. |

D. Supply the proper forms of the verb or copula in the following blanks.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Shimbun wa _____ tame ni kaímáshita. | I bought the newspaper to read. |
| 2. Ashita _____ tame ni kaímáshita. | I bought it to serve tomorrow. |
| 3. _____ táme ni dáshite arimasu. | It is put out so that I won't forget it. |
| 4. _____ tame ni tsukúrimáshita. | I made it to take along. |
| 5. _____ tame ni mótte kimashita. | I brought it to show you. |
| 6. _____ tame ni Amerika ni kímáshita. | I came to America to learn. |

7. Benk

8. Byoc

9. Okar

10. Tabé

11. Taná

12. Taná

13. _____

14. Soni

15. Dai

16. Nih

17. _____

18. Iré

19. Oká

20. Oka

E. Ins

1. Gak

2. Oyá

3. Oyá

4. Eég

5. Byc

6. Eég

7. Isé

F. Ins

1. Hói

2. Hói

ossi-
is
vaca-
food
ry
lso
made
ease

7. Benkyóó gá _____ tame ikímásén deshita.
8. Byóókí _____ tame kimásén deshita.
9. Okané gá _____ tame are wa kaímásén deshita.
10. Tabémóno ga sukóshi shika _____ tame yobímásén deshita.
11. Tanaka-san ni _____ tame sonó kotó wa kikímásén deshita.
12. Tanaka-san ga _____ tame minná ga komárimáshita.
13. _____ no ni kamí ga irimasu.
14. Soóná mónó o _____ no ni wa okane ga takusan irimasu.
15. Daigaku ni _____ no ni irimasu.
16. Nihongo o _____ no ni eego de hanáshimáshita.
17. _____ no ni kimáshita.
18. Irété _____ no ni íma arímásén.
19. Okáshi o _____ no ni anna ni katté kimáshita.
20. Okane ni _____ no ni anná mónó o katte imasu.

I didn't go because I had some studying to do.
I didn't come because I was sick.
I didn't buy it because I don't have the money.
I didn't invite them because there was only a little bit of food.
I didn't hear about that because I didn't see (meet) Mr. Tanaka.
Everyone was in difficulty because Mr. Tanaka didn't come.
I need some paper to write it.
One needs a lot of money to buy a thing like that.
One needs it to enter the university.
He spoke in English although he speaks Japanese.
He came although I had not invited him.
I left it in there, but it isn't there now.
She bought all those cakes, although she doesn't eat them.
He buys things like that although he's having difficulty financially.

E. Insert ná no ni or ná no de in the following blanks.

1. Gakúsée _____ jibíkí o mótte imasen.
2. Oyásúmí _____ gakkoo e ikímásén.
3. Oyásúmí _____ gakkoo e ikimasu.
4. Eégó _____ wakaránai to iimasu.
5. Byóókí _____ daigaku e kimáshita.
6. Eégó nó sénsée _____ eego ga wakarimasu.
7. Isógí nó shígótó _____ kyóo shite imasu.

He doesn't have a dictionary, though he's a student.
I'm not going to school, because it's a holiday.
He goes to school although it's a holiday.
Though it's English, he says he doesn't understand.
He came to the university though he's ill.
He understands English because he's a teacher of English.
I'm doing it today because it's an urgent job.

F. Insert the proper form of suru or náru.

1. Hón ni _____.
2. Hón ni _____.

It's going to become a book.
They made it into a book.

ow.

or-

3. Byóókí ní _____.
4. Génki ní _____.
5. Ítsu kara oyásúmí ní _____ ka?
6. Oyásúmí ní _____.
7. Gakúséé ní _____.
8. Sènsée ní _____.

I won't become sick.

He became well.

When does your vacation begin?

Let's make it a holiday.

He became a student.

Let's make him a teacher.

michi
 chikám
 furuhor
 yoofuku
 iroiro
 kíree
 kitánái
 sukí
 kirai
 takái
 yasúi
 nagái
 mijíká
 oókí
 óoki
 chiísá
 chíisa
 íi, (y
 warúi
 atárash
 furúi
 tooi
 chikái
 hayái
 osoi
 hoshí
 isógash
 yóku
 amari,
 mótto
 kamáu

LESSON VIII

michi	1) street; 2) way
chikámichi	shortcut
furuhon	used book
yoofuku	western clothing
iroiro (no, na)	various
kíree (na)	1) pretty; 2) clean
kitánái	dirty
sukí (na)	likeable, liked, loved
kirai (na)	distasteful, disliked
takái	1) high, tall; 2) expensive
yasúi	inexpensive, cheap
nagái	long (spatial and temporal)
mijíkái	short (spatial and temporal)
oókíi	big, large
óoki (na)	big, large
chiísái	small
chíisa (na)	small
íi, (yói)	good
warúi	bad
atáráshíi	1) new; 2) fresh
furúi	1) old (not of age); 2) old-fashioned
tooi	1) far, distant; 2) hard of hearing
chikái	near, close
hayái	1) fast; 2) early
osoi	1) slow; 2) late
hoshíi	to be wanted, to be desirable
isógáshíi	busy
yóku	often
amari, ammari	too, very
mótto	more, still more
kamáu	to matter (intr., usually occurs in the negative as "it doesn't matter")

PATTERN PASSAGE

- A. Yoofuku ga fúruku natta no de, atarashii no o kaítái to omótte iru no desu ga, dóno depaato ga íi deshoo ka?
- B. Toói kéredo, éki no chikáku no depáato wa oókii kara, íi mono o utte imasu. Dónna no ga hoshii n' desu ka?
- A. Kono yoofuku wa fúrukute mijikái kara, mótto nagái no ga hoshii n' desu. Soko ni kiree na yoofuku ga arímásu ka?
- B. Ée. Asoko wa ammari yásuku wa náí desu ga, takaku mo arimasen. Kono yoofuku wa sukóshi takakatta n' desu ga, katté yókatta to omótte imasu. Depaato wa yásuku shinai no de, komárimásu ne. Isshó ní íkí-máshoo ka?
- A. Onégái shitái n' desu ga, qisoga-shiku arímásén ka?
- B. Watakushi wa kaimono ga sukí desu kara, kamáímasén.
- A. I'm thinking of buying (that I'd like to buy) some new clothes because mine have become old. Which department store do you think would be good [to go to]?
- B. It's far away, but the department store near the station has good things because it's a big [store]. What kind [of clothes] do you want?
- A. These clothes are old and short, so I want some longer ones. Do they have pretty clothes there?
- B. Yes. It isn't very cheap there, but it isn't [particularly] expensive either. This dress was a little expensive, but I'm glad I bought it. It's difficult because department stores don't lower prices.¹ Shall I go with you?
- A. That would be very nice (I would like to request that), but aren't you busy?
- B. I like to shop, so that doesn't matter.

GRAMMAR

8.1 Verbal adjectives

The informal non-past of all verbal adjectives ends in "i" which is immediately preceded by another vowel. (Note: Not all words ending in this manner are verbal adjectives.)

EXAMPLES:

chiísái	is small
oókii	is large
toói	is far
yasui	is cheap

¹ Meaning that one cannot bargain in a department store.

the in
to the
tive n

EXAMPLE

c
o
t
y
T

non-pa

tentat

perfect

neg. n

neg. p

gerund

neg. g

* less

EXAMPLE

is
wa
is
wa
is
be
nc

8.2 Va
(a
verbal

The verbal adjective is conjugated. The stem of the verbal adjective is the informal non-past form minus the final "i"; endings are added directly to these stems. fi has an irregular stem, yo, in all forms except the positive non-past.

EXAMPLES:

chiísái	chiisa
oókíi	ooki
tooi	too
yasúi	yasu

The following is a chart of verbal adjective endings.

	INFORMAL	SEMI-FORMAL
non-past	- i	- i desu
tentative	- karoo* - i daroo	- i deshoo
perfective	- katta	- katta desu - i deshita*
neg. non-past	- ku nai	-ku nai desu -ku arimasen
neg. perfective	- ku nakatta	- ku nakatta desu - ku arimasen deshita
gerund	-kute	
neg. gerund	- ku nakute	

* less commonly used

EXAMPLES:

is small	chiísái	chiísái desu
was small	chiísakatta	chiísakatta desu
is not small	chiísaku nai	chiísaku nai desu, chiísaku arimasen
was not small	chiísaku nakatta	chiísaku nakatta desu, chiísaku arimasen deshita
is probably small	chiísái daroo	chiísái deshoo
being small (is small and)	chiísakute	
not being small	chiísaku nakute	

8.2 Various uses of the verbal adjective

(a) The non-past and perfective forms (positive and negative) of the verbal adjective occur as sentence predicates.

EXAMPLES:

Takái.	It's expensive.
Takái desu.	It's expensive.
Konó hón wa takakatta.	This book was expensive.
Konó hón wa takakatta desu.	This book was expensive.
Kore wa takaku nai.	This isn't expensive.
Kore wa takaku arimasen.	This isn't expensive.
Kore wa takái deshoo.	This is probably expensive.
Kore wa takaku nai deshoo.	This is probably not expensive.

(b) The non-past and perfective forms (positive and negative) occur as noun modifiers.

EXAMPLES:

Atárashii jidóosha desu.	It's a new car.
Atárashii íi jidóosha o kaí-máshita.	He bought a good, new car.
Oókíi takái hón desu.	It's a large, expensive book.
Óokikute takái hón desu.	It's a large and expensive book.
Takaku nai no o kudasai.	Please give me the one that isn't expensive.
Osókatta hito wa haírenakatta to itté imáshita.	They were saying that the late-comers were unable to get in.

(c) The te form or the gerund of verbal adjectives has a function like that of the gerund of verbs.

EXAMPLES:

Nágakute jidóosha ni haírímásén.	It's long and won't fit in the car.
Óokikute íi uchi desu.	It's a large and nice house.
Michi ga wárukute kómarimasu.	I have a hard time because the road is so bad.

(d) The ku form of verbal adjectives occurs as modifier of verbs, telling "how" or "in what manner" the action is being performed.

EXAMPLES:

Mijíkaku shimasu.	I will make it short.
Mijíkaku narimashita.	It's become short.
Háyaku shite kudasai.	Please do it quickly.
Óokiku kakímásén deshita.	He didn't write it large.
Nágaku hanáshímásén deshita.	He didn't speak long.
Osoku kaérímáshita.	He returned late.

(e) The ku forms of a few verbal adjectives such as chikái, "is near," tooí, "is far," and óoi, "is many," function as nouns.

EXAMPLES:

Chikáku ni arimasu.	It's nearby.
Chikáku no gakkoo e itte imasu.	He goes to a school nearby.
Toókú kara no hito desu.	He's a person from far away.
Óoku no Amérikájin wa sōo omótte imasu.	Many Americans think so. (<u>óoi</u> appears later.)

8.3 Ad

Th

cle na,

noun.

nouns.

jectiva

EXAMPLE

Tar

Sul

Ki

ADDITION

Kí

Sul

Og

Ad

ifiers

formed.

EXAMPLE

Kí

Kí

Sul

Gé

Kí

(Note:
and chí
modifier

8.4 Des

The

-tai or

ending -

conjugat

"-chitai

tive.

EXAMPLES

Wat

Mót

Wat

Wat

Wat

The

ga or th

8.3 Adjectival nouns

There is a category of nouns in which the noun is followed by the particle na, rather than the usual no, when it occurs as a modifier of another noun. Nouns of this category will be referred to hereafter as adjectival nouns. (In the vocabulary list of this text, nouns followed by na are adjectival nouns.)

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san wa kiree na hito desu.
Sukí na mono ga arímásén.
Kirai na monó wa arímásén.

Mrs. Tanaka is a pretty person.
There is nothing [here] that I like.
There is nothing that I don't like.

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES:

Kiree desu ne.
Sukí de wa arímásén.
Ogénki desu ka?

It's pretty, isn't it.
I don't like it.
How are you? Are you well?

Adjectival nouns are followed by the particle ni when they occur as modifiers of verbs, telling "how" or "in what manner" the action is being performed. (Compare with 8.2 d.)

EXAMPLES:

Kiree ni kakímáshita.
Kiree ni tabete shimaimashita.
Sukí ni narímáshita.
Génki ni narímáshita.
Kiree ni shimáshita.

He wrote it prettily.
He ate it all up (clean).
He's gotten to like it.
He's gotten well.
He cleaned it up. (He made it neat.)

(Note: The verbal adjectives óókíi and chiísái have alternate forms óoki na and chiisa na. The latter occur interchangeably with the former ONLY as noun modifiers.)

8.4 Desiderative form of verbs

The stem of the first-conjugation verb plus the verbal adjective ending -tai or the stem of the second-conjugation verb plus the verbal adjective ending -itai forms the desiderative or "want to" form of the verb. A second-conjugation verb whose stem ends with "s" or "t" becomes "-shitai" or "-chitai", respectively. The desiderative is conjugated as a verbal adjective.

EXAMPLES:

Watakushi mo tabétái desu né.
Motto tabétákatta desu.
Watakushi wa ikítákú arímásén.
Watakushi mo sonó hón ga yomítái desu.
Watakushi mo sonó hón o yomítái desu.

I'd like to eat some, too!
I wanted to eat more.
I don't want to go.
I, too, would like to read that book.
I, too, would like to read that book.

The object of the verb in the desiderative is indicated by the particle ga or the particle o, of which the latter is a newer phenomenon.

(Caution: The desiderative forms used of a second person in the interrogative sense of "Do you like..." is not used much. It is considered too direct and not polite.)

8.5 Verbal-adjectives in compounds

The stem of verbal adjectives occurs as the first part of a two-part compound word such as an adjective-verb, adjective-noun, or adjective-adjective compound. The meanings of such compounds may retain the original meanings of the individual words or assume a new meaning different from that of its component parts.

EXAMPLES:

Stem	Second Part	Compound	Meaning
furū (furúi)	hón (noun)	furuhon	used book
chika (chikái)	michi (noun)	chikamichi	shortcut
waru (warúi)	mono (noun)	warumono	a bad person (a robber)
ooki (oókíi)	sugiru (verb)	oókisugiru	to be too big
hoso (hosói)	nagái (adjective)	hosónagái	narrow and long

DRILL

1. Substitution

Chiísái desu.

(oókíi)	Oókíi desu.
(takái)	Takái desu.
(yasúi)	Yasúi desu.
(nagái)	Nagái desu.
(mijíkái)	Mijíkái desu.
(íi)	íi desu.
(warúi)	Warúi desu.
(atárashíi)	Atárashíi desu.
(furúi)	Furúi desu.
(tooi)	Tooi desu.
(chikái)	Chikái desu.
(hayái)	Hayái desu.
(osoi)	Osoi desu.
(kitánái)	Kitánái desu.
(hoshíi)	Hoshíi desu.
(isógashíi)	Isógashíi desu.

It's small.

It's large.
It's expensive.
It's inexpensive.
It's long.
It's short.
It's good.
It's bad.
It's new.
It's old.
It's far.
It's near.
It's early.
It's late.
It's dirty.
I want it.
I'm busy.

2. Grammar (non-past informal: positive to negative)

(chiísái)	chiísaku nai	(It's small.)	It's not small.
(oókíi)	oókiku nai	(It's large.)	It's not large.

(takái)
(yasúi)
(nagái)
(mijíkái)
(íi)
(warúi)
(atárashíi)
(furúi)
(tooi)
(chikái)
(hayái)
(osoi)
(kitánái)
(hoshíi)
(isógashíi)

3. Grammar

(chiísái)
(oókíi)
(takái)
(yasúi)

(nagái)
(mijíkái)
(íi)
(warúi)
(atárashíi)
(furúi)
(tooi)
(chikái)
(hayái)
(osoi)
(kitánái)
(hoshíi)
(isógashíi)

4. Grammar

(chiísaku)
(oókiku)
(takaku)
(yasuku)
(nagaku)
(mijíkaku)
(yoku ari)
(waruku)
(atárashíi)
(furuku)

roga-
direct

art
adjec-
mean-
at of

(takái)	tákaku nai	(It's expensive.)	It's not expensive.
(yasúi)	yásuku nai	(It's inexpensive.)	It's not inexpensive.
(nagái)	nágaku nai	(It's long.)	It's not long.
(mijíkái)	mijíkaku nai	(It's short.)	It's not short.
(ii)	yóku nai	(It's good.)	It's not good.
(warúi)	wáruku nai	(It's bad.)	It's not bad.
(atáráshíi)	atáráshiku nai	(It's new.)	It's not new.
(furúi)	fúruku nai	(It's old.)	It's not old.
(tooi)	toókú náí	(It's far.)	It's not far.
(chikái)	chikáku nai	(It's near.)	It's not near.
(hayái)	háyaku nai	(It's early.)	It's not early.
(osoi)	osókú náí	(It's late.)	It's not late.
(kitánái)	kitánaku nai	(It's dirty.)	It's not dirty.
(hoshíi)	hóshiku nai	(I want it.)	I don't want it.
(isógáshíi)	isógáshiku nai	(I'm busy.)	I'm not busy.

ber)

3. Grammar (non-past semi-formal: positive to negative)

(chíisái desu)	chíisaku arimasen	(It's small.)	It's not small.
(óokíi desu)	óokiku arimasen	(It's big.)	It's not big.
(takái desu)	tákaku arimasen	(It's expensive.)	It's not expensive.
(yasúi desu)	yásuku arimasen	(It's inexpensive.)	It's not inexpensive.
(nagái desu)	nágaku arimasen	(It's long.)	It's not long.
(mijíkái desu)	mijíkaku arimasen	(It's short.)	It's not short.
(ii desu)	yóku arimasen	(It's good.)	It's not good.
(warúi desu)	wáruku arimasen	(It's bad.)	It's not bad.
(atáráshíi desu)	atáráshiku arimasen	(It's new.)	It's not new.
(furúi desu)	fúruku arimasen	(It's old.)	It's not old.
(tooi desu)	toókú arimasen	(It's far.)	It's not far.
(chikái desu)	chikáku arimasen	(It's near.)	It's not near.
(hayái desu)	háyaku arimasen	(It's early.)	It's not early.
(osoi desu)	osókú arimasen	(It's late.)	It's not late.
(kitánái desu)	kitánaku arimasen	(It's dirty.)	It's not dirty.
(hoshíi desu)	hóshiku arimasen	(I want it.)	I don't want it.
(isógáshíi desu)	isógáshiku arimasen	(I'm busy.)	I'm not busy.

4. Grammar (semi-formal negative: two forms)

(chíisaku arimasen)	chíisaku nai desu	It's not small.
(óokiku arimasen)	óokiku nai desu	It's not large.
(tákaku arimasen)	tákaku nai desu	It's not expensive.
(yásuku arimasen)	yásuku nai desu	It's not inexpensive.
(nágaku arimasen)	nágaku nai desu	It's not long.
(mijíkaku arimasen)	mijíkaku nai desu	It's not short.
(yóku arimasen)	yóku nai desu	It's not good.
(wáruku arimasen)	wáruku nai desu	It's not bad.
(atáráshiku arimasen)	atáráshiku nai desu	It's not new.
(fúruku arimasen)	fúruku nai desu	It's not old.

(toókú arimasén)	toókú nai desu	It's not far.
(chikáku arimasen)	chikáku nai desu	It's not near.
(háyaku arimasen)	háyaku nai desu	It's not early.
(osókú arimasén)	osókú nai desu	It's not late.
(kitánaku arimasen)	kitánaku nai desu	It's not dirty.
(hóshiku arimasen)	hóshiku nai desu	I don't want it.
(isógashiku arimasen)	isógashiku nai desu	I'm not busy.

5. Substitution

Óokikatta desu.

(chíisakatta)	Chíisakatta desu.	It was small.
(táakakatta)	Táakakatta desu.	It was expensive.
(yásukatta)	Yásukatta desu.	It was inexpensive.
(nágakatta)	Nágakatta desu.	It was long.
(mijíakatta)	Mijíakatta desu.	It was short.
(yókatta)	Yókatta desu.	It was good.
(wárukatta)	Wárukatta desu.	It was bad.
(atárashikatta)	Atárashikatta desu.	It was new.
(fúrukatta)	Fúrukatta desu.	It was old.
(toókatta)	Toókatta desu.	It was far.
(chikákatta)	Chikákatta desu.	It was near.
(háyakatta)	Háyakatta desu.	It was early.
(osókatta)	Osókatta desu.	It was late.
(kitánakatta)	Kitánakatta desu.	It was dirty.
(hóshikatta)	Hóshikatta desu.	I wanted it.
(isógashikatta)	Isógashikatta desu.	I was busy.

6. Grammar (informal perfective: positive to negative)

(chíisakatta)	chíisaku nakatta	(It was small.)	It wasn't small.
(óokikatta)	óokiku nakatta	(It was large.)	It wasn't large.
(táakakatta)	táaku nakatta	(It was expensive.)	It wasn't expensive.
(yásukatta)	yásuku nakatta	(It was inexpensive.)	It wasn't inexpensive.
(nágakatta)	nágaku nakatta	(It was long.)	It wasn't long.
(mijíakatta)	mijíaku nakatta	(It was short.)	It wasn't short.
(yókatta)	yóku nakatta	(It was good.)	It wasn't good.
(wárukatta)	wáruku nakatta	(It was bad.)	It wasn't bad.
(atárashikatta)	atárashiku nakatta	(It was new.)	It wasn't new.
(fúrukatta)	fúruku nakatta	(It was old.)	It wasn't old.
(toókatta)	toókú nakatta	(It was far.)	It wasn't far.
(chikákatta)	chikáku nakatta	(It was near.)	It wasn't near.
(háyakatta)	háyaku nakatta	(It was early.)	It wasn't early.
(osókatta)	osókú nakatta	(It was late.)	It wasn't late.
(kitánakatta)	kitánaku nakatta	(It was dirty.)	It wasn't dirty.
(hóshikatta)	hóshiku nakatta	(I wanted it.)	I didn't want it.
(isógashikatta)	isógashiku nakatta	(I was busy.)	I wasn't busy.

7. Gra

(óokika

(chíisa

(táakaka

(yásuka

(nágaka

(mijíka

(yókatt

(wáruka

(atárás

(fúruka

(toókat

(chikák

(háyaka

(osókat

(kitána

(hóshik

(isógás

8. Gra

(óokiku

(chíisa

(táakaku

(yásuku

(nágaku

(mijíka

(yóku n

(wáruku

(atárás

(fúruku

Grammar (semi-formal perfective: positive to negative)

(óokikatta desu)	óokiku arimasen deshita	(It was large.)	It wasn't large.
(chíisakatta desu)	chíisaku arimasen deshita	(It was small.)	It wasn't small.
(tákakatta desu)	tákaku arimasen deshita	(It was expensive.)	It wasn't expensive.
(yásukatta desu)	yásuku arimasen deshita	(It was inexpensive.)	It wasn't inexpensive.
(nágakatta desu)	nágaku arimasen deshita	(It was long.)	It wasn't long.
(mijíakatta desu)	mijíaku arimasen deshita	(It was short.)	It wasn't short.
(yókatta desu)	yóku arimasen deshita	(It was good.)	It wasn't good.
(wárukatta desu)	wáruku arimasen deshita	(It was bad.)	It wasn't bad.
(atáráshikatta desu)	atáráshiku arimasen deshita	(It was new.)	It wasn't new.
(fúrukatta desu)	fúruku arimasen deshita	(It was old.)	It wasn't old.
(toókatta desu)	toókú arímásén deshita	(It was far.)	It wasn't far.
(chikákatta desu)	chikáku arimasen deshita	(It was near.)	It wasn't near.
(háyakatta desu)	háyaku arimasen deshita	(It was early.)	It wasn't early.
(osókatta desu)	osókú arímásén deshita	(It was late.)	It wasn't late.
(kitánakatta desu)	kitánaku arimasen deshita	(It was dirty.)	It wasn't dirty.
(hóshikatta desu)	hóshiku arimasen deshita	(I wanted it.)	I didn't want it.
(isógáshikatta desu)	isógáshiku arimasen deshita	(I was busy.)	I wasn't busy.

8. Grammar (semi-formal negative perfective: two forms)

(óokiku nakatta desu)	óokiku arimasen deshita	It wasn't large.
(chíisaku nakatta desu)	chíisaku arimasen deshita	It wasn't small.
(tákaku nakatta desu)	tákaku arimasen deshita	It wasn't expensive.
(yásuku nakatta desu)	yásuku arimasen deshita	It wasn't inexpensive.
(nágaku nakatta desu)	nágaku arimasen deshita	It wasn't long.
(mijíaku nakatta desu)	mijíaku arimasen deshita	It wasn't short.
(yóku nakatta desu)	yóku arimasen deshita	It wasn't good.
(wáruku nakatta desu)	wáruku arimasen deshita	It wasn't bad.
(atáráshiku nakatta desu)	atáráshiku arimasen deshita	It wasn't new.
(fúruku nakatta desu)	fúruku arimasen deshita	It wasn't old.

(Furúi yoofuku desu.)
Furúi yoofuku de wa arímásén.

(It's an old dress.)
It's not an old dress.

13. Grammar

(Kore wa warúi michi desu ne.)
Kono michi wa warúi desu ne.
(Kore wa nagái michi desu ne.)
Kono michi wa nagái desu ne.
(Kore wa atárashíi michi desu ne.)
Kono michi wa atárashíi desu ne.
(Kore wa íi chikámichi desu ne.)
Konó chikámichi wa íi desu ne.
(Kore wa takái yoofuku desu ne.)

Kono yoofuku wa takái desu ne.
(Kore wa yasúi yoofuku desu ne.)

Kono yoofuku wa yasúi desu ne.
(Kore wa osói kishá desu ne.)
Konó kishá wa osói desu ne.
(Kore wa hayái kisha desu ne.)
Konó kishá wa hayái desu ne.

(This is a bad road, isn't it?)
This road is bad, isn't it?
(This is a long road, isn't it?)
This road is long, isn't it?
(This is a new road, isn't it?)
This road is new, isn't it?
(This is a good shortcut, isn't it?)
This shortcut is good, isn't it?
(This is an expensive dress, isn't it?)
This dress is expensive, isn't it?
(This is an inexpensive dress, isn't it?)
This dress is inexpensive, isn't it?
(This is a slow train, isn't it?)
This train is slow, isn't it?
(This is a fast train, isn't it?)
This train is fast, isn't it.

14. Response (negative)

Q. Sono yoofuku wa takái desu ka?
A. Iie. Takaku arimasen.

Is that dress expensive?
No, it isn't expensive.

(Sono yoofuku wa yasúi desu ka?)
Iie. Yásuku arimasen.
(Sonó kishá wa hayái desu ka?)
Iie. Háyaku arimasen.
(Sonó kishá wa osói desu ka?)
Iie. Osókú arímásén.
(Sonó úchí wa furúi desu ka?)
Iie. Fúruku arimasen.
(Sonó úchí wa atárashíi desu ka?)
Iie. Atarashiku arimasen.
(Sonó hitó wa isógashíi desu ka?)
Iie. Isógashiku arimasen.
(Sono gakkoo wa toói desu ka?)
Iie. Toókú arímásén.
(Sono gakkoo wa chikái desu ka?)
Iie. Chikáku arimasen.

(Is that dress inexpensive?)
No, it isn't inexpensive.
(Is that train fast?)
No, it isn't fast.
(Is that train slow?)
No, it isn't slow.
(Is that house old?)
No, it isn't old.
(Is that house new?)
No, it isn't new.
(Is that person busy?)
No, he isn't busy.
(Is that school far?)
No, it isn't far.
(Is that school near?)
No, it isn't near.

15. Substitution

Kíree desu.

It's pretty.

(sukí)

Sukí desu.

I like it.

(kirai)

Kirai desu.

I dislike it.

(iroiro)

Iroiro desu.

There are various [kinds].

(génki)

Génki desu.

He's well.

16. Grammar (semi-formal: positive to negative)

(Kíree desu.) Kíree de wa arímásén.

(It's pretty.)

It's not pretty.

(Sukí desu.) Sukí de wa arímásén.

(I like it.)

I don't like it.

(Kirai desu.) Kirái dé wa arímásén.

(I dislike it.)

I don't dislike it.

(Génki desu.) Génki de wa arímásén.

(He's well.)

He's not well.

17. Grammar (semi-formal: non-past to perfective)

(Kíree desu.) Kíree deshita.

(It's pretty.)

It was pretty.

(Sukí desu.) Sukí deshita.

(I like it.)

I liked it.

(Kirai desu.) Kirái deshita.

(I dislike it.)

I disliked it.

(Génki desu.) Génki deshita.

(He's well.)

He was well.

18. Substitution

Kíree na hito desu.

She's a pretty person.

(chíisa na)

Chíisa na hito desu.

She's a small person.

(óoki na)

Óoki na hito desu.

She's a large person.

(génki na)

Génki na hito desu.

She's a healthy person.

19. Substitution

Kíree na mono desu.

It's a pretty thing.

(sukí na)

Sukí na mono desu.

It's a thing I like.

(kirai na)

Kirái ná mónó desu.

It's a thing I dislike.

(óoki na)

Óoki na mono desu.

It's a large thing.

(chíisa na)

Chíisa na mono desu.

It's a small thing.

20. Substitution

Kíree ni narímashita.

It's become pretty.

(sukí)

Sukí ni narímashita.

I've gotten to like it.

(kirai)

Kirái ní narímashita.

I've gotten to dislike it.

(génki)

Génki ni narímashita.

He's gotten well.

(chika
(hón)
(byook

21. S

Furuku

(tákaku
(yásuku
(nágaku
(mijíka
(chíisa
(óokiku
(yóku)
(wáruku
(isógás
(hóshiki

22. Su

Kíree n

(tsukue
(hón)
(éega)
(yoofuk

23. Su

Yásuku

(tákaku
(nágaku
(mijíka
(óokiku
(chíisa
(hayaku
(osoku)

24. Sut

Kíree ni

(narímás
(kakímás
(tsukúrí
(tabémás

(chikámichi)
(hón)
(byooki)

Chikámichi ni narímashita.
Hón ni narímashita.
Byoókí ní nárímashita.

It's become a shortcut.
It's become a book.
He's become sick.

nds].

21. Substitution

furuku narimashita.

(tákaku)
(yásuku)
(nágaku)
(mijíkaku)
(chíisaku)
(óokiku)
(yóku)
(wáruku)
(isógáshiku)
(hóshiku)

Tákaku narimashita.
Yásuku narimashita.
Nágaku narimashita.
Mijíkaku narimashita.
Chíisaku narimashita.
Óokiku narimashita.
Yóku narimashita.
Wáruku narimashita.
Isógáshiku narimashita.
Hóshiku narimashita.

It's become old.

It's become expensive.
It's become inexpensive.
It's become long.
It's become short.
It's become small.
It's become large.
It's become good.
It's become bad.
I've become busy.
I've gotten so I want it.

y.
t.
e it.

22. Substitution

kíree ni shimasu.

(tsukue)
(hón)
(éega)
(yoofuku)

Tsukue ni shimasu.
Hón ni shimasu.
Éega ni shimasu.
Yoofuku ni shimasu.

I'll make it pretty.

I'll make it into a desk.
I'll make it into a book.
I'll make it into a movie.
I'll make it into a dress.

on.

n.

n.

son.

23. Substitution

yásuku shimasu.

(tákaku)
(nágaku)
(mijíkaku)
(óokiku)
(chíisaku)
(háyaku)
(osoku)

Tákaku shimasu.
Nágaku shimasu.
Mijíkaku shimasu.
Óokiku shimasu.
Chíisaku shimasu.
Háyaku shimasu.
Osoku shimasu.

He'll make it cheap.

He'll make it expensive.
He'll lengthen it.
He'll shorten it.
He'll make it large.
He'll make it small.
He'll make it early.
He'll make it late.

ike.

24. Substitution

kíree ni shimáshita.

(narímashita)
(kakímashita)
(tsukúrimashita)
(tabémashita)

Kíree ni narímashita.
Kíree ni kakímashita.
Kíree ni tsukúrimashita.
Kíree ni tabémashita.

She made it pretty.

It became pretty.
She wrote it prettily.
She made it prettily.
She ate it all up.

it.
ike it.

(nomímáshita) Kíree ni nomímáshita.
(demáshita) Kíree ni demáshita.

She drank it all up.
It came out prettily (as
of a printed page).

25. Substitution

Óokiku shimashita.

(narímáshita) Óokiku narimashita.
(kakímáshita) Óokiku kakimashita.
(dashímáshita) Óokiku dashimashita.
(tsukúrimáshita) Óokiku tsukurimashita.

I made it large.

It became large.
I wrote it large.
I published it large.
I made it large.

26. Substitution

Óókíi íi uchi desu.

It's a large, nice house.

(chiísái) Chiísái íi uchi desu.
(atáráshíi) Atáráshíi íi uchi desu.
(yasúi) Yasúi íi uchi desu.
(chikái) Chikái íi uchi desu.

It's a small, nice house.
It's a new, nice house.
It's an inexpensive, nice house.
It's a nice house which is closeby.

27. Grammar

(Óókíi uchi desu.)
(Yasúi uchi desu.)
Óókikute yasúi uchi desu.

(It's a large house.)
(It's an inexpensive house.)
It's a large and inexpensive house.

(Furúi uchi desu.)
(Kitánái uchi desu.)
Fúrukute kitánái uchi desu.

(It's an old house.)
(It's a dirty house.)
It's an old and dirty house.

(Furúi kisha desu.)
(Chíisa na kisha desu.)
Fúrukute chíisa na kisha desu.

(It's an old train.)
(It's a small train.)
It's an old and small train.

(Óókíi jidoosha desu.)
(Nagái jidoosha desu.)
Óókikute nagái jidoosha desu.

(It's a large car.)
(It's a long car.)
It's a large and long car.

(Chikái michi desu.)
(íi michi desu.)
Chikákute íi michi desu.

(It's a short route.)
(It's a nice route.)
It's a short and nice route.

(Furúi tatemono desu.)
(Yóku nai tatemono desu.)
Fúrukute yóku nai tatemono desu.

(It's an old building.)
(It's a building that isn't good.)
It's an old and "no-good" building.

(Chíi
(Yas
Chíi

28.

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

(Amma
(Koma
Amma

29. G

(kakér
(misér
(obóér
(shimé
(shirá
(tabér

(as
).

(Chiísái mono desu.)
(Yasúi mono desu.)
Chiísakute yasúi mono desu.

(It's a small thing.)
(It's an inexpensive thing.)
It's a small and inexpensive thing.

28. Grammar

(Ammari mijíkái desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari mijíkakute komarimasu.

(It's too short.)
(I am in a predicament.)
It's too short and I'm in a predicament.

(Ammari nagái desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari nágakute komarimasu.

(It's too long.)
(I am in a predicament.)
It's too long and I am in a predicament.

(Ammari tooi desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari toókute komarimasu.

(It's too far away.)
(I am in a predicament.)
It's too far away and I am in a predicament.

e.
seby.

(Ammari isógáshíi desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari isógáshikute komarimasu.

(I am too busy.)
(I am in a predicament.)
I am too busy and in a predicament.

(Ammari furúi desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari fúrukute komarimasu.

(It's too old.)
(I am in a predicament.)
It's too old and I am in a predicament.

use.

(Ammari génki desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari génki de komarimasu.

(He's too lively.)
(I am in a predicament.)
I am in a predicament because he's too lively.

(Ammari kiree desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari kiree de komarimasu.

(It's too pretty.)
(I am in a predicament.)
I am in a predicament because it's too pretty.

(Ammari sukí desu.)
(Komarimasu.)
Ammari sukí de komarimasu.

(He likes it too much.)
(I am in a predicament.)
I am in a predicament because he likes it too much.

29. Grammar (informal non-past to informal non-past desiderative)

i.)
ling.

(kakéru)	kakétái	(I telephone.)	I want to telephone.
(miséru)	misétái	(I show it.)	I want to show it.
(obóéru)	obóétái	(I learn it.)	I want to learn it.
(shiméru)	shimétái	(I close it.)	I want to close it.
(shirábéru)	shirábétái	(I investigate it.)	I want to investigate it.
(tabéru)	tabétái	(I eat.)	I want to eat.

(oshieru)	oshiétái	(I teach.)	I want to teach.
(wasureru)	wasuréたい	(I forget.)	I want to forget.
(míru)	mitái	(I see.)	I want to see.
(iru)	itái	(I'm here.)	I want to be here.

(dásu)	dashítái	(I mail it.)	I want to mail it.
(hanásu)	hanáshítái	(I speak it.)	I want to speak it.
(kaesu)	kaéshítái	(I return it.)	I want to return it.

(káeru)	kaérítái	(I return.)	I want to return.
(tsukúru)	tsukúritái	(I make it.)	I want to make it.
(shiru)	shirítái	(I learn.)	I want to learn it.
(uru)	urítái	(I sell it.)	I want to sell it.

(nómu)	nomítái	(I drink it.)	I want to drink it.
(yómu)	yomítái	(I read it.)	I want to read it.
(yasúmu)	yasúmitái	(I rest.)	I want to rest.

(yobu)	yobítái	(I invite them.)	I want to invite them.
(asobu)	asóbítái	(I play.)	I want to play.

(kaku)	kakítái	(I write.)	I want to write.
(arúku)	arúkítái	(I walk.)	I want to walk.
(iku)	ikítái	(I go.)	I want to go.
(oku)	okítái	(I put it down.)	I want to put it down.

(isógu)	isógítái	(I hurry.)	I want to hurry.

(matsu)	machítái	(I wait.)	I want to wait.
(motsu)	mochítái	(I carry it.)	I want to carry it.

(áu)	aitái	(I meet them.)	I want to meet them.
(naráu)	naráitái	(I learn it.)	I want to learn it.
(kau)	kaitái	(I buy it.)	I want to buy it.
(tsukau)	tsukáitái	(I use it.)	I want to use it.
(yuu)	iitái	(I say it.)	I want to say it.

(kúru
(suru
(oneg

30.

Iroiru

(tsuki
(tsuki
(kait
(kaki
(mise
(tabe
(mita
(dash

31.

Motto

(yomi
(nomi
(asob
(isog
(aruk
(moch
(tsuki
(shita
(itai
(oboé

32.

(shir

(oshie

(kaesi

(shir

(tsuki

(ikita

(mach

(kúru)	kitái	(I come.)	I want to come.
(suru)	shitái	(I do it.)	I want to do it.
(onegai suru)	onégái shitái	(I request it.)	I want to request it.

30. Substitution

Iroiro urítái desu.

I'd like to sell various things.

(tsukúritái)	Iroiro tsukúritái desu.	I'd like to make various things.
(tsukáitái)	Iroiro tsukáitái desu.	I'd like to use various things.
(kaítái)	Iroiro kaítái desu.	I'd like to buy various things.
(kakítái)	Iroiro kakítái desu.	I'd like to write various things.
(misétái)	Iroiro misétái desu.	I'd like to show various things.
(tabétái)	Iroiro tabétái desu.	I'd like to eat various things.
(mitái)	Iroiro mitái desu.	I'd like to see various things.
(dashítái)	Iroiro dashítái desu.	I'd like to serve various things.

31. Substitution

Motto shiritái desu.

I'd like to know more.

(yomítái)	Motto yomítái desu.	I'd like to read more.
(nomítái)	Motto nomítái desu.	I'd like to drink more.
(asóbítái)	Motto asóbítái desu.	I'd like to play more.
(isógítái)	Motto isógítái desu.	I'd like to hurry more.
(arúkitái)	Motto arúkitái desu.	I'd like to walk more.
(mochítái)	Motto mochítái desu.	I'd like to carry more.
(tsukáitái)	Motto tsukáitái desu.	I'd like to use more.
(shitái)	Motto shitái desu.	I'd like to do more.
(itái)	Motto itái desu.	I'd like to remain longer.
(obóétái)	Motto obóétái desu.	I'd like to learn more.

32. Grammar (semi-formal: positive to negative)

(shirábétái desu)	shirábétáku arimasen	(I'd like to in-vestigate it.)	I don't want to in-vestigate it.
(oshíétái desu)	oshíétákú arímásén	(I'd like to teach it.)	I don't want to teach it.
(kaéshítái desu)	kaéshítáku arimasen	(I'd like to return it.)	I don't want to re-turn it.
(shirítái desu)	shirítákú arímásén	(I'd like to know it.)	I don't want to know it.
(tsukúritái desu)	tsukúritáku arimasen	(I'd like to make it.)	I don't want to make it.
(ikítái desu)	ikítákú arímásén	(I'd like to go.)	I don't want to go.
(machítái desu)	machítáku arimasen	(I'd like to wait.)	I don't want to wait.

(aitái desu)	aitáku arimasen	(I'd like to meet him.)	I don't want to meet him.
(kitái desu)	kitáku arimasen	(I'd like to come.)	I don't want to come.
(onégái shitái desu)	onégái shitákú árimásén	(I'd like to request it.)	I don't want to request it.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

1. A. Daigaku e ikítái n' desu ga, chikámichi o shitté ímasu ka? Osókú nárímashita no de, isóide iru n' desu ga...
 B. Warúi michi desu ga...íi desu ka?
 A. Kamáimásén.
 B. Déwa sono tabakoya to furuhoñya no aida no michi o háitte iku n' desu. Sono michi wa daigaku no chikáku no atárashíi takái tatemono no sóba ni demasu. Sokó kára wa wakáru to omoimasu.
 A. Dóomo aríгато.
2. A. Konó heyá wa ammari kitánái kara, mótto kíree ni shité kúdásái.
 B. Yamamoto-san ni soó ítté áru n' desu ga, shigoto ga isógashikatta n' deshoo.
 A. Anó hito wa íi hito da keredo shigótó gá ósói kara, watakushi wa sukí de wa arímásén. Warúi keredo,¹ mótto háyaku shite kudasai to ítté óite kudasai.
3. A. Yamamoto-san mo áshita Tanáká-sán nó úchí e ikú no deshoo?
 B. Ée. Shímizu-san wa michi o shitté ímasu ka?
 A. Iie. Éki kara ammari toókú náí to wa kikímashita ga...Dóko ka yóku shirimasen.
 B. Watakushi mo éki no chikáku da to shika kiité ímáсэн. Tanaka-san wa fúrukute kitánái uchi da kara wakáru to ítté ímáshita.
 A. Dóoshite sonna furúi kitánái uchi o katta n' deshoo ka? Yásukatta kara deshoo ka?
 B. Iie. Yásuku nákatta n' desu yo. Sonó úchí wa óoki na heyá ga takúsán áru kara katta to ítté ímáshita.
 A. Sóo deshita ne...Mae no uchi wa chíisakatta desu ne. Chíisa na heyá dáké shika nákute komátte imashita ne.
 B. Tanaka-san wa konó úchí wa íma kitánái keredo, kíree ni suru to itte imasu.
 A. Watakushi wa oókíi uchi wa sukí de wa arimasen. Chíisa na uchi ga hoshikute, iroiro míte aruite iru no desu ga...Sukí na no wa arímásén né.
 B. Sóo desu ne. Déwa áshita no kotó desu ga, ísshó ní íkímásén ka?

¹I'm sorry, but... (lit. --it's bad [to ask this of you] but...)

st

e.

quest

u

desu.
no

a n'

sukí
itté

óku

i wa

ta

neya'

tté

sa
arí-

- A. Déwa mīchi ga yōku wakaránai kara, sukōshi háyaku kokó ó démáshōo.
 B. Déwa áshita. Sayōónára.
 A. Sayōónára.

4. A. Ano yoofukuya e yōku ikímásu ka?
 B. Iie. Takái kara, ámmari ikímásén.
 A. Kono yoofuku ga sukōshi mijíkaku natta kara, nágaku shitai n' desu
 ga...Takái yoófúkúyá é wa mótte ikitaku arimasen.
 B. Déwa watakushi ga shimáshōo ka?
 A. Onegai shimasu.
5. A. Pán wa okiráí désu ka?
 B. Iie. Kiráí dé wa arimásén ga...

EXERCISES

- A. Give the informal non-past of the following verbal adjectives.

1. It's small.
2. It's large.
3. It's expensive.
4. It's cheap.
5. It's long.
6. It's short.
7. It's good.
8. It's bad.
9. It's new.
10. It's old.
11. It's near.
12. It's far.
13. It's early.
14. It's late.
15. It's dirty.
16. I want it.
17. I'm busy.

- B. Give the semi-formal non-past of the above.

- C. Give the semi-formal perfective of the above.

- D. Give the informal negative perfective of the above.

E. Give the negatives of the following, retaining the same level of formality. (Give two forms for the semi-formal negatives of verbal adjectives.)

1. Isógashii desu.
2. Hoshii desu.
3. Atarashii.
4. Ii desu.
5. Kiree desu.
6. Kiree da.
7. Kitanaai desu.
8. Tooi.
9. Chikai desu.
10. Chikaku desu.
11. Mijikai desu.
12. Nagai.
13. Sukii da.
14. Sukii desu.
15. Kirai desu.
16. Okii.
17. Chiisai desu.
18. Furui desu.
19. Hayai.
20. Osoi desu.
21. Warui desu.
22. Yasui.

9. _____
10. Sor _____

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____

H. Te _____

1. if _____
2. if _____
3. if _____
4. th _____
5. th _____
6. th _____
7. th _____
8. th _____
9. th _____
10. th _____
11. th _____
12. th _____

F. Complete the following statements on the semi-formal level.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kono michi wa (chikai) (ii). | This road is short (near) and good. |
| 2. Kono yoofuku wa (atarashii) (kiree). | This dress is new and pretty. |
| 3. Tanaka-san no uchi wa (furui) (kitanaai). | Mr. Tanaka's house is old and dirty. |
| 4. Konna monô wa (takai) (kirai). | I don't like this kind of thing because it's expensive. |
| 5. Anô hito wa shigoto ga (sukii) (isógashii). | That man likes work and is busy. |
| 6. Anna jidôsha wa (furui) (osoi). | That kind of car is old and slow. |
| 7. Sore wa (chiisai) (takai). | That's small and expensive. |

G. Supply the proper form of the verbal adjective or the adjective noun and any necessary particles in the following blanks.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. _____ shimashôo. | Let's make it pretty. |
| 2. _____ narimashita. | It's gotten good. |
| 3. _____ shimashita. | He made it short. |
| 4. _____ naru deshoo. | It'll probably become long. |
| 5. _____ shimashita. | I got him to like it. |
| 6. _____ narimashita. | He's gotten well. |
| 7. _____ narimasen. | It won't get bad. |
| 8. _____ kaite kudasai. | Please write it large. |

mali-

9. _____ káite kudasai.
 10. Sonna ni _____ tabénai de
 kudasai.
 11. _____ nárímáshita.
 12. _____ tsukurímáshita.
 13. _____ urímáshita.
 14. _____ machímáshita.

Please write it prettily.
 Please don't eat so fast.

I'm late.
 I made it long.
 I sold it expensively.
 I waited a long time.

H. Tell (ask) your friend:

1. if it's a good, inexpensive second-hand bookstore.
2. if she's a pretty person.
3. if she also eats things she doesn't like.
4. that Mr. Suzuki is a busy man.
5. that you only buy things you like.
6. that they only sell expensive and good things.
7. that you would like something older and prettier.
8. that you would like a house that is nearer and larger.
9. that you're in a predicament because it's too old and dirty.
10. that you saw various new and good things.
11. that it's a new, fast car.
12. that you aren't going to buy it because it's too old and expensive.

good.

dirty.

I be-

I.

ow.

n and

LESSON IX

sékai	world
kuni	1) country; 2) province (early Japanese); 3) home town
shimá	island
kawá	river
yamá	mountain
-san	mountain (used after proper names)
umi	sea, ocean
tokóro	place
higáshí	east
nishi	west
minami	south
kitá	north
shúu	state (as of the United States)
fú	prefecture
kén	prefecture
tó	prefecture
hoka	1) other; 2) besides, in addition
dóchi	which (of two)
omóshíroi	1) interesting; 2) amusing
fukái	deep
asai	shallow
hirói	wide, expansive, broad
semái	narrow, small in area, crowded
ichíban	number one, the most (<u>ichiban</u> without the accent)
narúbéku	as.....as possible
hodo	to the degree, to the extent
hóo	1) direction, side; 2) the alternative (used in comparatives)
yóri	than (in comparisons)
-nikúi	hard to __, difficult to __, awkward to __.
-yásúi	easy to __, simple to __.
-súgíru	to exceed, to be or to do in excess
ryokoo suru	to travel

home

nt)

in com-



PATTERN PASSAGE

Gakusee. Ichibán tsúkaiyásúi jibíki
o misete kudasai.
Hónya. Kore wa ookisugimásu ka?
G. Ée. Narúbéku chiisái hoo ga íi
n' desu. Koré yori mótto chiisái
no wa arimásén ka?
H. Kore wa sonó jibíki hodo ookiku
arimásén ga, sukoshi miníkúi to
omoimasu.
G. Áa. Kono ookisa de kékkoo desu.
Kore o onegai shimasu.
H. Arigatoo gozaimasu.

Student. Please show me a dictionary
which is the easiest to use.
Bookseller. Is this too large?
S. Yes. The smaller it is, the
better it is. Don't you have any
smaller than this?
B. This isn't as large as that dic-
tionary, but I think it's a lit-
tle hard to see.
S. Oh, this size is fine. I'd like
this, please.
B. Thank you.

Comp:
ored or
Kore
Taká
Ikú
Oók
Yas
Chi

(Note:
"it woul
those in

(c)
ject, B,
particla
combinat

The

Á

Á

B

Á

B

GRAMMAR

9.1 Comparatives of verbal adjectives and adjectival nouns

(a) Mótto modifying a verbal adjective, an adjectival noun or a noun of location or quantity has the meaning "more ____." (Note: Mótto also modifies verbs, mótto tsukurímashoo meaning "Let's make more.")

EXAMPLES:

Mótto omóshirói desu.	It's more interesting.
Mótto kiree desu.	It's prettier.
Mótto sóba ni mótte kite kudasai.	Please bring it closer.
Mótto semái michi desu.	It's a narrower road.
Mótto sukí na mono ga arimasu.	There are things I like better.
Konó káwa wa mótto fukái desu.	This river is deeper.
Mótto takúsán kudasái.	Please give me lots more.

(b) The noun hoo, meaning "side" or "alternative," modified by a verbal adjective, a noun or a verb forms a comparative. The modifier of hoo is being singled out or compared; hoo indicates "which of two things is under discussion." (Note: Hoo is always modified.)

EXAMPLES:

Koré nó hoo ga íi desu.	This is better.
Takái hoo ga íi desu.	The more expensive one is better.
Ikú hoo ga íi desu.	It's better to go.
Konó shíma nó hoo ga kitá desu.	This island is further north.
Konó káwa nó hoo ga fukái desu.	This river is deeper.
Oókíi hoo ga watákúshí nó desu.	The larger one is mine.
Yasúi hoo o kudasai.	Give me the cheaper one.
Chikái hoo no gakkoo e itte imasu.	I'm going to the school that's closer.
Konó hoo ga yóku nai.	This is less good.

EXAMPLE
Hó

Hó

Um

Ko

Nó

Ki

Oó

(Note:
and is

Compare the above examples with the following in which hoo has been replaced or substituted by no.

Koré ga íi desu.
Takái no ga íi desu.
Ikú no ga íi desu.
Oókíi no ga watakúshí nó desu.
Yasúi no o kudasai.
Chikái gakkoo e itte imasu.

This one is good.
The expensive one is good.
It's good to go.
The large one is mine.
Please give me the cheap one.
I'm going to a school nearby.

(Note: There is a pattern of non-past verb plus ga íi (ikú ga ii) meaning "it would be good to -----" but it is used more by men, particularly by those in higher positions speaking to their subordinates.)

(c) A comparative "A is more ----- than B" occurs when the other object, B, with which comparison is being made, is mentioned followed by the particle yori. The object being singled out for comparison, A, may occur in combination with hoo.

The following are pattern samples.

Á wa takái desu.
(Eberésútó-san wa takái desu.)
Á wa B yori takái desu.
(Eberésútó-san wa Fúji-san yori takái desu.)
B yori Á ga takái desu.
(Fúji-san yori Eberésútó-san ga takái desu.)
Á no hoo ga B yori takái desu.
(Eberésútó-san no hoo ga Fúji-san yori takái desu.)
B yori Á no hoo ga takái desu.
(Fúji-san yori Eberésútó-san no hoo ga takái desu.)

A is high.
(Mt. Everest is high.)
A is higher than B.
(Mt. Everest is higher than Mt. Fuji.)
A is higher than B.
(Mt. Everest is higher than Mt. Fuji.)
A is higher than B.
(Mt. Everest is higher than Mt. Fuji.)
Rather than B, A is higher.
(Rather than Mt. Fuji, Mt. Everest is higher.)

EXAMPLES:

Hónshuu wa Kyúushuu yori kitá desu.
Hónshuu wa Kyúushuu yori minámí dé wa arímásén.
Úmi yori yamá ga sukí desu.
Koóhíi yori ocha o nomimasu.
Nómu yori tabéru hoo ga íi desu.
Kikú yori kikanái hoo ga warúi desu.
Oókíi no yori chiísái no ga takái to omoimasu.

Honshū is further north than Kyūshū.
Honshū is not further south than Kyūshū.
I like mountains better than the sea.
I drink tea more than coffee.
It's better to eat than to drink.
It's worse not to ask than to ask.
I think the smaller one is more expensive than the larger one.

(Note: Yori followed by mo has the meaning "even more than" or "rather than" and is more emphatic than yori alone.)

(d) A negative comparison, "not as ----- as," occurs when the other object, B, with which comparison is being made, is followed by the particle hodo meaning "to the extent of" and by a negative predicate.

The following are pattern samples.

Á wa takaku arimasén.

(Fúji-san wa takaku arimasén.)

Á wa B hodo takaku arimasén.

(Fúji-san wa Ebérésútó-san hodo takaku arimasén.)

B hodo Á wa takaku arimasén.

(Ebérésútó-san hodo Fúji-san wa takaku arimasén.)

A is not high.

(Mt. Fuji is not high.)

A is not as high as B.

(Mt. Fuji is not as high as Mt. Everest.)

To the extent of B, A is not high.

A is not as high as B.

(Mt. Fuji is not as high as Mt. Everest.)

EXAMPLES:

Fúji-san hodo kiree de wa arimasén.

Hakone hodo tooókú arimasén.

Konó shíma wa sonó shíma hodo ookiku arimasén.

Mijikái no wa nagái no hodo yóku arimasén.

It isn't as pretty as Mt. Fuji.

It isn't as far as Hakone.

This island isn't as large as that island.

The short one isn't as good as the long one.

When the predicate following hodo is positive, the meaning is that "A is (about) as ----- as B."

EXAMPLES:

Nihen no ookisa wa Karíhórúniyá-shuu hodo desu.

Kono michi wa sono michi hodo semai to omoimasu.

The size of Japan is about that of the State of California.

I think this street is as narrow as that street.

(e) Narúbéku occurs as a modifier of verbal adjectives, verbs, adjectival nouns, and nouns of location or quantity with the meaning "as much as possible" or "as ----- as possible."

EXAMPLES:

Narúbéku háyaku shimasu.

Narúbéku kiree ni shite kudasai.

Narúbéku chikáku ni oite kudasai.

Narúbéku atárashíi no o kaímáshita.

Narúbéku ikimasu.

I'll do it as quickly as possible.

Please make it as pretty as possible.

Please put it down as close as possible.

I bought as fresh a one as I could.

I'll [try] as much as possible to go.

9.2 Superlative of verbal adjectives and adjectival nouns

Verbal adjectives, adjectival nouns and nouns of location have a superlative meaning "the most" when modified by ichiban, meaning "number one."

(Note: Ichiban also occurs as a modifier of verbs with this meaning.)

cate

EXAM

9.3

the

EXAM

(Note
kiree

9.4

forms
and
adjec

EXAM

EXAMPLES:

Ichiban kitá nó shímá desu.

Koko ni ichiban takusan arimasu.

Ichiban fukái tokoro desu.

Ichiban kakímashita.

Ichiban atárashíi desu.

Ichiban ushíró nó hító desu.

It's the island farthest north.

The most is here. There is the most here.

It's the deepest place.

He wrote the most.

It's the newest.

It's the person in the very back.

A condition of restriction or limitation of the superlative is indicated by de.

EXAMPLES:

Sékai de ichibán kíree desu.

Kánada to Amerika no kawa no náka de ichibán nágái desu.

Tookyoo de ichibán tákái tatémono desu.

Tabemónó nó náka de ichiban kirái ná mónó desu.

It's the prettiest in the world.

It's the longest of the rivers in Canada and America (United States).

It's the highest building in Tōkyō.

It's the thing I dislike most among foods.

9.3 Verbal adjective plus suffix sa

The stem of the verbal adjective plus the suffix sa is the noun form of the verbal adjective.

EXAMPLES:

hirói	wide	híroku	hírosa	width
íi	good	yóku	yósa	goodness, good points
atárashíi	new	atárashiku	atárashisa	newness
hayái	fast	hayaku	hayasa	speed
nágái	long	nágaku	nágasa	length

(Note: This sa also occurs after some of the adjectival nouns such as kiréesa, shizukása, etc. but such nouns do not occur commonly.)

9.4 -níkúi and -yásúi in verb-verbal adjective compounds

The nominal root of a verb plus the verbal adjective -níkúi or -yásúi forms a verb-verbal adjective compound with the meanings "difficult to-----" and "easy to -----," respectively. The compound is conjugated as a verbal adjective.

EXAMPLES:

Kore wa yomíyásúi desu.
Yomíníkúi hón wa irímásén.Tabéníkuku arímásén.
Naráiníkukute komarimasu.

Wakáriyásukatta to itte imasu.

This is easy to read.

I don't want a book that's difficult to read.

It isn't difficult to eat.

I have a hard time because it's difficult to learn.

He says it was easy to understand.

9.5 Sugiru as the second part of a compound

The nominal root of a verb or the stem of a verbal adjective plus sugiru "to exceed" form verb-verb or verbal adjective-verb compounds with the meaning "to ----- too much," and "to be too -----," respectively. The compound is conjugated as a verb.

EXAMPLES:

Koko wa asasugimasu.	It's too shallow here.
Watákúshí ní wa yosugimasu.	It's too good for me.
Tabesugite, byoókí ní nárímashita.	I ate too much and got sick.
Tsukúrisúginai de kudasai.	Please don't make too much.

9.6 Plurals of nouns through repetition of the noun

Some nouns have a plural form in which the noun is repeated consecutively. (Note: The initial consonant of the noun is often voiced the second time)

EXAMPLES:

kuni	kuníguni	country, countries	countries
shimá	shimajima	island, islands	islands
hito	hitóbito	person, people	people
kotó	kotógoto	thing, things	things

(Note: Nouns repeated consecutively are not all plurals.)

DRILL

1. Grammar (forming compound with -níkúi)

(tabéru)	tabéníkúi	(I eat.)	It's difficult to eat.
(obóéru)	obóéníkúi	(I learn it.)	It's difficult to learn it.
(shirábéru)	shirábéníkúi	(I investigate it.)	It's difficult to investigate it.
(akeru)	akéníkúi	(I open it.)	It's difficult to open it.
(oshieru)	oshíéníkúi	(I teach it.)	It's difficult to teach it.
(míru)	miníkúi	(I see it.)	It's difficult to see.
(arúku)	arúkiníkúi	(I walk.)	It's difficult to walk.
(kiku)	kikiníkúi	(I ask.)	It's difficult to ask.
(isógu)	isógíníkúi	(I hurry.)	It's difficult to hurry.
(nómu)	nomíníkúi	(I drink it.)	It's difficult to drink it.
(yómu)	yominíkúi	(I read it.)	It's difficult to read it.
(yobu)	yobíníkúi	(I call.)	It's difficult to call.
(dásu)	dashíníkúi	(I take it out.)	It's difficult to take out.
(hanásu)	hanáshíníkúi	(I speak.)	It's difficult to speak.
(mótsu)	mochíníkúi	(I carry it.)	It's difficult to carry it.
(áu)	ainíkúi	(I meet him.)	It's difficult to meet him.
(naráu)	naráiníkúi	(I learn it.)	It's difficult to learn it.
(yuu)	iíníkúi	(I say it.)	It's difficult to say it.
(shimau)	shimáiníkúi	(I put it away.)	It's difficult to put away.

(tsuk
(nár
(tsuk
(uru)
(kúru
(oneg
(ryok

2. C

(kaké
(shin
(tome
(wasu
(míru
(arúh
(oku)
(isóg
(asok
(yobu
(nóme
(yóme
(yasi

(káes
(dási
(móts
(narí
(kau)
(chig

(tsuk
(háir
(waké
(tsuk
(tome
(uru)
(kúru
(ryok

3. S

Narút

(omós

(fuké

(tsukau)	tsukáiníkúi	(I use it.)	It's difficult to use it.
(náru)	naríníkúi	(I become it.)	It's difficult to become it.
(tsukúru)	tsukúríníkúi	(I make it.)	It's difficult to make it.
(uru)	uríníkúi	(I sell it.)	It's difficult to sell it.
(kúru)	kiníkúi	(I come.)	It's difficult to come.
(onegai suru)	onégái shíníkúi	(I request it.)	It's difficult to request it.
(ryokoo suru)	ryokóó shíníkúi	(I travel.)	It's difficult to travel.

2. Grammar (forming compound with -yásúi)

(kakéru)	kakéyásúi	(I hang it up.)	It's easy to hang it up.
(shiméru)	shiméyásúi	(I close it.)	It's easy to close it.
(toméru)	toméyásúi	(I stop it.)	It's easy to stop it.
(wasureru)	wasuréyásúi	(I forget it.)	It's easy to forget it.
(míru)	miyásúi	(I see it.)	It's easy to see it.
(arúku)	arúkiyásúi	(I walk.)	It's easy to walk.
(oku)	okiyásúi	(I put it down.)	It's easy to put down.
(isógu)	isógíyásúi	(I hurry.)	It's easy to hurry.
(asobu)	asóbíyásúi	(I play.)	It's easy to play.
(yobu)	yobíyásúi	(I call them.)	It's easy to call them.
(nómu)	nomíyásúi	(I drink it.)	It's easy to drink.
(yómu)	yomíyásúi	(I read it.)	It's easy to read.
(yasúmu)	yasúmíyásúi	(I take a holiday.)	It's easy to take a holiday.
(káesu)	kaéshíyásúi	(I return it.)	It's easy to return it.
(dásu)	dashíyásúi	(I mail it.)	It's easy to mail it.
(mótsu)	mochíyásúi	(I carry it.)	It's easy to carry it.
(naráu)	narái yásúi	(I learn it.)	It's easy to learn.
(kau)	kaíyásúi	(I buy it.)	It's easy to buy.
(chigau)	chigái yásúi	(It differs.)	It's easy to make an error.
(tsukau)	tsukái yásúi	(I use it.)	It's easy to use.
(háiru)	haíri yásúi	(I go in.)	It's easy to go in.
(wakáru)	wakái yásúi	(I understand it.)	It's easy to understand.
(tsukúru)	tsukúri yásúi	(I make it.)	It's easy to make.
(tomaru)	tomái yásúi	(I stop.)	It's easy to stop.
(uru)	urí yásúi	(I sell it.)	It's easy to sell.
(kúru)	kiyásúi	(I come.)	It's easy to come.
(ryokoo suru)	ryokóó shíyásúi	(I travel.)	It's easy to travel.

3. Substitution

Narúbéku oókíi no o kudasai.

Please give me as big a one as possible.

(omóshírói) Narúbéku omóshírói no o kudasai.

Please give me as interesting a one as possible.

(fukái) Narúbéku fukái no o kudasai.

Please give me as deep a one as possible.

(asai)	Narúbéku asái no o kudasai.	Please give me as shallow a one as possible.
(hirói)	Narúbéku hirói no o kudasai.	Please give me as wide a one as possible.
(semái)	Narúbéku semái no o kudasai.	Please give me as narrow a one as possible.
(nagái)	Narúbéku nagái no o kudasai.	Please give me as long a one as possible.
(mijíkái)	Narúbéku mijíkái no o kudasai.	Please give me as short a one as possible.
(yomíyásúi)	Narúbéku yomíyásúi no o kudasai.	Please give me one that's as easy as possible to read.
(nomíyásúi)	Narúbéku nomíyásúi no o kudasai.	Please give me one that's as easy as possible to drink.
(tsukáiyásúi)	Narúbéku tsukáiyásúi no o kudasai.	Please give me one that's as easy as possible to use.
(mochíyásúi)	Narúbéku mochíyásúi no o kudasai.	Please give me one that's as easy as possible to carry.

4. Substitution

Narúbéku omóshíroku shimashita.

I made it as interesting as possible.

(fukáku)	Narúbéku fukáku shimashita.	I made it as deep as possible.
(asaku)	Narúbéku asáku shimashita.	I made it as shallow as possible.
(híroku)	Narúbéku híroku shimashita.	I made it as wide as possible.
(semaku)	Narúbéku semaku shimashita.	I made it as narrow as possible.
(nágaku)	Narúbéku nágaku shimashita.	I made it as long as possible.
(mijíkaku)	Narúbéku mijíkaku shimashita.	I made it as short as possible.
(yomíyásuku)	Narúbéku yomíyásuku shimashita.	I made it as easy as possible to read.
(tsukáiyásuku)	Narúbéku tsukáiyásuku shimashita.	I made it as easy as possible to use.
(mochíyásuku)	Narúbéku mochíyásuku shimashita.	I made it as easy as possible to carry.
(wakáiyásuku)	Narúbéku wakáiyásuku shimashita.	I made it as easy as possible to understand.
(uríníkuku)	Narúbéku uríníkuku shimashita.	I made it as difficult as possible to sell.
(onégái shíníkuku)	Narúbéku onégái shíníkuku shimashita.	I made it as difficult as possible to request it.

(fukái)
(hirói)
(oókíi)
(furúi)
(takái)
(nagái)
(atarashí)

6. Subst

Sonó fúka

(hírosa)
(fúrusa)
(ookisa)
(tákasa)
(nágasa)
(atarashí)

7. Gram

(a)
(Oókíi d
(Chiísái
(Chikái
(Tooí de
(Nagái d
(Mijíkái
(Fukái d
(Asai de
(Hayái d
(Osoi de
(Furúi d
(Atarashí
(Takái c
(Yasúi c
(Hirói c
(Semái c
(Isógási

(b)
(Tabémá
(Nomímá
(Yomímá
(Tsukái
(Isógím
(Arúkím
(Mochím

Grammar (verbal adjective to noun form)

(fukái)	fukása	(deep)	depth
(hirói)	hirosa	(wide)	width
(ookíi)	ookisa	(large)	largeness, size
(furúi)	fúrusa	(old)	oldness, age
(takái)	tákasa	(high)	height
(nagái)	nágasa	(long)	length
(ataráshíi)	ataráshisa	(new)	newness, freshness

6. Substitution

Sonó fukása wa shirimásén.

I don't know the depth.

(hirosa) Sonó hirosa wa shirimásén.

I don't know the width.

(fúrusa) Sonó fúrusa wa shirimásén.

I don't know its age.

(ookisa) Sono ookisa wa shirimásén.

I don't know the size.

(tákasa) Sonó tákasa wa shirimásén.

I don't know the height.

(nágasa) Sonó nágasa wa shirimásén.

I don't know the length.

(ataráshisa) Sonó ataráshisa wa shirimásén.

I don't know the freshness.

7. Grammar (forming compounds with sugíru)

(a)

(Oókíi desu.)	Ookisugimasu.	(It's large.)	It's too large.
(Chíisái desu.)	Chiisasugimasu.	(It's small.)	It's too small.
(Chikái desu.)	Chikasugimasu.	(It's near.)	It's too near.
(Tooí desu.)	Toosugimasu.	(It's far.)	It's too far.
(Nagái desu.)	Nagasugimasu.	(It's long.)	It's too long.
(Mijíkái desu.)	Mijikasugimasu.	(It's short.)	It's too short.
(Fukái desu.)	Fukasugimasu.	(It's deep)	It's too deep.
(Asai desu.)	Asasugimasu.	(It's shallow.)	It's too shallow.
(Hayái desu.)	Hayasugimasu.	(It's early.)	It's too early.
(Osoí desu.)	Ososugimasu.	(It's late.)	It's too late.
(Furúi desu.)	Furusugimasu.	(It's old.)	It's too old.
(Ataráshíi desu.)	Atarashisugimasu.	(It's new.)	It's too new.
(Takái desu.)	Takasugimasu.	(It's expensive.)	It's too expensive.
(Yasúi desu.)	Yasusugimasu.	(It's cheap.)	It's too cheap.
(Hirói desu.)	Hirosugimasu.	(It's wide.)	It's too wide.
(Semái desu.)	Semasugimasu.	(It's narrow.)	It's too narrow.
(Isógáshíi desu.)	Isogashisugimasu.	(I'm busy.)	I'm too busy.

(b)

(Tabémáshita.)	Tabésugímáshita.	(I ate it.)	I ate too much.
(Nomímáshita.)	Nomísugímáshita.	(I drank it.)	I drank too much.
(Yomímáshita.)	Yomísugímáshita.	(I read.)	I read too much.
(Tsukáimáshita.)	Tsukáisugímáshita.	(I used it.)	I used too much.
(Isógímáshita.)	Isógísugímáshita.	(I hurried.)	I hurried too much.
(Arúkímáshita.)	Arúkísugímáshita.	(I walked.)	I walked too much.
(Mochímáshita.)	Mochísugímáshita.	(I carried it.)	I carried too much.

(Asóbímáshita.)	Asóbísúgímáshita.	(I played.)	I played too much.
(Hanáshímáshita.)	Hanáshísúgímáshita.	(I talked.)	I talked too much.
(Beńkyóó shímáshita.)	Beńkyóó shísúgímáshita.	(I studied.)	I studied too much.
(Onégái shímáshita.)	Onégái shísúgímáshita.	(I requested it.)	I requested too much.
(Ryokóó shímáshita.)	Ryokóó shísúgímáshita.	(I traveled.)	I traveled too much.

8. Substitution

Oókísúgíru no ni kaímáshita.

He bought it though it's too big.

(chiísásúgíru)	Chiísásúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too small.
(toósúgíru)	Toósúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too far away.
(takásúgíru)	Takásúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too expensive.
(hirósúgíru)	Hirósúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too wide.
(semásúgíru)	Semásúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too narrow.
(fukásúgíru)	Fukásúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too deep.
(asásúgíru)	Asásúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too shallow.
(furúsúgíru)	Furúsúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too old.
(nagásúgíru)	Nagásúgíru no ni kaímáshita.	He bought it though it's too long.

9. Substitution

Omóshírói tokoro desu.

It's an interesting place.

(kuni)	Omóshírói kuni desu.	It's an interesting country.
(sékaí)	Omóshírói sékaí desu.	It's an interesting world.
(shimá)	Omóshírói shimá desu.	It's an interesting island.
(kawá)	Omóshírói kawá desu.	It's an interesting river.
(úmi)	Omóshírói úmi desu.	It's an interesting ocean.
(yamá)	Omóshírói yamá desu.	It's an interesting mountain.
(shúu)	Omóshírói shúu desu.	It's an interesting state.
(kén)	Omóshírói kén desu.	It's an interesting prefecture.

10. Su

Ichiban

(hiróí)
(semái)
(asai)
(fukái)
(takái)
(ikíniki)

(arúkíni)

(haíríni)

11. Pro

Sékai de

(chiísá)

(úmi)

(fukái)

(tokoro)

(asai)

(kawá)

(hiróí)

(úmi)

(chiísá)

(shimá)

(oókíi)

(kuni)

much.
much.
much.

10. Substitution

Ichiban omóshirói tokoro desu.

It's the most interesting place.

so much.
much.

(hirói) Ichiban hirói tokoro desu.
(semái) Ichiban semái tokoro desu.
(asai) Ichiban asái tókóró desu.
(fukái) Ichiban fukái tokoro desu.
(takái) Ichiban takái tokoro desu.
(ikíníkúi) Ichiban ikíníkúi tokoro desu.

It's the widest place.
It's the narrowest place.
It's the shallowest place.
It's the deepest place.
It's the highest place.
It's the hardest place to get to.

s too

(arúkíníkúi) Ichiban arúkíníkúi tokoro desu.

It's the hardest place to walk.

s too

(haíríníkúi) Ichiban haíríníkúi tokoro desu.

It's the hardest place to enter.

s too

11. Progressive Substitution

s too

Sékai de ichiban oókíi kuni desu.

It's the largest country in the world.

s too

(chiísái) Sékai de ichiban chiísái kuni desu.

It's the smallest country in the world.

s too

(úmi) Sékai de ichiban chiísái úmi desu.

It's the smallest sea in the world.

s too

(fukái) Sékai de ichiban fukái úmi desu.

It's the deepest ocean in the world.

s too

(tokoro) Sékai de ichiban fukái tokoro desu.

It's the deepest place in the world.

s too

(asai) Sékai de ichiban asái tókóró desu.

It's the shallowest place in the world.

s too

(kawá) Sékai de ichiban asái káwá desu.

It's the shallowest river in the world.

(hirói) Sékai de ichiban hirói kawá desu.

It's the broadest river in the world.

(úmi) Sékai de ichiban hirói úmi desu.

It's the most expansive sea in the world.

(chiísái) Sékai de ichiban chiísái úmi desu.

It's the smallest sea in the world.

(shimá) Sékai de ichiban chiísái shimá desu.

It's the smallest island in the world.

(oókíi) Sékai de ichiban oókíi shimá desu.

It's the largest island in the world.

(kuni) Sékai de ichiban oókíi kuni desu.

It's the largest country in the world.

12. Substitution

Kitá desu.

It's north.

(minami)	Minami desu.	It's south.
(higáshí)	Higáshí desu.	It's east.
(nishi)	Nishi desu.	It's west.
(ichiban kitá)	Ichiban kitá desu.	It's farthest north.
(ichiban minami)	Ichiban minami desu.	It's farthest south.
(ichiban higáshí)	Ichiban higáshí desu.	It's farthest east.
(ichiban nishi)	Ichiban nishi desu.	It's farthest west.

13. Expansion

Oosaka wa Oósáká-fu tō iimasu.	Ōsaka is called Ōsaka Prefecture.
(fú tō iimasu) Fú tō iimasu.	It's called a prefecture.
(Oosaka) Oósáká-fu tō iimasu.	It's called Ōsaka Prefecture.
(Oosaka wa) Oosaka wa Oósáká-fu tō iimasu.	Ōsaka is called Ōsaka prefecture.
Kyóoto wa Kyoóto-fu tō iimasu.	Kyōto is called Kyōto Prefecture.
(fú tō iimasu) Fú tō iimasu.	It's called a prefecture.
(Kyóoto) Kyoótó-fu tō iimasu.	It's called Kyōto Prefecture.
(Kyóoto wa) Kyóoto wa Kyoótó-fu tō iimasu.	Kyōto is called Kyōto Prefecture.
Tookyoo wa Toókyoo-to tō iimasu.	Tōkyō is called Tōkyō Prefecture.
(tó tō iimasu) Tó tō iimasu.	It's called a prefecture.
(Tookyoo) Toókyoo-to tō iimasu.	It's called Tōkyō Prefecture.
(Tookyoo wa) Tookyoo wa Toókyoo-to tō iimasu.	Tōkyō is called Tōkyō Prefecture.
Hiroshima wa Hiróshímá-ken tō iimasu.	Hiroshima is called Hiroshima Prefecture.
(kén tō iimasu) Kén tō iimasu.	It's called a prefecture.
(Hiroshima) Hiróshímá-ken tō iimasu.	It's called Hiroshima Prefecture.
(Hiroshima wa) Hiroshima wa Hiróshímá-ken tō iimasu.	Hiroshima is called Hiroshima Prefecture.
Nagásaki wa Nagásákí-ken tō iimasu.	Nagasaki is called Nagasaki Prefecture.
(kén tō iimasu) Kén tō iimasu.	It's called a prefecture.
(Nagásaki) Nagásákí-ken tō iimasu.	It's called Nagasaki Prefecture.
(Nagásaki wa) Nagásaki wa Nagásákí-ken tō iimasu.	Nagasaki is called Nagasaki Prefecture.

Karihoru
iimasu
(shūu tō
Karihoru)

(Karihoru)

Nyūyóoku

(shūu tō
(Nyūyóoku)

(Nyūyóoku)

14. Subst

Kansású-si

(minami)

(nishi)

(higáshí)

15. Corre

Oregón-shu
nishi d

(Nyūyóoku)

(tekisasu)

(Minnesota)

16. Respo

9. Roódóá

shu

é. R

yóó

Karīhoruniya wa Karīhórúniyá-shuu tō
iimasu.

(shūu tō iimasu) Shūu tō iimasu.

(Karīhoruniya) Karīhórúniyá-shuu tō
iimasu.

(Karīhoruniya wa) Karīhoruniya wa
Karīhórúniyá-shuu
tō iimasu.

California is called the State of
California.

It's called a state.

It's called the State of California.

California is called the State of
California.

Nyuúyóoku wa Nyuúyóókú-shuu tō iimasu.

(shūu tō iimasu) Shūu tō iimasu.

(Nyuúyóoku) Nyuúyóókú-shuu tō
iimasu.

(Nyuúyóoku wa) Nyuúyóoku wa
Nyuúyóókú-shuu tō
iimasu.

New York is called the State of New
York.

It's called a state.

It's called the State of New York.

New York is called the State of New
York.

14. Substitution

Kańsású-shuu yori kitá desu.

It's further north than the State
of Kansas.

(minami) Kańsású-shuu yori minami desu.

It's further south than the State
of Kansas.

(nishi) Kańsású-shuu yori nishi desu.

It's further west than the State
of Kansas.

(higáshí) Kańsású-shuu yori higáshí desu.

It's further east than the State
of Kansas.

15. Correlation substitution

Óregón-shuu wa Kańsású-shuu yori
nishi desu.

The State of Oregon is further west
than the State of Kansas.

(Nyuúyóoku) Nyuúyóókú-shuu wa Kańsású-
shuu yori higáshí desu.

The State of New York is further
east than the State of Kansas.

(Tekisasu) Tekísású-shuu wa Kańsású-
shuu yori minami desu.

The State of Texas is further south
than the State of Kansas.

(Minnesota) Minésótá-shuu wa Kańsású-
shuu yori kitá desu.

The State of Minnesota is further
north than the State of Kansas.

16. Response

Q. Roódóáirándó-shuu wa Nyuúyóókú-
shuu yori chiísái desu ka?

Is the State of Rhode Island smaller
than the State of New York?

A. Ée. Roódóáirándó-shuu wa Nyuú-
yóókú-shuu yori chiísái desu.

Yes, the State of Rhode Island is
smaller than the State of New
York.

(Nyuúyóókú-shuu wa Roódóáirándó-shuu yori oókíi desu ka?)

Ée. Nyuúyóókú-shuu wa Roódóáirándó-shuu yori oókíi desu.

(Nihón wa Amériká yori chiísái desu ka?)

Ée. Nihón wa Amériká yori chiísái desu.

(Amerika wa Nihón yori oókíi desu ka?)

Ée. Amerika wa Nihón yori oókíi desu.

(Amazón-gawa wa Mishíshíppí-gawa yori nagái desu ka?)

Ée. Amazón-gawa wa Mishíshíppí-gawa yori nagái desu.

(Ebérésútó-san wa Fúji-san yori takái desu ka?)

Ée. Ebérésútó-san wa Fúji-san yori takái desu.

17. Response (Use pairs of actual objects or pictures one belonging to Mr. Tanaka and the other to Mr. Shimizu.)

Q. Tanaka-san no empitsu wa Shímizu-san no empítsú yori nagái desu ka?

A. Ée. Tanaka-san no empitsu wa Shímizu-san no empítsú yori nagái desu.

(Tanaka-san no hako wa Shímizu-san no hakó yori oókíi desu ka?)

Ée. Tanaka-san no hako wa Shímizu-san no hakó yori oókíi desu.

(Tanaka-san no hako wa Shímizu-san no hakó yori fukái desu ka?)

Ée. Tanaka-san no hako wa Shímizu-san no hakó yori fukái desu.

(Tanaka-san no uchí wa Shímizu-san no uchí yori hirói desu ka?)

Ée. Tanaka-san no uchí wa Shímizu-san no uchí yori hirói desu.

(Tanáká-sán kára no tegami wa Shímizu-san kara no tegamí yori yomíyasúi desu ka?)

Ée. Tanáká-sán kára no tegami wa Shímizu-san kara no tegamí yori yomíyasúi desu.

(Is the State of New York larger than the State of Rhode Island?)

Yes, the State of New York is larger than the State of Rhode Island.

(Is Japan smaller than America?)

Yes, Japan is smaller than America.

(Is America larger than Japan?)

Yes, America is larger than Japan.

(Is the Amazon River longer than the Mississippi River?)

Yes, the Amazon River is longer than the Mississippi River.

(Is Mt. Everest higher than Mt. Fuji?)

Yes, Mt. Everest is higher than Mt. Fuji.

Is Mr. Tanaka's pencil longer than Mr. Shimizu's pencil?

Yes, Mr. Tanaka's pencil is longer than Mr. Shimizu's pencil.

(Is Mr. Tanaka's box bigger than Mr. Shimizu's box?)

Yes, Mr. Tanaka's box is larger than Mr. Shimizu's box.

(Is Mr. Tanaka's box deeper than Mr. Shimizu's box?)

Yes, Mr. Tanaka's box is deeper than Mr. Shimizu's box.

(Is Mr. Tanaka's house larger than Mr. Shimizu's house?)

Yes, Mr. Tanaka's house is larger than Mr. Shimizu's house.

(Is the letter from Mr. Tanaka easier to read than the letter from Mr. Shimizu?)

Yes, the letter from Mr. Tanaka is easier to read than the letter from Mr. Shimizu.

18. Sub

Konó hóc

(omóshír

(hirói)

(semái)

(fukái)

(sai)

19. Gra

(Sonó hóc

desu

Konó hóc

(Sonó ká

desu

Konó ká

(Sokó yóc

Kokó nó

(Sonó mí

desu

Konó mí

(Sonó shí

shí

Konó shí

(Sonó yá

desu

Konó yá

(Sonó kú

desu

Konó kú

20. Sub

Hoká nó

(yamá)

(kuni)

(tokoró)

(jibíkí)

(shimbun

Jidóosh

8. Substitution

Konó hoo ga takái desu.

This is more expensive.

(omóshirói) Konó hoo ga omóshirói desu.

This is more interesting.

(hirói) Konó hoo ga hirói desu.

This is wider.

(semái) Konó hoo ga semái desu.

This is narrower.

(fukái) Konó hoo ga fukái desu.

This is deeper.

(asai) Konó hoo ga asai desu.

This is shallower.

9. Grammar (changing to hoo)

(Sonó hón yori konó hón ga omóshirói desu.)

(This book is more interesting than that book.)

Konó hón no hoo ga omóshirói desu.

This book is more interesting.

(Sonó káwá yori konó káwá ga fukái desu.)

(This river is deeper than that river.)

Konó káwá nó hoo ga fukái desu.

This river is deeper.

(Sokó yori koko ga asai desu.)

(It's shallower here than there.)

Konó nó hoo ga asai desu.

It's shallower here.

(Sonó míchí yori kono michi ga semái desu.)

(This road is narrower than that road.)

Konó míchí nó hoo ga semái desu.

This road is narrower.

(Sonó shíma yori konó shíma ga omóshirói desu.)

(This island is more interesting than that island.)

Konó shíma nó hoo ga omóshirói desu.

This island is more interesting.

(Sonó yamá yori konó yamá ga takái desu.)

(This mountain is higher than that mountain.)

Konó yamá nó hoo ga takái desu.

This mountain is higher.

(Sonó kúní yori kono kuni ga kitá desu.)

(This country is further north than that country.)

Konó kúní nó hoo ga kitá desu.

This country is further north.

20. Substitution

Hoká nó shíma yori mótto sukí desu.

I like it better than the other islands.

(yamá) Hoká nó yamá yori mótto sukí desu.

I like it better than the other mountains.

(kuni) Hoká nó kúní yori mótto sukí desu.

I like it better than the other countries.

(tokoró) Hoká nó tókóró yori mótto sukí desu.

I like it better than the other places.

(jibíkí) Hoká nó jíbíkí yori mótto sukí desu.

I like it better than the other dictionaries.

(shimbun) Hoká nó shímbún yori mótto sukí desu.

I like it better than the other newspapers.

(jidóosha) Hoká nó jídóosha yori mótto sukí desu.

I like it better than the other cars.

21. Substitution

Konó káwá wa Mishíshíppí-gawa hodo
nágaku arímásén.

This river is not as long as the
Mississippi River.

(fukáku) Konó káwá wa Mishíshíppí-gawa
hodo fukáku arímásén.
(híroku) Konó káwá wa Mishíshíppí-gawa
hodo híroku arímásén.
(omóshíroku) Konó káwá wa Mishíshíppí-gawa
hodo omóshíroku arímásén.
(kitánaku) Konó káwá wa Mishíshíppí-gawa
hodo kitánaku arímásén.
(mítaku) Konó káwá wa Mishíshíppí-gawa
hodo mítaku arímásén.

This river is not as deep as the
Mississippi River.
This river is not as wide as the
Mississippi River.
This river is not as interesting
as the Mississippi River.
This river is not as dirty as
the Mississippi River.
I don't want to see this river
as much as I do the Missis-
sippi River.

Súmisu

N
e, Ho
sai sh
súká n
Toókyó
wataku
N
sore h
imasen
kara,
hoo ga
fúne d
N
shuu y
kíree
kaku w
daké d
omoima
shíppí
shíshí
wa Amé
ni wa
Y
béku h
takúsá
hikóok
hón nó

22. Substitution

Sore hodo fúruku arímásén.

It isn't as old as that one.

(omóshíroku) Sore hodo omóshíroku arí-
másén.
(atáráshiku) Sore hodo atáráshiku arí-
másén.
(fukáku) Sore hodo fukáku arímásén.
(sémaku) Sore hodo sémaku arímásén.
(híroku) Sore hodo híroku arímásén.
(asaku) Sore hodo asákú arímásén.
(nágaku) Sore hodo nágaku arímásén.

It isn't as interesting as that
one.
It isn't as new as that one.
It isn't as deep as that one.
It isn't as narrow as that one.
It isn't as wide as that one.
It isn't as shallow as that one.
It isn't as long as that one.

23. Substitution

Sore hodo sukí de wa arímásén.

I don't like it that much.

(kíree) Sore hodo kíree de wa arímásén.
(takúsán) Sore hodo takúsán de wa arímásén.
(kirai) Sore hodo kirai de wa arímásén.

It isn't pretty to that extent.
There isn't that much.
I don't dislike it that much.

A. Us
senten

24. Substitution

Kore hodo oókíi desu.

It's about this big.

(fukái) Kore hodo fukái desu.
(nagái) Kore hodo nagái desu.
(hirói) Kore hodo hirói desu.
(takái) Kore hodo takái desu.
(atáráshíi) Kore hodo atáráshíi desu.

It's about this deep.
It's about this long.
It's about this wide.
It's about as expensive as this.
It's about as new as this.

1. Ya
2. Dó
3. Nó
4. Sh
5. Ot

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

Sumisu-san no Nihón-ryókoo

Nihón wa shimáguni de átte, sonó shimá o kitá nó hoo kara minámí nó hoo e, Hokkáidoo, Hónshuu, Shikóku, Kyúushuu, to iímásu ga, sonó hóká ní mo chiísái shima ga takusan arimasu. Nihónjín wa Karihoruniya ya Nyuúyóoku ya Arasúka nó kótó o shúu to iímásu ga, Nihón de wa kore to chigatte, Tóokyoo wa Tóokyoo-to, Kyóoto to Qosaka wa fú to itte, hoka wa minna kén to iímásu kara, watakushi ní wa obóeníkukatta desu. Hóká nó Amérikájin mo obóeníkúi deshoo.

Nihón nó higáshí ni wa hirói óoki na úmi ga arimásu ga, nishí nó úmi wa sore hodo óokiku arimásen. Higáshí nó úmi ni wa, ima sonó fúkása o obóete imasen ga, sékai de ichibán fúkái tokoro ga arimasu. Konó úmi wa hirósúgírú kara, isogáshí hito ga Amériká kara Nihón e ryokóó súrú no ni wa hikóoki no hoo ga háyakute íi to omoimasu. Watakushi wa fúne no hoo ga sukí da kara, fúne de Nihón ni kimáshita ga, omóshirói ryokóó déshita.

Nihón ni wa yamá mo kawá mo takúsán aru no ni, okisa wa Karihorúniyáshuu yori chiísakute semái kuni desu. Sonó yamá nó náka de ichibán takakute kíree na no wa Fúji-san desu. Fúji-san wa Amérika no Makkinrée-san hodo takaku wa arimásen ga, yóku Fúji-san no koto ga hón ni déru kara, Amérikájin dáké de wa nákte, sékai no hitóbito ga konó yamá nó kótó o shítte iru to omoimasu. Nihónjín wa Makkinrée-san yori Amérika de ichibán nagái Mishíshippí-gawa no hoo o yóku shítte imasu. Sore wa Makkinrée-san yori mo Mishíshippí-gawa no hoo ga mótto hón ya éega ni déru kara desu. Nihón nó kawá wa Amériká nó to chigatte, minna asai, mijikái, hayái kawá de, fúne no tame ni wa semasugimasu.

Watakushi wa Nihón nó kitá kara minámí máde ryokóó shimáshita ga, narúbéku kishá ya basu o tsukáimáshita. Sore wa omóshirói tokoro o narúbéku takúsán mitakatta kara desu. Amérikájin ga Nihón o ryokóó súrú tamé ni wa hikóoki yori mo kishá ya jidóosha no hoo ga íi to omoimasu. Sonó hoo ga Nihón nó kótó ga mótto wakariyasuku naru kara desu.

EXERCISES

A. Use hoo in the following sentences, retaining the same meaning in the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Yamá yori úmi ga sukí desu. | I like the sea better than the mountains. |
| 2. Dóchi ga chiísái desu ka? | Which is the smaller one? |
| 3. Nому yori tabéru no ga íi to omoimasu. | I think it's better to eat than to drink. |
| 4. Shímizu-san yori Tanaka-san ga mótto takái deshoo. | Mr. Tanaka is probably taller than Mr. Shimizu. |
| 5. Obóeru yori mo wasúrérú no ga hayái desu. | One forgets faster than one learns. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Denwá ó kákéru yori tégami o káku
no ga íi deshoo. | It's probably better to write a
letter than to telephone. |
| 7. Konó shímá ga mótto kíree desu. | This island is prettier. |
| 8. Dénsha yori basu ga hayái desu. | Busses are faster than streetcars. |

B. Using hodo make negative comparisons, retaining the idea of the original sentence.

EXAMPLE:

Amerika wa Nihón yori hirói desu.

Nihón wa Amerika hodo híroku náí desu.

Amerika wa Nihón hodo sémaku náí desu.

1. Hikóoki wa kishá yori hayái desu.
2. Amázón-gawa wa Mishíshíppí-gawa yori nagái desu.
3. Koóhíi wa ochá yori sukí desu.
4. Hiroshima wa Nágoya yori tói desu.
5. Roódóairándó-shuu wa Tekísású-shuu yori chiísái desu.
6. Basu wa takushii yori yasúi desu.
7. Haábáádó-daigaku wa Toókyóó-daigaku yori furúi desu.
8. Tanaka-san wa Ikédá-sán yori íi desu.

C. Change the following sentences so that the meanings are the opposite of what is given here.

1. Konó hón wa yomíyásúi desu.
2. Konó mánnénhitsu wa ichibán kákiníkúi desu.
3. Matsúmótó-sán nó úchí wa wakáriníkúi tokoro ni arimasu.
4. Sumisu-san to wa hanáshiyásúi desu.
5. Anó hanáshí wa kikíníkukatta desu.
6. Shigoto ga shiníkúi desu.
7. Daigaku no máe no michi wa arúkiyásúi desu ne.
8. Mochíyásúi desu yo.

D. Insert ichiban, mótto or narúbéku in the following blanks.

1. Ebérésútó-san wa sékai de _____ takái yamá desu.
Mt. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
2. _____ yasúi no ga hoshíi n' desu.
I want the cheapest one possible.
3. _____ tabétákatta n' desu ga ...
I wanted to eat more, but ...
4. Sékai de _____ óókíi kuni wa dóko desu ka?
Which is the largest country in the world?
5. Minna mätte imasu kara _____ háyaku kité kudasai.
Please come as quickly as possible, because everyone is waiting.

Kore wa watakushi no _____ kirái ná tábémóno desu.
This is what (food) I dislike the most.

_____ háyaku shite kudasai.
Please do it more quickly.

_____ omóshirói hón o mísete kudasai.
Please show me as interesting a book as possible.

B. Tell your friend:

1. that Canada is further north than [the United States of] America.
2. that it's more fun to travel.
3. that New York State is further east than Michigan State.
4. that you think English is easier to learn than Japanese.
5. that you think Miss Ikeda is prettier than Miss Tanaka.
6. that Japan is smaller than the State of California.
7. that Mr. Tanaka was saying that the older one is more expensive than the newer one.
8. that tomorrow will probably be busier than today.
9. that your former house was too old.
10. that the car won't enter because the street is too narrow.
11. that you're not going to buy it because it's too expensive.
12. that you ate too much and became sick.
13. that you don't know the height of that mountain (looking at a picture).
14. that the sizes of the boxes are different.
15. that it's not as pretty as Kyōto Prefecture.
16. that it isn't as far north as Tōkyō Prefecture.
17. that the Mississippi River is the longest river in the United States.

LESSON X

kázoku	family
chichí	my father; fathers
otóosan	father (direct address); father (of someone else)
háha	my mother; mothers
okáasan	mother (direct address); mother (of someone else)
áni	my older brother; older brothers
oníisan	older brother (direct address); older brother (of someone else)
ane	my older sister; older sisters
onéesan	older sister (direct address); older sister (of someone else)
imóótó	younger sister
otóótó	younger brother
kodomo	child, children
bóku	I (familiar, used only by men and boys)
kimi	you (familiar, used only by men and boys)
kaisha	company, office
tomodachi	friend
-tachi (-dachi)	(a pluralizer for nouns referring to people, professions, etc.)
máinichi	every day
tokidoki	occasionally, sometimes
hetá (na)	unskillful
joózú (na)	skillful
tokóro	1) place (L. 9); 2) point, feature; 3) situation, time; 4) that which
noru	1) to ride; 2) to get on; 3) to appear; (----- <u>ni</u> <u>noru</u> , intr.)
oríru	to get off, to descend from, to alight (intr.)
súmu	to live, to reside (intr.)
tsutómeru	to work (white collar work; ----- <u>ni</u> <u>tsutómeru</u> , intr.)

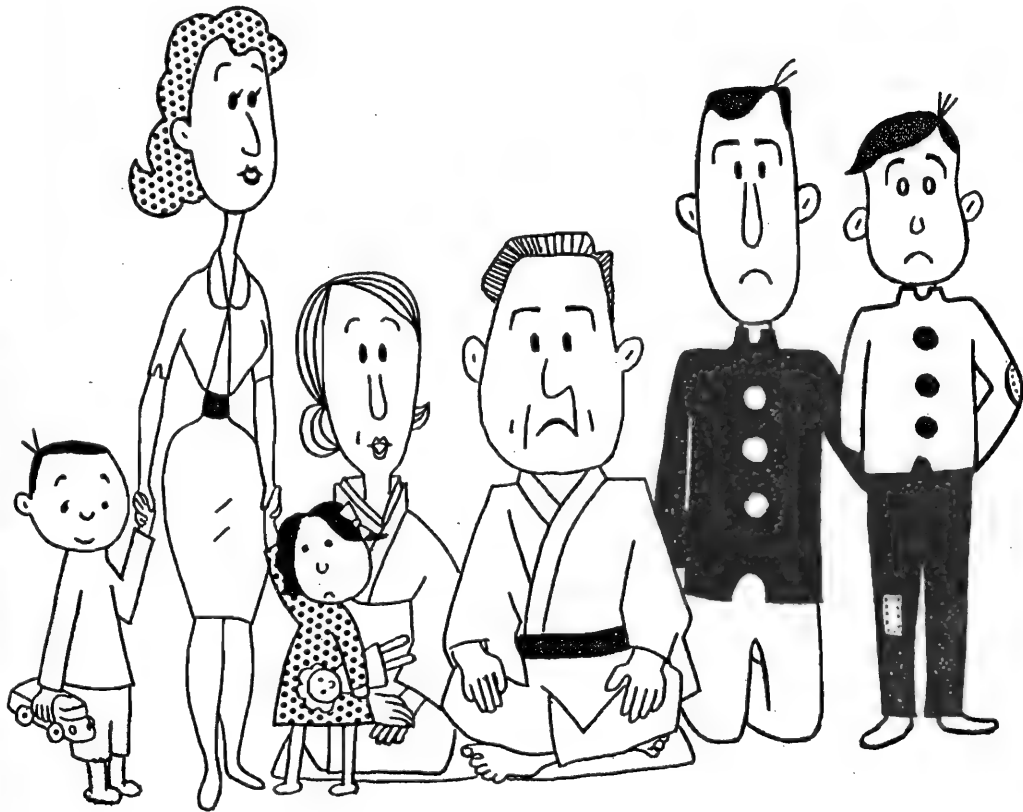


se)
se)
(of
f

ofes-

ion,
--- ni

u,



(Sato-san to Yamada-san ga mishi
to mishi)

(Mr. Sato and Mr. Yamada met in
the street)

S. Kaeite kita tokoro desu.
Kimiko-san ga Yamada-san to
kekkon suru koto ni narima-
shita yo.

K. Ee? Matsumoto-sensee no oshieta
koto no aru, Yamada-san to desu
ka?

S. Soo.

K. Watakushi wa Yamada-san ni atta
koto wa arimasen ga, ano hito
no kaita mono o tokidoki mi-
masu.

S. Yamada-san wa kaku koto wa joozu
desu ne.

K. Kimiko-san wa dooshite Yamada-san
to kekkon suru koto ni shita n'
deshoo.

S. Yamada-san no hoo ga gakusee no
Ikeda-kun yori ii to omotta no
deshoo. Ototo no Hiroshi-kun
ga soo itte imashita.

K. Aa, soo desu ka. Ikeda-kun ni au
koto ga arimasu ka?

S. Ammari arimasen. Watakushi wa
uchi e kaeru tokoro desu ga,
ima kara Ikeda-kun no tokoro e
itte mimasen ka?

K. Soo shimashoo.

Matsumoto's home. You know,
it's been arranged that
Kimiko will marry Mr. Yamada!

K. What? With the Mr. Yamada whom
Professor Matsumoto once
taught?

S. That's right.

K. I've never met Mr. Yamada, but I
sometimes see things he has
written.

S. Mr. Yamada is a good writer
(lit.--good in writing),
isn't he?

K. I wonder why Kimiko decided to
marry Mr. Yamada.

S. She probably thought that Mr.
Yamada was better than the
student, Ikeda. Her younger
brother, Hiroshi, was saying
so.

K. Oh, really. Do you sometimes
(lit.--have occasion to) see
Ikeda?

S. Not very often. I'm on my way
home, but [I don't mind
changing my plans]. How
about going to Ikeda's place
now [to see how he is].

K. Let's do that.

10.1 M
No
al noun
al leve
EXAMPLE
1)

2)

3)

Th
or may
EXAMPLE

Hi
Ha

Ka
Wa
Wa

ii
Wa

Tai

Iki
Tai

*Note:
as well

Koi

Tai

GRAMMAR

10.1 Modifiers of nouns

Nouns are modified by the following: 1) a noun plus no or an adjectival noun plus na; 2) verbal adjectives (informal level); 3) verbs (informal level). (Review)

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1) Gakkóo nó hón desu.
Tanaka-san no tomodachi desu.
Kíree na tokoro desu. | It's a book belonging to the school.
He's Mr. Tanaka's friend.
It's a pretty place. |
| 2) Oókíi kaisha desu.
Ammari óokiku náí no o kudásái. | It's a large company.
Please give me one that isn't too large. |
| 3) Kinoo katta shimbun desu.
Ashita míru éega desu. | It's a newspaper that I bought yesterday.
It's the movie we're going to see tomorrow. |

The modifying verbal adjective or verb is a predicate whose subject may or may not be mentioned. (Modifying parts are underlined.)

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Hirói michi desu.
<u>Haba nó hirói</u> michi desu. | It's a wide street.
It's a street whose width is wide. |
| Kattá hón desu.
Watakushi ga kattá hón desu.
<u>Watakushi no katta</u> hón desu.* | It's the book which I bought.
It's the book which I bought.
It's the book which I bought. |
| <u>íi no o kaímáshita.</u>
<u>Watakúshí nó yori íi no o kaímáshita.</u>
Tanaka-san wa watakúshí nó yori <u>íi no o kaímáshita.</u> | He bought a good one.
He bought one that's better than mine.
Mr. Tanaka bought one that's better than mine. |
| <u>Íkú hoo ga íi.</u>
<u>Tanaka-san to issho ni íkú hoo ga íi.</u> | It's better to go.
It's better to go with Mr. Tanaka. |

*Note: The subject of the modifying predicate is followed by the particle no as well as ga. (The latter is a new tendency.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| Kore wa <u>Tanáka-sán nó káita</u> hón desu.
<u>Tanaka-san no mótte kita</u> okáshi wa dóko desu ka? | This is a book written by Mr. Tanaka.
Where are the cakes which Mr. Tanaka brought? |
|---|--|

A noun may have more than one modifier.

EXAMPLES:

Áni no kátté kita, atáráshíi
rájio o mimásén ka?
Tanaka-san no tonari ni iru
kíree na hitó wa dáre desu ka?
Gakkoo e itte inai Masao to yuu
otóótó ga imasu.

Won't you look at the new radio
which my older brother bought?
Who is that pretty person next to
Mr. Tanaka?
I have a younger brother called
Masao who isn't in school yet.

10.2 No of apposition

A noun and its apposition are linked by the particle no. (The usage of this no is like that of the copula.)

EXAMPLES:

Otótó no Jíroo ga mótte ikimasu.
Amérikájin no Súmisu-san ni aí-
máshita.
Yamadá no áni wa joózú desu.

My younger brother, Jirō, will bring
it over.
I met Mr. Smith, the American.
My older brother Yamada is skillful
[at it].

10.3 Uses of kotó

The noun kotó meaning "fact" or "occasion" is always modified in the manner described in 10.1.

(a) Kotó ga aru: The subject kotó with the predicate verb áru has the meaning "the fact of ----- exists" or "there is the occasion of -----." The interrogative, kotó ga arimasu ka, has the meaning "Do you ever" with a non-past modifier of kotó and "Have you ever" with a perfective modifier of kotó.

EXAMPLES:

Nippón e ikú kótó ga arimasu ka?
Nippón e itta kótó ga arimasu ka?
Gakkoo e ikánaí kótó ga arimasu.
Gakkoo e ikánákatta kotó mo ari-
masu.
Osókatta kotó ga arimasu.

Do you ever go to Japan? (Lit.--
Are there occasions when you go
to Japan?)
Have you ever gone to Japan? (Lit.-
Has there been the occasion of
having gone to Japan?)
There are times when I don't go to
school.
There are times when I didn't go to
school.
There are times when I have been
late.

The predicate verb in the negative, arimásén or nái desu has the meaning "never."

EXAMPLES:

Nippón e ikú kótó wa arimásén.

I never go to Japan. I don't have
the occasion to go to Japan.

Nippón e ittá kótó wa arímásén.
Gakkoo e ikánái kótó wa arímásén.

I have never gone to Japan.
There are never times when I don't
go to school. (To be taught
later.)

Osókatta kotó wa arímásén.

I have never been late.

(b) Kotó plus ni plus náru means "come about that -----" or "be arranged that -----." The modifier of kotó is in the non-past.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san no kaisha ni tsutó-
méru kotó ni narímashita.
Oósaká ní sūmú kotó ni wa nará-
nai deshoo.
Ashita ikánái kótó ni nátte
imasu.

It was arranged that I would work
for Mr. Tanaka's company.
It probably won't turn out that I'll
live in Ōsaka.
It is arranged that we will not go
tomorrow.

(c) Kotó plus ni plus suru means "decide to -----." The modifier of kotó is in the non-past.

EXAMPLES:

Chichí no kaisha ni tsutómeru
kotó ni shimashita.
Yokohama ní sūmanai kotó ni surú
deshoo.
Tóokyoo-eki de oríru kotó ni
shimashoo.
Mainichi sukoshi benkyoo sūru
kótó ni shite imasu.

I decided to work for my father's
company.
They'll probably decide not to live
in Yokohama.
Let's decide to get off at Tōkyō
Station.
I make it a practice to study a lit-
tle every day.

(d) The noun no occurs in place of kotó in all of its uses except the ones described in a, b, and c above.

EXAMPLES:

Okáshi o tsukúru kotó ga joózú
desu.
Okáshi o tsukúru no ga joózú
desu.

She is good at making cakes.

She's good at making cakes. (Lit.--
she's good at the making of
cakes.)

Ashita ikú kótó wa íi to omoi-
masu.

I think it's good to go tomorrow.

Ashita ikú no wa íi to omoimasu.

I think it's good to go tomorrow.

(Note that the noun no occurs in place of nouns other than kotó.)

Asoko ni irú hitó wa Tanaka-san
desu.
Asoko ni irú no wa Tanaka-san
desu.

The person who is over there is Mr.
Tanaka.
The person who is over there is Mr.
Tanaka.

10.4 Noun tokóro

The noun tokóro has various uses: 1) meaning "location" or "place" (Lesson IX); 2) indicating "time" or "point"; 3) meaning "situation" or "condition." Tokóro is always modified. The following are the various ways of modifying tokóro in the sense of time.

non-past, positive verb plus tokóro
perfective, positive verb plus tokóro
gerund plus iru plus tokóro*

am about to -----
have just -----
am just -----ing

*This also has a situation meaning.

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1) Beńkyóó súru tókóro desu.
Máinichi ikú tókóro desu. | It's a place to study.
It's a place where I go every day. |
| 2) Ima ikú tókóro desu.
Káeru tokoro deshita. | I am about to go now.
I was about to go home. |
| Íma íttá tókóro desu.
Káetta tokoro desu.
Káetta tokoro deshita. | He just left.
He's just come home.
He had just returned home. |
| Íma káite iru tokóro desu. | I'm just writing it now. |
| 3) Beńkyóó shité íru tókóro e asobi
ni kimáshita.
Jidóosha ni notté íru tókóro o
mimáshita.
Oísógashíi tókóro o dóomo
aríгато gozáimáshita.
Byooki no tokóro e asobi ni kite
warukatta desu ne. | He came over to see me when I was
studying.
I saw him riding in the car.
Thank you [for your time] when
you are so busy.
I'm sorry to have come over for a
visit when you are sick. |

(Note: The particle following the "situation" tokóro is determined by the predicate verb.)

10.5 To yuu (cont.)

To yuu meaning "called" links two nouns in apposition.

EXAMPLES:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Tanaka to yuu seńsée o shitté
ímasu ka? | Do you know a teacher called Tanaka? |
| Toókyóo-eki to yuu éki ga arímasu
ka? | Is there a station called Tókyō Sta-
tion? |

10.6 Plurals of nouns

There is usually no distinction between the singular and plural in Japanese nouns. When this distinction is desirable, the noun is repeated or, in the case of people or professions, plural suffixes are added. The following

are the plural suffixes.

-ra*	-tachi	-dómo**	-gáta***
(informal)	(semi-formal)	(humble formal)	(honorific formal)

EXAMPLES:

Singular	Plural	English of Plural
bóku	bókura	we (of boys and men)
kimi	kimítachi	you (of boys and men)
seńsée	seńseetachi	teachers
watakushi	watakúshitachi	we
watakushi	watakúshidómo	we
anáta	anatagata	you
seńsée	senseegata	teachers

* Ra has a meaning the "likes of." Example: Tároo-ra "the likes of Tarō" or "Tarō and his group."

** Caution: This has a disparaging nuance in certain uses. This occurs more often in the third person.

*** Introduced in Lesson XXI.

DRILL

1. Substitution

<u>Áu</u> kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you have the occasion to see him?
(arúku) Arúku kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you have the occasion to walk?
(noru) Norú kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you have the occasion to ride?
(ryokoo suru) Ryokóo sŭrú kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you have the occasion to travel?
(tsukúru) Tsukúru kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you have the occasion to make it?
(tákaku naru) Tákaku naru kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there occasions when it becomes expensive?
(yásuku suru) Yásuku suru kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you sometimes make it cheap?
(tabesugiru) Tabésúgírú kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you sometimes eat too much?

2. Substitution

<u>Átta</u> kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever seen him?
(arúita) Arúita kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever walked it?
(notta) Nottá kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever ridden it?

(ryokoo shita)	Ryokóó shítá kótó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever traveled?
(itta)	Íttá kótó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever gone there?
(yónnda)	Yónnda kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever read it?
(míta)	Míta kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever seen it?
(kiíta)	Kiítá kótó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever heard of it?
(móttta)	Móttta kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever owned one?
(tabesugita)	Tabésúgítá kótó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever eaten too much?
(nomisugita)	Nomísúgítá kótó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever drunk too much?
(yásuku shita)	Yásuku shita kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever made it cheap?
(tákaku natta)	Tákaku natta kotó ga arímásu ka?	Has it ever become expensive?

3. Substitution

Ikánái kótó ga arímásu ka?

Are there times when you don't go?

(arúkánai)	Arúkánai kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't walk?
(noranai)	Noránái kótó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't ride?
(tabénai)	Tabénai kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't eat?
(yománai)	Yománai kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't read?
(kawanai)	Kawánái kótó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't buy it?
(kakánai)	Kakánai kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't write?
(matánai)	Matánai kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't wait?
(yasúmanai)	Yasúmanai kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't rest?
(hanásánai)	Hanásánai kotó ga arímásu ka?	Are there times when you don't talk?

4. Substitution

Ikánákatta kotó ga arimasu.

There were times when I didn't go.

(iwánákatta)	Iwánákatta kotó ga arimasu.	There were times when I didn't say it.
(kawánákatta)	Kawánákatta kotó ga arimasu.	There were times when I didn't buy it.

(be
n
(wa(no
(yo

5.

Not

(ki
(mí
(wa
(na

6.

Q.
A.

(ur

(ka

(ry

(ha

(ar

(no

(mí

7.

Q.
A.

(to

(benkyōō shí- nákatta)	Benkyōō shínákatta kotó ga arimasu.	There were times when I didn't study.
(wakáranákatta)	Wakáranákatta kotó ga arimasu.	There were times when I didn't understand.
(noránákatta)	Noránákatta kotó ga arimasu.	There were times when I didn't ride.
(yománákatta)	Yománákatta kotó ga arimasu.	There were times when I didn't read it.

5. Substitution

	<u>Nottá</u> kotó ga arimashita.	I had ridden it once.
(kiita)	Kiítá kotó ga arímáshita.	I had heard it once.
(míta)	Míta kotó ga arímáshita.	I had seen it once.
(wasureta)	Wasúrétá kotó ga arímáshita.	I had forgotten it once.
(narátta)	Narátta kotó ga arímáshita.	I had learned it once.

6. Response (negative)

Q.	<u>Tabéru</u> kotó ga arímásu ka?	Do you sometimes eat it?
A.	Iie. Tabéru kotó wa arímásén.	No, I don't have the occasion to eat it.
(uru)	(Urú kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Urú kotó wa arímásén.	(Do you sometimes sell it?) No, I never sell it.
(kau)	(Káu kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Káu kotó wa arímásén.	(Do you sometimes buy it?) No, I never buy it.
(ryokoo suru)	(Ryokóó súrú kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Ryokóó súrú kotó wa arímásén.	(Do you sometimes travel?) No, I never travel.
(hanásu)	(Hanásu kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Hanásu kotó wa arímásén.	(Do you sometimes speak it?) No, I never speak it.
(arúku)	(Arúku kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Arúku kotó wa arímásén.	(Do you sometimes walk?) No, I never walk.
(noru)	(Norú kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Norú kotó wa arímásén.	(Do you sometimes ride it?) No, I never ride it.
(míru)	(Míru kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Míru kotó wa arímásén.	(Do you sometimes see it?) No, I never see it.

7. Response (negative)

Q.	<u>Wasúrétá</u> kotó ga arímásu ka?	Have you ever forgotten it?
A.	Iie. Wasúrétá kotó wa arímásén.	No, I've never forgotten it.
(tometa)	(Tométá kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Tométá kotó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever stopped one?) No, I've never stopped one.

(kiita)	(Kiitá kótó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Kiitá kótó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever asked?) No, I've never asked.
(notta)	(Nottá kótó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Nottá kótó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever ridden one?) No, I've never ridden one.
(tsukútta)	(Tsukútta kotó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Tsukútta kotó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever made one?) No, I've never made one.
(tsukatta)	(Tsukáttá kótó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Tsukáttá kótó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever used one?) No, I've never used one.
(ryokoo shita)	(Ryokóó shítá kótó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Ryokóó shítá kótó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever traveled?) No, I've never traveled.
(onegai shita)	(Onégái shítá kótó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Onégái shítá kótó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever requested it?) No, I've never requested it.
(benkyoo shita)	(Benkyóó shítá kótó ga arímásu ka?) Iie. Benkyóó shítá kótó wa arímásén.	(Have you ever studied it?) No, I've never studied it.

8. Response (negative)

Q. <u>Tsukútta</u> kotó ga arímáshita ka?	Had you ever made it?
A. Iie. Tsukútta kotó wa arímásén deshita.	No, I had never made it.
(oshieta) (Oshíetá kótó ga arímáshita ka?) Iie. Oshíetá kótó wa arímásén deshita.	(Had you ever taught it?) No, I had never taught it.
(shirábeta) (Shirábeta kotó ga arímáshita ka?) Iie. Shirábeta kotó wa arímásén deshita.	(Had you ever investigated it?) No, I had never investigated it.
(míseta) (Míseta kotó ga arímáshita ka?) Iie. Míseta kotó wa arímásén deshita.	(Had you ever shown it?) No, I had never shown it.
(yónda) (Yónda kotó ga arímáshita ka?) Iie. Yónda kotó wa arímásén deshita.	(Had you ever read it?) No, I had never read it.

9. Substitution

<u>Kaisha ni tsutomemasu.</u>		I am going to work for a company.
(jidóosha no kaisha)	Jidóosha no kaisha ni tsutomemasu.	I am going to work for an automobile company.
(oókíi kaisha)	Oókíi kaisha ni tsutomemasu.	I am going to work for a large company.

210

(chiís
kais
(Nihon
kais
(Tanak
no k

10. R

Q. Ka

A. Ée
Ée

(Use 1

11. S

Chichí

(otóos
(Tároc
otóc
(háha)
(okáas
(Akiko
okáa
(áni)

(oníis

(Jíroo
oníi
(ane)

(onées

(Tároo
onée
(imóót

(Híros
imoo
(otóót

(Híros
otoo
(watak
kázo

(chiísái kaisha)	Chiísái kaisha ni tsutomemasu.	I am going to work for a small company.
(Nihon no kaisha)	Nihon no kaisha ni tsutomemasu.	I am going to work for a Japanese company.
(Tanaka-san no kaisha)	Tanaka-san no kaisha ni tsutomemasu.	I am going to work for Mr. Tanaka's company.

10. Response (affirmative)

Q. <u>Kaisha</u> ni tsutometa kotó ga arimasu ka?	Have you ever worked for a company?
A. Ée. Tsutometa kotó ga arimasu.	Yes, I've worked for one.
Ée. Kaisha ni tsutometa kotó ga arimasu.	Yes, I've worked for a company.

(Use list in Drill 9)

11. Substitution

<u>Chichí</u> ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu.	He once asked my father.
(otóosan)	Otóosan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked our father.
(Tároo-san no otóosan)	Tároo-san no otóosan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked Tarō's father.
(háha)	Háha ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked my mother.
(okáasan)	Okáasan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked our mother.
(Ákiko-san no okáasan)	Ákiko-san no okáasan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked Akiko's mother.
(áni)	Áni ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked my older brother.
(oníisan)	Oníisan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked our older brother.
(Jíroo-san no oníisan)	Jíroo-san no oníisan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked Jirō's older brother
(ane)	Ane ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked my older sister.
(onéesan)	Onéesan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked our older sister.
(Tároo-san no onéesan)	Tároo-san no onéesan ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked Tarō's older sister.
(imóótó)	Imóótó ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked my younger sister.
(Híroshi-san no imóoto-san)	Híroshi-san no imóoto-san ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked Hiroshi's younger sister.
(otóótó)	Otóótó ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked my younger brother.
(Híroshi-kun no otóoto-san)	Híroshi-kun no otóoto-san ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked Hiroshi's younger brother.
(watakushi no kázoku)	Watakushi no kázoku ni kiítá kótó ga arimasu. He once asked my family.

(Tanaka-san no gokázoku) Tanaka-san no gokázoku ni kiitá kótó ga arimasu.
 (bóku) Bóku ni kiitá kótó ga arimasu.
 (kimi) Kimi ni kiitá kótó ga arimasu.
 (bóku no tomo-dachi) Bóku no tomodachi ni kiitá kótó ga arimasu.
 (kimi no tomo-dachi) Kimi no tomodachi ni kiitá kótó ga arimasu.
 (Jíroo-san-tachi) Jíroo-san-tachi ni kiitá kótó ga arimasu.
 (bókutachi) Bókutachi ni kiitá kótó ga arimasu.

He once asked Mr. Tanaka's family.
 He once asked me.
 He once asked you.
 He once asked my friend.
 He once asked your friend.
 He once asked Jirō and his friends.
 He once asked us.

12. Response (affirmative)

Q. Chichí ga noitá kótó ga arímásu ka?

Has my father ridden it?

A. Ée. Otóosan ga noitá kótó ga arímásu yo.

Yes, your father has ridden it!

(háha) (Háha ga noitá kótó ga arímásu ka?)

(Has my mother ridden it?)

Ée. Okáasan ga noitá kótó ga arímásu yo.

Yes, your mother has ridden it!

(áni) (Áni ga noitá kótó ga arímásu ka?)

(Has my older brother ridden it?)

Ée. Oníisan ga noitá kótó ga arímásu yo.

Yes, your older brother has ridden it!

(ane) (Ane ga noitá kótó ga arímásu ka?)

(Has my older sister ridden it?)

Ée. Onéesan ga noitá kótó ga arímásu yo.

Yes, your older sister has ridden it!

(imóótó) (Imóótó ga noitá kótó ga arímásu ka?)

(Has my younger sister ridden it?)

Ée. Imooto-san ga noitá kótó ga arímásu yo.

Yes, your younger sister has ridden it!

(otóótó) (Otóótó ga noitá kótó ga arímásu ka?)

(Has my younger brother ridden it?)

Ée. Ootoo-san ga noitá kótó ga arímásu yo.

Yes, your younger brother has ridden it!

13. Grammar

(Masao no áni desu. Híroshi desu.)

(I'm Masao's older brother. I'm Hiroshi.)

Áni no Híroshi desu.

I'm Hiroshi, the older brother.

(Masao no áne desu. Fumie desu.)

(I'm Masao's older sister. I'm Fumie.)

Ane no Fumie desu.

I'm Fumie, the older sister.

(Híroshi)

Ootoo

(Híroshi)

Imooto

(Híroshi)

d

Tomoto

(Jíroshi)

Chichi

(Jíroshi)

Háha

14.

Ikú k

(tsut

(haná

(tsuk

(tsuk

(kaku

(nará

(ryok

sur

(benk

sur

15.

Ikáná

(tsut

(haná

(tsuk

(matá

(yasi

(aker

(míná

(Hiroshi no otóótó desu. Masao desu.)

Ootoo no Masao desu.

(Hiroshi no imóótó desu. Fumie desu.)

Imooto no Fumie desu.

(Hiroshi-san no tomodachi desu. Jíroo desu.)

Tomodachi no Jíroo desu.

(Jíroo no chichí desu. Ichiroo desu.)

Chichí no Ichiroo desu.

(Jíroo no háha desu. Nátsuko desu.)

Háha no Nátsuko desu.

(I'm Hiroshi's younger brother. I'm Masao.)

I'm Masao, the younger brother.

(I'm Hiroshi's younger sister. I'm Fumie.)

I'm Fumie, the younger sister.

(I'm Hiroshi's friend. I'm Jirō.)

I'm Jirō, his friend.

(I'm Jirō's father. I'm Ichirō.)

I'm Ichirō, the father.

(I'm Jirō's mother. I'm Natsuko.)

I'm Natsuko, the mother.

14. Substitution

Ikú kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would go.

(tsutoméru) Tsutoméru kotó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would work there.

(hanásu) Hanásu kotó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would speak.

(tsukau) Tsukáu kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would use it.

(tsukúru) Tsukúru kotó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would make it.

(kaku) Kaku kotó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would write it.

(naráu) Naráu kotó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would learn it.

(ryokoo suru) Ryokóó súrú kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would take a trip.

(benkyoo suru) Benkyóó súrú kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we would study.

15. Substitution

Ikánái kótó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't go.

(tsutoménai) Tsutoménai kotó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't work there.

(hanásanai) Hanásanai kotó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't speak.

(tsukawanai) Tsukáwanái kótó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't use it.

(matánai) Matánai kotó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't wait.

(yasúmanai) Yasúmanai kotó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't rest.

(akenai) Akénái kótó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't open it.

(mínai) Mínai kotó ni narímashita.

It turned out that we wouldn't see it.

16. Substitution

Koko de oríru kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that we will get off here.

(Toókyóo-eki) Toókyóo-eki de oríru kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that we will get off at Tōkyō Station.

(tsugí no éki) Tsugí no éki de oríru kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that we will get off at the next station.

(konó éki) Konó éki de oríru kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that we will get off at this station.

17. Substitution

Tookyoo ni súmu kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that I will live in Tōkyō.

(Kyóoto) Kyóoto ni súmu kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that I will live in Kyōto.

(koko) Koko ni súmu kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that I will live here.

(konó tókóró) Konó tókóró ni súmu kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that I will live in this place.

(Amerika) Amerika ni súmu kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that I will live in America.

(Nihón) Nihón ni súmu kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that I will live in Japan.

(Tanaka-san no uchí) Tanaka-san no uchí ni súmu kotó ni nátte imasu.

It is arranged that I will live in Mr. Tanaka's home.

18. Substitution

Hikóoki ni noránái kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we wouldn't go by plane (lit. board the plane).

(fúne) Fúne ni noránái kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we wouldn't go by ship.

(básu) Básu ni noránái kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we wouldn't go by bus.

(dénsha) Dénsha ni noránái kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we wouldn't go by electric train.

(kishá) Kishá ni noránái kótó ni narímashita.

It came about that we wouldn't go by train.

19. G

(Kyóoto

Kyóoto

(Koóná

nar

Koóná

nar

(Kaisha

Kaisha

mas

(Jidóos

nar

Jidóos

nar

(Toókyó

má

Toókyó

má

(Fúne

Fúne

20. S

Mainichi

(tokido

(ashita

(kyóo)

21. S

Tsutóm

(noru)

(ryoko

(obóer

(kaesu

(kau)

19. Grammar (negative)

(Kyóoto ni súmu kotó ni narímashita.)

(It was arranged that I would live in Kyōto.)

Kyóoto ni sumánai kotó ni narímashita.

It was arranged that I wouldn't live in Kyōto.

(Konná tókóro ni súmu kotó ni narímashita.)

(It was arranged that I would live in this kind of place.)

Konná tókóro ni sumánai kotó ni narímashita.

It was arranged that I wouldn't live in this kind of place.

(Kaisha ni tsutoméru kotó ni narímashita.)

(It was arranged that I would work for the company.)

Kaisha ni tsutoménai kotó ni narímashita.

It was arranged that I wouldn't work for the company.

(Jidóoshá-gaisha ni tsutoméru kotó ni narímashita.)

(It was arranged that I would work for the automobile company.)

Jidóoshá-gaisha ni tsutoménai kotó ni narímashita.

It was arranged that I wouldn't work for the automobile company.

(Toókýoo-eki de oríru kotó ni narímashita.)

(It was arranged that I would get off at Tōkyō Station.)

Toókýoo-eki de orínai kotó ni narímashita.

It was arranged that I would not get off at Tōkyō Station.

(Fúne kara oríru kotó ni narímashita.)

(It was arranged that I would get off the ship.)

Fúne kara orínai kotó ni narímashita.

It was arranged that I wouldn't get off the ship.

20. Substitution

Mainichi ikú kótó ni shimashita.

I decided to go every day.

(tokidoki) Tokidoki ikú kótó ni shimashita.

I decided to go occasionally.

(ashita) Ashita ikú kótó ni shimashita.

I decided to go tomorrow.

(kyóo) Kyóo ikú kótó ni shimashita.

I decided to go today.

21. Substitution

Tsutoméru kotó ni shimashita.

I decided to work there.

(noru) Norú kótó ni shimashita.

I decided to board it.

(ryokoo suru) Ryokóo súrú kótó ni shimashita.

I decided to take a trip.

(obóeru) Obóeru kotó ni shimashita.

I decided to learn it.

(kaesu) Káesu kotó ni shimashita.

I decided to return it.

(kau) Kaú kótó ni shimashita.

I decided to buy it.

22. Substitution

Iku kótó ni shimáshóo.

Let's make up our minds to go.

(tsutoméru) Tsutoméru kotó ni shimáshóo.

Let's make up our minds to work there.

(noru) Norú kótó ni shimáshóo.

Let's make up our minds to ride it.

(hanásu) Hanásu kotó ni shimáshóo.

Let's make up our minds to speak it.

(kiku) Kikú kótó ni shimáshóo.

Let's make up our minds to ask.

23. Substitution

Ikánái kótó ni shite imasu.

He makes it a practice not to go.

(tabénai) Tabénai kotó ni shite imasu. He makes it a practice not to eat it.

(yománai) Yománai kotó ni shite imasu. He makes it a practice not to read it.

(iwanai) Iwánái kótó ni shite imasu. He makes it a practice not to say it.

(noranai) Noránái kótó ni shite imasu. He makes it a practice not to ride it.

(akenai) Akénái kótó ni shite imasu. He makes it a practice not to open it.

24. Response

Q. Kyóoto ni súmu kotó ni shimáshita ka?

Did you decide to settle in Kyōto?

A. Iie. Kyóoto ni sumánai kotó ni shimáshita.

No, I decided not to settle in Kyōto.

(Anó máchí ni súmu kotó ni shimáshita ka?)

(Did you decide to settle in that town?)

Iie. Anó máchí ni sumánai kotó ni shimáshita.

No, I decided not to settle in that town.

(Ano kaisha ni tsutoméru kotó ni shimáshita ka?)

(Did you decide to work for that company?)

Iie. Ano kaisha ni tsutoménai kotó ni shimáshita.

No, I decided not to work for that company.

(Yokóhama-eki de oríru kotó ni shimáshita ka?)

(Did you decide to get off at Yokohama Station?)

Iie. Yokóhama-eki de orínai kotó ni shimáshita.

No, I decided not to get off at Yokohama Station.

(Otóosan ni kikú kótó ni shimáshita ka?)

(Did you decide to ask father?)

Iie. Otóosan ni kikánái kótó ni shimáshita.

No, I decided not to ask father.

(Okáasan ni miséru kotó ni shimáshita ka?)

(Did you decide to show mother?)

Iie. Okáasan ni misénai kotó ni shimáshita.

No, I decided not to show mother.

(Oníisan ni yuú kótó ni shimáshita ka?)

(Did you decide to tell older brother?)

Iie. Oníisan ni iwánái kótó ni shimáshita.

No, I decided not to tell older brother.

216

(Onée:

Iie.
s.

25.

(Éega

Éega

(Okás

Okás

(Okás

Okás

(Tega

Tega

(Tega

Tega

(Jibi

Jibi

Jibi

(Jibi

Jibi

Jibi

26.

Okási.

(joó:

(teg:

(het

(jib

sh

(hay

(arú

(kir

(ryo

(suk

(oká

ts

(Onéesan ni urú kótó ni shimáshita ka?) (Did you decide to sell it to older sister?)
 Iie. Onéesan ni uránái kótó ni shimáshita. No, I decided not to sell it to older sister.

25. Grammar (kótó to no) (also, no to kótó)

(Éega o míru kótó ga suki desu.)	(He likes to see movies.)
Éega o míru no ga suki desu.	He likes to see movies.
(Okáshi o tsukúru kótó ga suki desu.)	(He likes to make cookies.)
Okáshi o tsukúru no ga suki desu.	He likes to make cookies.
(Okáshi o tsukúru kótó ga joózú desu.)	(He is good at making cookies.)
Okáshi o tsukúru no ga joózú desu.	He is good at making cookies.
(Tegami o káku kótó ga joózú desu.)	(He is good at writing letters.)
Tegami o káku no ga joózú desu.	He is good at writing letters.
(Tegami o káku kótó ga hetá desu.)	(He is poor at writing letters.)
Tegami o káku no ga hetá desu.	He is poor at writing letters.
(Jibíki o shirábéru kótó ga hetá desu.)	(He is poor at looking things up in dictionaries.)
Jibíki o shirábéru no ga hetá desu.	He is poor at looking things up in dictionaries.
(Jibíki o shirábéru kótó ga hayái desu.)	(He is fast at looking things up in dictionaries.)
Jibíki o shirábéru no ga hayái desu.	He is fast at looking things up in dictionaries.

26. Progressive substitution

Okáshi o tsukúru no ga <u>suki</u> desu.	He likes making cookies.
(joózú desu) Okáshi o tsukúru no ga joózú desu.	He is skillful at making cookies.
(tegami o káku) Tegami o káku no ga <u>joózú</u> desu.	He is skillful at writing letters.
(hetá desu) Tegami o káku no ga hetá desu.	He is poor at writing letters.
(jibíki o shirábéru) Jibíki o shirábéru no ga <u>hetá</u> desu.	He is poor at looking things up in dictionaries.
(hayái desu) Jibíki o shirábéru no ga hayái desu.	He is fast at looking things up in dictionaries.
(arúku) Arúku no ga <u>hayái</u> desu.	He is a fast walker.
(kirai desu) Arúku no ga <u>kirai</u> desu.	He dislikes walking.
(ryokoo suru) Ryokóó súru no ga <u>kirai</u> desu.	He dislikes traveling.
(suki desu) Ryokóó súru no ga <u>suki</u> desu.	He likes to travel.
(okáshi o tsukúru) Okáshi o tsukúru no ga <u>suki</u> desu.	He likes to make cookies.

27. Substitution

Tanaka-san no káita hón desu.

(katta) Tanaka-san no káttá hón desu.

(mótte kita) Tanaka-san no mótte kita hón desu.

(yónde iru) Tanaka-san no yónde iru hón desu.

(káite iru) Tanaka-san no káite iru hón desu.

(tsukatte iru) Tanaka-san no tsukátté írú hón desu.

(wasurete itta) Tanaka-san no wasúrété íttá hón desu.

It's a book which Mr. Tanaka wrote.

It's a book which Mr. Tanaka bought.

It's a book which Mr. Tanaka brought.

It's a book which Mr. Tanaka is reading.

It's a book which Mr. Tanaka is writing.

It's a book which Mr. Tanaka is using.

It's a book which Mr. Tanaka went off forgetting.

28. Grammar (modifying no)

(Tanaka-san ga kakímáshita.)

(Kore desu.)

Tanaka-san no káita no wa kore desu.

(Mr. Tanaka wrote it.)

(It's this one.)

The one which Mr. Tanaka wrote is this one.

(Shímizu-san ga kaímáshita.)

(Sore desu.)

Shímizu-san no káttá no wa sore desu.

(Mr. Shimizu bought it.)

(It's that one.)

The one which Mr. Shimizu bought is that one.

(Tároo-san ga mótte kimashita.)

(Kore desu.)

Tároo-san no mótte kita no wa kore desu.

(Tarō brought it.)

(It's this one.)

This is the one which Tarō brought.

(Jíroo-san ga tábete imashita.)

(Kore desu.)

Jíroo-san no tábete ita no wa kore desu.

(Jirō was eating it.)

(It's this.)

It's this that Jirō was eating.

(Yamamoto-san ga tsukúrí máshita.)

(Kore desu.)

Yamamoto-san no tsukútta no wa kore desu.

(Mr. Yamamoto made it.)

(It's this one.)

This is the one which Mr. Yamamoto made.

(Yamada-san ga wasúrété íkímáshita.)

(Kore desu.)

Yamada-san no wasúrété íttá no wa kore desu.

(Mr. Yamada went off forgetting it.)

(It's this one.)

This is the one which Mr. Yamada went off forgetting.

(Tanaka-san ga míte imashita.)

(Kore desu.)

Tanaka-san no míte ita no wa kore desu.

(Mr. Tanaka was looking at it.)

(It's this one.)

The one which Mr. Tanaka was looking at is this one.

29. G

(Tanak
(Kore
Tanak(Shími
má(Kore
Shími
kō(Shími
má(íi ma
Shími
íi(Jíroo
(MínnáJíroo
de(Tanak
im(Éki n
Tanak
ék(Tároo
(ShimáTároo
Sh(Yamad
(HayáiYamad
ki(Matsú
ha(Kíree
Matsú
wa(Tanak
(óokikTanak
ki

29. Grammar (making one sentence with a modifier)

(Tanaka-san wa hón o kakímashita.)

(Kore desu.)

Tanaka-san no káita hón wa kore desu.

(Mr. Tanaka wrote a book.)

(It's this one.)

The book which Mr. Tanaka wrote is this one.

(Shímizu-san wa mánnénhitsu o kaí-mashita.)

(Kore desu.)

Shímizu-san no káttá mánnénhitsu wa kore desu.

(Mr. Shimizu bought a fountain pen.)

(It's this one.)

The fountain pen which Mr. Shimizu bought is this one.

(Shímizu-san wa mánnénhitsu o kaí-mashita.)

(Íi mánnénhitsu desu.)

Shímizu-san no káttá mánnénhitsu wa íi mánnénhitsu desu.

(Mr. Shimizu bought a fountain pen.)

(It's a good fountain pen.)

The fountain pen which Mr. Shimizu bought is a good fountain pen.

(Jíroo-san ga okáshi o mótte kimashita.)

(Mínná de tabémashita.)

Jíroo-san no mótte kita okáshi o mínná de tabémashita.

(Jirō brought some cookies.)

(We all ate it.)

We all ate the cookies which Jirō brought.

(Tanaka-san wa kaíshá ní tsútómete imasu.)

(Éki no sóba ni arimasu.)

Tanaka-san no tsutómete iru kaisha wa éki no sóba ni arimasu.

(Mr. Tanaka is working for a company.)

(It is near the station.)

The company for which Mr. Tanaka is working is near the station.

(Tároo-san wa éega o mí ni ikimashita.)

(Shimáguni deshoo.)

Tároo-san no mí ni itta éega wa Shimáguni deshoo.

(Tarō went to see a movie.)

(It's probably "Shimaguni.")

The movie which Tarō went to see is probably "Shimaguni."

(Yamada-san wa kishá ni norímashita.)

(Hayái kishá desu.)

Yamada-san no noftá kishá wa hayái kishá desu.

(Mr. Yamada boarded a train.)

(It's a fast train.)

The train which Mr. Yamada boarded is a fast train.

(Matsúmótó-sénsée wa Fúransugo o hanashimasu.)

(Kíree desu.)

Matsúmótó-sénsée no hanásu Furansugo wa kíree desu.

(Professor Matsumoto speaks French.)

(It's pretty.)

The French which Professor Matsumoto speaks is pretty.

(Tanaka-san ga uchí ó káimashita.)

(óokikute kitánái desu.)

Tanaka-san no káttá úchí wa óokikute kitánái desu.

(Mr. Tanaka bought a house.)

(It's large and dirty.)

The house which Mr. Tanaka bought is large and dirty.

30. Grammar (combining the sentences making the first a modifier)

(Tōkyōō-dāigaku to iimasu.)

(Daigaku ni hairimashita.)

Tōkyōō-dāigaku to yuu daigaku ni
hairimashita.

(Matsumoto to iimasu.)

(Sēnsē ga imasu ka?)

Matsumoto to yuu sēnsē ga imasu ka?

(Masao to iimasu.)

(Otōotō desu.)

Masao to yuu otōotō desu.

(Tōkyōō-eki to iimasu.)

(Ēki desu.)

Tōkyōō-eki to yuu ēki desu.

(Sūmisu to iimasu.)

(Amérikājin ni ātta kotō ga arimasu
ka?)Sūmisu to yuu Amérikājin ni ātta kotō
ga arimasu ka?

(Yamada to iimasu.)

(Depāato o mīta kotō ga arimasu ka?)

Yamada to yuu depāato o mīta kotō ga
arimasu ka?

(It's called Tōkyō University.)

(He entered a university.)

He entered a university called
Tōkyō University.

(He's called Matsumoto.)

(Is the teacher there?)

Is the teacher called Matsumoto
there?

(He's called Masao.)

(He's my younger brother.)

He's my younger brother who is
called Masao.

(It's called Tōkyō Station.)

(It's a station.)

It's a station called Tōkyō Sta-
tion.

(He's called Smith.)

(Have you ever met an American?)

Have you ever met an American
called Smith?

(It's called Yamada.)

(Have you ever seen a department
store?)Have you ever seen a department
store called Yamada?

31. Substitution

Taberu tokoro desu.

(iku)

Ikú tókórō desu.

(káeru)

Káeru tokoro desu.

(akeru)

Akérú tókórō desu.

(noru)

Norú tókórō desu.

(oríru)

Oríru tokoro desu.

(kaku)

Káku tokoro desu.

He's about to eat.

He's about to go.

He's about to go home.

He's about to open it.

He's about to get on.

He's about to get off.

He's about to write it.

32. Substitution

Benkyōō shité iru tókórō desu.

(tābete iru)

Tābete iru tokoro desu.

(káite iru)

Káite iru tokoro desu.

I am studying. (I am in the pro-
cess of studying.)

I am eating.

I am writing.

(kiit
(yōnd
(míte
(shir
(oshi
(aket
(shim

33.

Q. í
(T
A. í(Chic
íma
d
(Yoóf
íma
d(Góha
íma
(Deñw
íma
c(Shin
íma

34.

Fúne(deñw
(tábe(Tana
kii
(nága
(mijí
(háit
(déte
(tábe

35.

(Fúne
Fúne
(Deñw
Deñw

(kiite iru)	Kiíté írú tókóró desu.	I am listening to it.
(yónde iru)	Yónde iru tokoro desu.	I am reading it.
(míte iru)	Míte iru tokoro desu.	I am looking at it.
(shirábete iru)	Shirábete iru tokoro desu.	I am investigating it.
(oshiete iru)	Oshíeté írú tókóró desu.	I am teaching it.
(akete iru)	Akété írú tókóró desu.	I am opening it.
(shímete iru)	Shímete iru tokoro desu.	I am closing it.

33. Guided response

Q. íma náni o shité ímasu ka? (Tegámí ó káite iru.)	What are you doing now? (I am writing a letter.)
A. íma tegámí ó káite iru tokoro desu.	I am writing a letter now.
(Chichí to hanáshite iru.) íma chichí to hanáshite iru tokoro desu.	(I am speaking with my father.) I am speaking with my father now.
(Yoófukú ó tsúkutte iru.) íma yoófukú ó tsúkutte iru tokoro desu.	(I am making a dress.) I am making a dress now.
(Góhan o tábete iru.) íma góhan o tábete iru tokoro desu.	(I am eating dinner.) I am eating dinner now.
(Denwá dé hanáshite iru.) íma denwá dé hanáshite iru tokoro desu.	(I am talking on the telephone.) I am talking on the telephone now.
(Shimbún ó yónde iru.) íma shimbún ó yónde iru tokoro desu.	(I am reading the paper.) I am reading the paper now.

34. Substitution

<u>Fúne ga deta</u> tokoro desu.	The ship has just left.
(denwá ó káketa) Denwá ó káketa tokoro desu.	I have just telephoned.
(tábete shimatta) Tábeta shimatta tokoro desu.	I have just finished eating.
(Tanaka-san ni kiita) Tanaka-san ni kiitá tókóró desu.	I have just asked Mr. Tanaka.
(nágaku shita) Nágaku shita tokoro desu.	I have just lengthened it.
(mijíkaku shita) Mijíkaku shita tokoro desu.	I have just shortened it.
(háitte kita) Háitte kita tokoro desu.	I have just come in.
(dète itta) Dète itta tokoro desu.	He just went out.
(tábete mita) Tábeta mita tokoro desu.	I have just tasted it.

35. Grammar

(Fúne ga déru tokoro desu.) Fúne ga déru tokoro deshita.	(The ship is about to leave.) The ship was about to leave.
(Denwá ó kákéru tokoro desu.) Denwá ó kákéru tokoro deshita.	(I'm just about to telephone.) I was just about to telephone.

(Mádo o akérú tókóro desu.)
 Mádo o akérú tókóro deshita.
 (Gyuunyúú ó nómu tokoro desu.)
 Gyuunyúú ó nómu tokoro deshita.
 (Hón o shimaú tókóro desu.)
 Hón o shimaú tókóro deshita.
 (Jidóosha o oríru tokoro desu.)
 Jidóosha o oríru tokoro deshita.
 (Jibíkí o kaú tókóro desu.)
 Jibíkí o kaú tókóro deshita.

(I am about to open the window.)
 I was about to open the window.
 (I am about to drink the milk.)
 I was about to drink the milk.
 (I am about to put the books away.)
 I was about to put the books away.
 (I am about to get out of the car.)
 I was about to get out of the car.
 (I am about to buy the dictionary.)
 I was about to buy the dictionary.

36. Grammar

(To o akétá tókóro desu.)
 To o akétá tókóro deshita.
 (Mádo o shímeta tokoro desu.)
 Mádo o shímeta tokoro deshita.
 (Fúne ga déta tokoro desu.)
 Fúne ga déta tokoro deshita.
 (Utté shímáttá tókóro desu.)
 Utté shímáttá tókóro deshita.
 (Hón o káeshite shimatta tókóro desu.)
 Hón o káeshite shimatta tókóro deshita.

(I have just opened the door.)
 I had just opened the door.
 (I have just closed the window.)
 I had just closed the window.
 (The ship has just left.)
 The ship had just left.
 (I have just sold it.)
 I had just sold it.
 (I have just returned the book.)
 I had just returned the book.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

Matsúmótó Híroshi-kun no Hanashi

Uchi no tonari ni Tanáká tó yúu kázoku ga súde ite, Tanáká Jíroo-kun wa boku no gakkóo-tomodachi desu. Jíroo-kun no otóosan wa Toókýoo-eki no chikáku ni aru, óoki na kaisha ni tsutómete imasu. Jíroo-kun no otóosan to hanásu kotó wa amárá náí keredo, básu o mátte iru tokoro o tókidoki mimasu.

Boku to Jíroo-kun no itte iru gakkoo wa chikáku ni áru kara, bókutachi wa mainichi aruite ikimasu ga, toókú kara kúru tomodachi wa básu ya dénsha ni notte gakkoo e kimasu. Bókutachi ni eégó ó óshíeté íru sénsée wa Ámerika no daigaku de benkyóó shitá kótó ga áru kara, hoká nó sénsée yori eégó gá jóózú desu. Jíroo-kun no oníisan no Tároo-san wa, íma, daigákú nó gákúsée desu ga, daigákú o déte kara égo o benkyoo shi ni Amériká é ikú kótó ni nátte iru, tó Jíroo-kun ga itte imasu. Boku no chichí wa Fýransu e ikú kótó ni nátte ita keredo, shigoto ga isógáshiku nátta no de, ikánái kótó ni shimáshita. Íma káite iru mono ga hón ni nátte kara ikú hoo ga íi, tó chichí wa itte imasu.

Jíroo-kun ni wa Yúkiko-san tó yuu onéesan ga imasu. Yúkiko-san wa kekkón shité ite, Jíroo-kun-tachi to wa súde imásen ga, kodomo to isshe ni Jíroo-kun no uchi e asóbí ní kúru tokoro o tókidoki mimasu.

Boku no ane wa Yamada Hajime-san tó kekkón shitá tókóro da kara, kodomo wa imásen. Ané ní wa Ikeda tó yuu sukí na hitó ga itá keredo, chichí ya háha ga kekkón shínái hoo ga íi tó íttá no de, sonó hito tó wa kekkón shínái kótó

ni nátti
 no tóna
 áni yor
 Ból
 okáasan
 tsukúru.
 naráita
 Jí
 itte ir
 imasu.
 to isshe
 sukóshi
 no ni,
 kótó ni
 1. Lea
 2. Bec
 mon use

A. Sup

1. —

2. —

ni náttá n' desu. Konó kótó o shittá¹ no wa bōku ga benkyōo shite iru heya no tonari de chichī ya hāha ga hanáshite ita kara desu. Bōku wa Yamadá nó ani yori Ikedá-sán nó hōo ga sukī desu.

Bōku no hāha wa okāshi o tsukuru kotō ga hetá desu ga, Jíroo-kun no okāasan wa joōzū desu. Bōku wa Jíroo-kun ni, "Kimi nó okāasan wa okāshi o tsukuru no ga joōzū de, ii ne. Bōku no okāasan mo kimi nó okāasan kara naraitai to itte iru yo," to hanáshita kotō ga arimasu.

Jíroo-kun ni wa imōtō mo otōtō mo inai keredo, bōku ni wa gakkoo e itte iru Fumie to yuu imōtō to, gakkoo e itte inai Masao to yuu otōtō ga imasu. Fumie no itte iru gakkoo wa chichī no daigaku nó sóba da kara, chichī to issho ni densha ni notte ikimasu. Keredo, densha o ōrite kara Fumie wa sukōshi arukimasu. Hāha ga mōtto chikāku no gakkoo e itta hōo ga ii to itta no ni, ané mó itta gakkōo dá kara to itte², chichī wa Fumie o sokó ní irerú kótó ni shimáshita.

1. Learned
2. Because (To itte has this secondary meaning in addition to its more common use, "saying.")

EXERCISES

A. Supply the proper verb forms for the following blanks.

1. _____ kótó ga arimasu.

I sometimes travel.
 I sometimes don't use it.
 I once learned it.
 There was one time when I didn't understand it.
 I sometimes don't stop.
 There was one time when I didn't stop them.
 I once requested it.
 I sometimes eat it.
 There was one time when I didn't put it away.
 I sometimes don't walk.
 I once showed it to him.
 I had read it once.
 There were times when I hadn't come.
 There was one time when I hadn't come.
 I had heard it once.
 I had ridden it once.
 There was one time when I hadn't returned it.

2. _____ kótó ga arimáshita.

wa

ni
no
zū
ga,
to
a

i.

ii

omo
hāha
ótó

B. Use the proper form of kotó ni suru or kotó ni naru.

1. Chichí no kaisha ni tsutoméru _____.
I decided to work for my father's company.
2. Áni to ikú _____.
It is arranged that I will go with my older brother.
3. Ane wa Yamada-san to kekkón súrú _____.
It came about that my older sister would marry Mr. Yamada.
4. Máinichi beńkyóó súrú _____.
I make it a practice to study every day.
5. Ammari yasúsugítá kara kawánaí _____.
I decided not to buy it because it was too cheap.
6. Issho ni éega o mí ni iku _____.
It has been arranged that we will go see the movie together.
7. Básu ni wa noránaí _____.
I make it a practice not to ride busses.
8. Pán wa dasánaí _____.
It was arranged that we wouldn't serve bread.
9. Yokóhama-eki de oríru _____ deshoo.
It'll probably come about that we will get off at Yokohama Station.
10. Tanaka-san ni kikú _____.
Let's make up our minds to ask Mr. Tanaka.

C. Use the proper form of the verb before tokóro in the following blanks.

1. Deńwá ó _____ tokoro desu.
I just telephoned you.
2. Kinoo _____ tokoro desu.
I just read it yesterday.
3. Íma Tanaka-san o _____ tokoro desu.
I'm waiting for Mr. Tanaka just now.
4. Uchi o _____ tokoro e kimáshita.
He came just when I was about to leave the house.
5. _____ tokoro o dóomo sumímásén.
I'm very sorry to disturb you when you are talking.
6. _____ tokoro desu.
I've just gotten off.
7. _____ tokoro desu.
I'm just about to get off.
8. Nágaku _____ tokoro desu.
I just lengthened it.
9. _____ tokoro e kimáshita.
He came just as I had finished eating.

D.

1. Hí
2. Hí
3. Hí
4. Hí
5. Hí
6. Hí
7. Hí
8. Jí
9. Jí
10. Kí

11. K

12. F
13. H

14. M

- E. M
- 2) Dó

Examp

1. K
2. K
3. S
4. S
5. T
6. T
7. J
8. I
9. T
10. T

D.



1. Hiroshi-kun wa Kimiko-san o dōo yobimasu ka?
2. Hiroshi-kun-tachi wa Matsumoto Yoshio-san o dōo yobimasu ka?
3. Hiroshi-kun-tachi wa Matsumoto Toshie-san o dōo yobimasu ka?
4. Hiroshi-kun wa Matsumoto Yoshio-san to hanashite imasu. Kimiko-san no kotō o dōo iimasu ka?
5. Hiroshi-kun wa Jiroo-kun to hanashite imasu. Kimiko-san no kotō o dōo iimasu ka?
6. Hiroshi-kun wa Jiroo-kun to hanashite imasu. Fumie-sán nó kótó o dōo iimasu ka?
7. Hiroshi-kun wa Jiroo-kun to hanashite imasu. Masao-sán nó kótó o dōo iimasu ka?
8. Jiroo-kun wa Hiroshi-kun to hanashite imasu. Fumie-sán nó kótó o dōo iimasu ka?
9. Jiroo-kun wa Hiroshi-kun to hanashite imasu. Masao-sán nó kótó o dōo iimasu ka?
10. Kimiko-san wa otomodachi to hanashite imasu. Matsumotó Yōshio-sán nó kótó o dōo iimasu ka?
11. Kimiko-san wa otomodachi to hanashite imasu. Matsumotó Tōshie-sán nó kótó o dōo iimasu ka?
12. Fumie-san wa Hiroshi-san o dōo yobimasu ka?
13. Hiroshi-kun wa Jiroo-kun to hanashite imasu. Yamada-sán no kótó o dōo iimasu ka?
14. Matsumoto Toshie-san wa Matsumoto Yoshio-san to hanashite imasu. Hiroshi-tachi no kotō o dōo iimasu ka?

S.

E. Make modifying sentences out of the following, using 1) Dāre desu ka and 2) Doko desu ka.

Example: Kobayashi-san ga depāato de gōhan o tabémashita.

Depāato de gōhan o tábeta no wa dāre desu ka?

Kobayashi-san ga gōhan o tábeta no wa doko desu ka?

1. Kobayashi-san ga depāato de yoófukú o tsúkúrimashita.
2. Kobayashi-san ga Toōkyō-eki de kishā ni norimashita.
3. Shimizu-san ga Toōkyō-eki de shimbūn o kaímashita.
4. Shimizu-san ga daigaku de eego o benkyoo shite imasu.
5. Tanaka Taroo-san ga daigaku de Matsumotó-sénsée ni aímashita.
6. Tanaka-san ga jidōsha-gaisha ni tsutomete imasu.
7. Jiroo-kun ga gakko de sonó kótó o kikimashita.
8. Ikeda-san ga Amerika de eégó o naráimashita.
9. Tanaka-san ga eki kara denwa o kakémashita.
10. Taroo-kun ga Matsumotó-sán nó úchí ni wasurété kímashita.

F. Supply particles for the following blanks.

1. Yamadá ____ áni wa amari uchi é kímásén.
My older brother Yamada doesn't come over very much.
2. Gakúsée ____ Tároo wa benkyoo ____ isógashii desu.
The student, Tarō, is busy with his studies.
3. Isógashii tokoro ____ denwa ____ kakatte kimashita.
There was a telephone call when I was busy.
4. Tābete iru tokoro ____ mite imashita.
He was watching them eat.
5. Oshieté iru tokoro ____ narai ni ikimashita.
I went to the place where they teach it to learn it.
6. Tooi tokoro ____ sunde imasu.
They live far away.
7. Jidōsha ____ noru tokoro ____ Tanaka-san ga tomemashita.
Mr. Tanaka stopped him when he was about to get in the car.
8. Yamadá-sān ____ kaita hon wa kore desu.
The book which Mr. Yamada wrote is this one.
9. Sore o mita koto ____ arimasen.
I've never seen that.
10. Gakkoo de eego o naratta koto ____ arimasu ka?
Have you ever learned English in school?

G. Tell (ask) your friend:

1. if he's ever read the book written by Mr. Matsumoto.
2. that you have never ridden a bus in Japan.
3. that Mrs. Tanaka is good at making cookies.
4. that you don't like to speak in Japanese.
5. if he's ever met an American called Smith.
6. that Mr. Smith likes to study about Japan.
7. that you are poor at writing Japanese.
8. that you have decided not to buy that car.
9. that it has been arranged for you to work for Mr. Tanaka's company.
10. that you make it a practice to walk to school every day.
11. that Mr. Smith, Mr. Tanaka's friend, has just come from Kyoto.
12. that your older brother Yamada came just when you had finished eating.
13. that the child called Masao does bad things.
14. if he has ever seen the mountain called McKinley which is in Alaska.

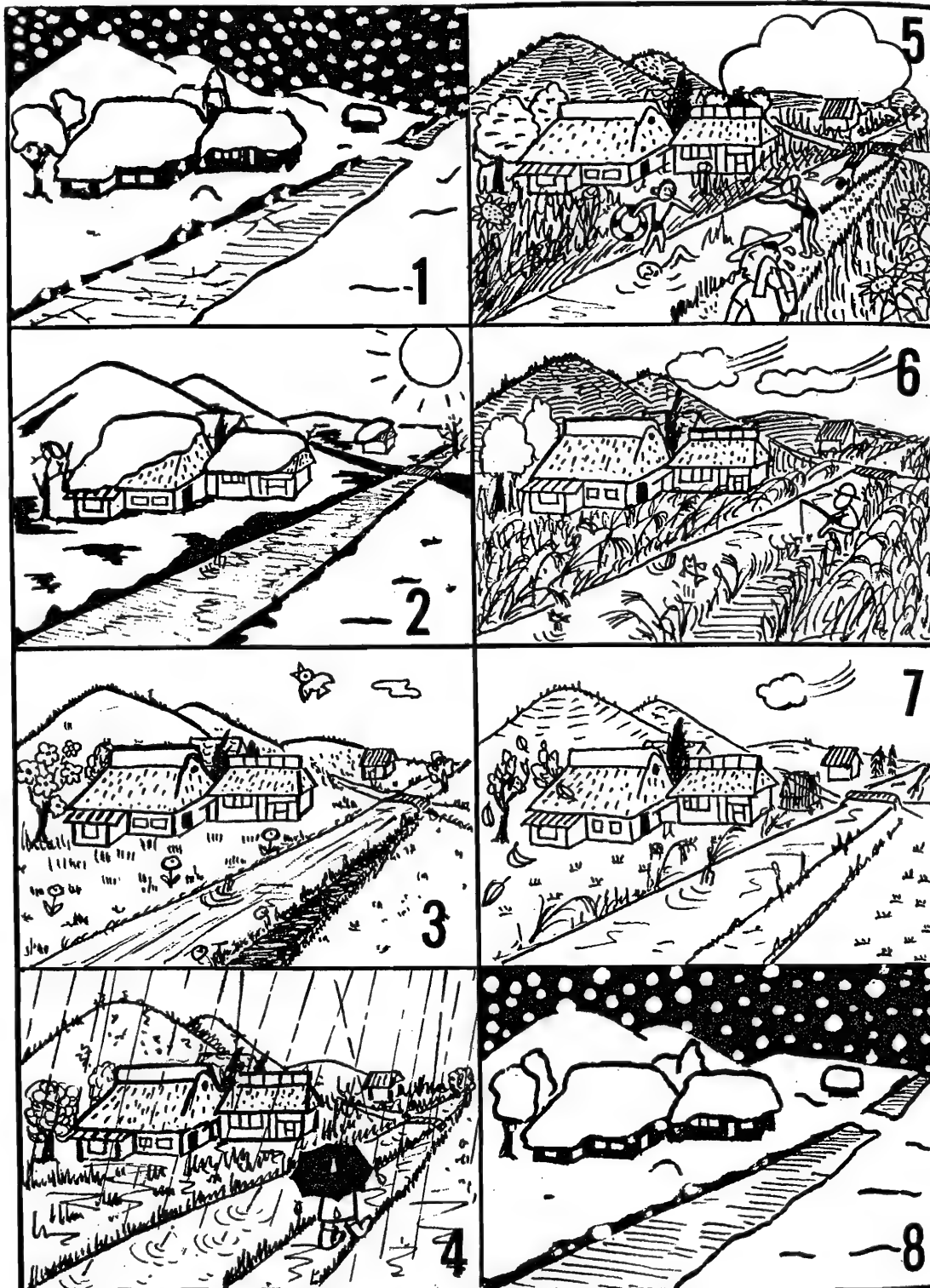
haru
 natsu
 aki
 fuyu
 asa
 hirū
 ban
 kyōnen
 kotoshi
 rainen
 ame
 yuki
 mizu
 atatakai
 (att)
 atsui
 suzushii
 samui
 tsumetai
 muzukashi
 yasashii
 sórosoro
 chotto
 moshi
 toki
 furu
 kimeru
 kimaru
 kangāeru
 nakunaru
 ikemasen

LESSON XI

haru
 natsu
 aki
 fuyu
 asa
 hiru
 ban
 kyonen
 kotoshi
 rainen
 ame
 yuki
 mizu
 atatakai
 (attakai)
 atsui
 suzushii
 samui
 tsumetai
 muzukashii
 yasashii
 sorosoro
 chotto
 moshi
 toki
 furu
 kimeru
 kimaru
 kangaueru
 nakunaru
 ikemasen

spring
 summer
 fall
 winter
 morning
 1) noon; 2) daytime
 evening
 last year
 this year
 next year
 rain
 snow
 water (used only of cold water)
 warm

 hot
 cool
 cold, [to feel] cold
 cold (to the touch)
 difficult, complex
 easy, gentle (of a person)
 slowly, gradually
 a moment, just, a little
 if, if by chance
 1) time; 2) when (when modified)
 to fall (as of rain, snow, hail)
 to decide (tr.)
 to decide (intr.)
 to think (tr.)
 1) to disappear, to be missing; 2) to die (intr.)
 it will not do (Form to be treated in Lesson XII.)



Hiroshi

Okáasar

H. Dév

O. Ée.

H. Be

O. Oh

H. Be

O. So

11.1

tives
ever,

EXAMPI
(1)

PATTERN PASSAGE

Hiroshi. Ashita yamá e itté mo íi desu ka?

Okáasan. Móshi áme nara, itté wa ikémásén yo.

H. Déwa, ashita áme dattara, tsugí no yasumi ni itté mo kamáimásén ne?

O. Ée. Kéredomo, sonna ni yamá e ikí-takereba, dóoshite natsu iká-nákatta n' desu ka? Samúi toki wa ikánái hoo ga íi deshoo. Shinakereba naranai benkyoo wa náí n' desu ka?

H. Benkyoo wa ohírúyasumi ni shité shímaímashita kara, arímásén.

O. Ohíru wa asóbéba íi no ni...

H. Benkyoo ga takúsán áru toki wa, gakkoo de suru to, mótto hayái n' desu.

O. Soo? Ashita ikú no nara, pán o katté kite kudasai. Sukí na okáshi ga áttara, sore mo katté kite mo íi desu yo.

Hiroshi. May I go to the mountains tomorrow?

Mother. You mustn't go if it rains tomorrow.

H. Then, if it rains tomorrow, you won't mind (it doesn't matter) if I go on the next holiday, will you?

M. No, I won't. But, if you want to go to the mountains so much, why didn't you go during the summer? Don't you think it's better not to go when it's cold? Don't you have any studying you have to do?

H. I don't have any because I finished my homework during the noon recess.

M. You should play during the noon hour (lit. if only you would play).

H. When I have lots of homework, it's faster if I do it at school.

M. Really? If you're going to go tomorrow, please go buy some bread. If you find any cakes you like, you may buy those, too.

GRAMMAR

11.1 Conditionals

(a) The informal and semi-formal non-past forms of verbs, verbal adjectives and the copula plus the conjunction to is a conditional meaning "when-ever," "when," or "if."

EXAMPLES:

(1) Fuyú ni náru to, yukí ga furi-masu.

Pán o míru to, tabétáku nari-masu.

Samúi to, áttákái mono o nomi-masu.

When(ever) it becomes winter, it snows.

When(ever) I see bread, I want to eat some.

When(ever) it's cold, I drink something warm.

Tanáká-sán désu to, shigoto ga
osói desu.

Áki iku to, kíree desu.

Yamada-san ga kónai to, komari-
masu.

(2) Hón de mita toki omóshirói
tokoro da to omóimashita ga,
itté miru to, soré hódó dé
wa arimasén deshita.

(3) Uchí é kaeru to, góhan o tabe-
masu.

Góhan o tábeta shimau to shim-
bun o yomimasu.

To o akeru to, déte ikimashita.

When(ever) it's Mr. Tanaka, the work
progresses slowly.

It it's Mr. Tanaka, his work is
(will be) slow.

When(ever) one goes in the fall,
it's pretty.

If one goes in the fall, it will be
pretty.

When(ever) you don't come, Mr. Yama-
da, we're in difficulty.

If you don't come, Mr. Yamada, we'll
be in difficulty.

I thought it was an interesting
place when I saw it in a book,
but when I went and looked, it
wasn't up to expectations.

When I return home, I eat my dinner.

When he finishes eating, he reads
the paper.

He opened the door and went out.

(When he opened the door, he then
went out.)

In the first set of examples above, the predicate is one of "habitual occurrence" or of a specific instance in the future; it has the meaning "whenever" or "if." In the second example, the reference is to a specific occurrence. In the third set of examples, the action in the resultant part follows the action of the conditional part immediately in time.

(b) Ra* after the informal and semi-formal perfective of verbs and of the copula and the informal perfective of verbal adjectives is a conditional meaning "when" or "if."

EXAMPLES:

Sonó jidóosha no ushiro ni
tométára, dóo deshoo?

Samukattara, ikímásén.

Tanáká-sán nó deshitara, íi monó
deshoo.

Kimétára, oshíété kúdásái.

Hakone e ittára, shímizu-san ni
aímashita.

Shirábeta mitara, tákakatta.

How would it be if you parked be-
hind that car?

If it's cold, I'm not going.

If it's Mr. Tanaka's, it's probably
a good one.

Please let me know when you have de-
cided.

When I went to Hakone, I ran into
Mr. Shimizu.

When I investigated, it was expen-
sive.

* Or its more formal equivalent -raba.

(c) The stem of a first-conjugation verb plus -reba, the stem of a second-conjugation verb plus -eba, and the stem of verbal adjectives plus -kereba have the meaning "if" or "when."

EXAMPLES:

Yóku mireba, wakarimasu.

If you will look closely, you will understand.

Háyaku kiméréba ii no ni...

It would be good if they would decide the matter quickly.

Empitsu de kákeba, mótto kakiyásúi to omoimasu.

I think it will be easier to write if you write with a pencil.

Tákakereba, kaímásén.

If it's expensive, I'm not going to buy it.

Tákaku nákereba, kaimasu.

I'll buy it if it's not expensive.

Soó súreba, ichiban hayái deshoo.

It would probably be the fastest, if you would do it that way.

Kinoo kúreba yókatta no ni...

If you had only come yesterday!

Katté mireba, omóshíroku náí hón deshita.

When I bought it and looked at it, it turned out to be an uninteresting book.

Kore ga okáshi de áreba ii no ni...

It would be good if this were a cake!

(d) Nára*, meaning "if it be," occurs after a noun, the noun no that is modified and the non-past of a verb.

EXAMPLES:

Bán nára, ikimasu.

If it's in the evening, I'll go.

Muzukashíi no nara, watakushi wa irimásén.

If it's a difficult one, I don't want it.

Watakúshí nó nara, mótte kite kudasai.

If it's mine, please bring it to me.

Shirábéru no nara, háyaku surú hoo ga ii.

If you're going to investigate it, the sooner the better (lit.--it's better to do it quickly).

Shirábéru nara, háyaku surú ga ii.

If you're going to investigate it, the sooner the better.

Kinoo sokó ní óitá no nara, áru deshoo.

If you put it there yesterday, it's probably there.

Ashita mótte iku no nara, kyóo katte okimasu.

If you are going to take it with you tomorrow, I'll buy some today.

* Or its more formal equivalent, náraba.

(e) The gerund of a verb, a verbal adjective, or the copula plus the particle wa has the conditional meaning "if" and is followed by a negative predicate or a predicate with a negative concept.

EXAMPLES:

Soóná ní tsúkátte wa komarimasu.

I shall be in difficulty if you use so much.

Tákakute wa komarimasu.

Koré dé wa yóku arímásén.

I shall be in difficulty if it is expensive.

This will not do. (If it is this one, it isn't good.)

The gerund of a verb, a verbal adjective, or the copula plus mo has the meaning "even if" or "even though." When the predicate which follows is íi desu or yoróshíi desu, permission may be indicated. (Note that in the latter case, the mo may or may not occur.)

EXAMPLES:

Chiísái no de mo kaimasu.

Anáta ga itté mo urímásén.

Tanaka-san ga itté mo urímásén deshita.

Sámukute mo ikimasu.

Kore o tábete mo íi desu ka?

Kore o tábete íi desu ka?
Deñwá ó kákenakute mo íi desu.

Osókute mo yoroshii.

Koré dé mo íi desu.

Minna tábete mo kamaímásén.

Even if it's a small one, I'll buy it.

They won't sell it even if you go [to buy it].

They didn't sell it even though Mr. Tanaka went.

I'm going even if it's cold.

May I eat this? (Is it all right even if I eat this?)

May I eat this?

You don't have to telephone. (It's all right even if you don't telephone.)

It's all right even if you're late.

This will do. (It's all right even if it's this one.)

Even if you eat them all, it doesn't matter.

11. 2 Usage of the various conditionals

(a) When the verb, verbal adjective, or copula of the second part is in the non-past:

to plus non-past
-ra plus non-past
-ba forms plus non-past

1) The to occurs with the meaning "whenever" when the non-past is in the sense of habitual occurrence.

2) With -ra, the action of the non-past occurs "when" the action of the first part has been completed.

3) With -ba forms, the action of the non-past will occur only "if" the first part occurs and it is not definite whether the action of the first part will take place or not.

EXAMPLES:

Iku to, kaimasu.

Ittára, kaimasu.

Ikéba, kaimasu.

Whenever she goes, she buys it.

When I get there, I'll buy it.

If I go, [then] I'll buy it.

232

(1
the per

1) The
ence o

It

K

*Ra
bel

2) Th
the fi
Englis

H

H

F

3) Th
part i

T

T

(
subjun
trary

EXAMPI
R

(b) When the verb, verbal adjective, or copula of the second part is in the perfective:

to plus perfective
-ra plus perfective
-ba forms plus perfective

1) The to, -ra, and ba forms occur with the perfective with the same difference of emphasis as in (a) above.

Imá máde wa yásukereba kaímáshita
 ga, takái to kaímásén deshita.

Until now, I used to buy it if it
 were inexpensive, but whenever
 it was expensive, I didn't.

Kiítára, wakárimáshita.*

When I asked, I found out.

*Ra of this category may also be interpreted in the meaning of category 3) below.

2) The to, -ra, and ba forms occur with the perfective when the statement of the first part is contrary to the actual situation; it is similar to the English subjunctive.

Háyaku kuru to yókatta (no ni)...

It would have been good if you had
 come early.

Háyaku kitára yókatta (no ni)...

It would have been good if you had
 come early.

Háyaku kúreba yókatta (no ni)...

It would have been good if you had
 come early.

3) The to and -ra occur with the perfective when the action of the second part is some unexpected occurrence.

To o akeru to Tanaka-san ga tátte
 imashita.

When I opened the door, Mr. Tanaka
 was standing there.

To o akétára Tanaka-san ga tátte
 imashita.

When I opened the door, Mr. Tanaka
 was standing there.

(c) To plus the conditionals of suru occur in the sense of the English subjunctive when the action of the conditional part is hypothetical or contrary to fact.

to suru to
 to shitára
 to suréba
 to surú nara

EXAMPLES:

Kyóoto e iku (to suru to
 to shitára
 to suréba
 to surú nara) itsu

If you were to go to Kyōto, when
 would you go?

ikímásu ka?

Kiku { to suru to } sensee ni
 to shitara
 to sureba
 to suru nara
 kikú hoo ga ii deshoo.

If we're going to ask it's proba-
 bly best to ask the teacher.

(d) Nara is interchangeable with dattara.

Hón nara, arimasu.

If it's a book [that you want], I
 have one.

Hón dattara, arimasu.

If it's a book [that you want], I
 have one.

Konó hón nara, yomímashita.

If it's this book, I've read it.

Konó hón dattara, yomímashita.

If it's this book, I've read it.

(e) When nara is followed by a verb in any form other than the perfective, the action of the first part is contingent on the action of the second part being performed earlier. (Compare with (a) and (b) in which the action of the second part is contingent on the action of the first part.)

Ashita dásu no nara, kyoo katté
 okímashoo.

If we're to serve it tomorrow, let's
 buy some today.

Okáshi o tsukúru no nara, gyunyuu
 ga irimasu.

If we're going to make cookies, we'll
 need milk.

11.3 Noun toki

Toki modified by a noun (plus na or no) or a verbal adjective has the meaning "at the time when" or "when" and refers to a span or period of time. Toki modified by a verb, either non-past or perfective, refers to either span of time or a specific moment.

EXAMPLES:

(a) Span of time

Chísái tóki, Toókýoo ní súde
 imashita.

I used to live in Tōkyō when I was
 little.

Denwá ga náakatta tokí wa, yoku
 tegami ó kákímashita.

When they didn't have telephones,
 they wrote letters a great deal.

Gakusee no tóki, yoku hón o
 yomímashita.

When I was a student, I often read
 books.

Kyóoto ni irú tóki, yoku aimá-
 shita.

When I was in Kyōto, I often used to
 see him.

Watakushi ga Kyóoto ni itá tóki,
 Tanaka-san wa Oósaka ní imá-
 shita.

When I was in Kyōto, Mr. Tanaka was
 in Ōsaka.

(b) Specific time

Ittá tóki, benkyoo shité imashita.

When I went, he was studying.

Okáshi o tsukútta tokí ni
 tsukátté shimámashita.

I used it up when I made the cookies.

Ikú tóki ni motte ikimasu.

I will take it when I go.

(Note that ni may or may not follow toki in its sense of specific time.)

11.4 C
 Th
 form of
 the mea

EXAMPLE

Ka

Ka

Ka

Ka

Ta

Ta

Ta

11.5 N

Th

ikémásé
 ing is

Ne

* This

EXAMPLE

Ta

Ta

Ta

Ta

Ta

Ta

Ta

When tl
 is "ha"

EXAMPLE

Ka

Ka

Ka

Ta

11.4 Conditional plus ikémásén or narímásén

The -ra form of a verbal adjective plus ikémásén (ikenai) and the -te wa form of a verbal adjective plus ikémásén (ikenai) or narímásén (naránai) have the meaning "it will not do if -----."

EXAMPLES:

Kattára ikémásén.
Katté wa ikémásén.
Katté wa narímásén.
Kángáezu ni kimété wa ikémásén.

Tanaka-san wa tábete wa ikémásén.
Tákakattara ikémásén.

Tákakute wa ikémásén.

You mustn't buy it.

You mustn't buy it.

You mustn't buy it.

You mustn't decide it without thinking it over.

Mr. Tanaka must not eat it.

It won't do if it is expensive. It must not be expensive.

It won't do if it is expensive. It must not be expensive.

11.5 Negative conditional plus ikémásén or narímásén

The negative conditional of a verb, verbal adjective or copula plus ikémásén (ikenai) or narímásén (naránai) has the meaning "must." The following is a chart of the various combinations.

Negative ConditionalNegative Verb

-nai to
-nakattara
-nakereba
-neba*
-nakute wa

ikémásén	
ikémásén	
ikémásén	narímásén
	narímásén
ikémásén	narímásén

* This is a shorter equivalent of -nakereba after a verb only.

EXAMPLES:

Tabénai to ikémásén.

You must eat it. You have to eat it. (If you do not eat it, it won't do.)

Tabénakattara ikémásén.

You must eat it.

Tabénakereba ikémásén.

You must eat it.

Tabénakereba narímásén.

You must eat it.

Tabéneba narímásén.

You must eat it.

Tabénakute wa narímásén.

You must eat it.

Tsumétákú nakereba narímásén.

It must be cold.

When the negative verb of the second part is in the perfective, the meaning is "had to."

EXAMPLES:

Kakánakereba narímásén deshita.

I had to write it.

Kakáneba narímásén deshita.

I had to write it.

Kakánakute wa ikémásén deshita.

I had to write it.

Tsumétákú shínakereba ikémásén deshita.

I had to make it cold. I had to ice it.

DRILL

1. Substitution

Máinichi suréba, joózú ni narimasu.

You will become good at it if you do it every day.

(beńkyóó súréba) Máinichi beńkyóó súréba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (kúreba) Máinichi kúreba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (hanáseba) Máinichi hanáseba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (kákeba) Máinichi kákeba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (yómeba) Máinichi yómeba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (tsukúreba) Máinichi tsukúreba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (naráeba) Máinichi naráeba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (noreba) Máinichi noreba, joózú ni narimasu.
 (déreba) Máinichi déreba, joózú ni narimasu.

You will become good at it if you study every day.
 You will become good at it if you come every day.
 You will become good at it if you speak it every day.
 You will become good at it if you write it every day.
 You will become good at it if you read it every day.
 You will become good at it if you make it every day.
 You will become good at it if you learn it every day.
 You will become good at it if you ride every day.
 You will become good at it if you attend every day.

2. Grammar (non-past to ba-type conditional)

(suru)	suréba	if you do it
(benkyoo suru)	beńkyóó súréba	if you study
(ryokoo suru)	ryokóó súréba	if you travel
(onagai suru)	onégái súréba	if you request it
(kekkon suru)	kekón súréba	if you marry
(kúru)	kúreba	if you come

(déru)	déreba	if you attend
(tabéru)	tabéreba	if you eat it
(miséru)	miséreba	if you show it
(shiméru)	shiméreba	if you close it
(obóéru)	obóéreba	if you learn it
(shirábéru)	shirábéreba	if you investigate it
(kańgáeru)*	kańgáéreba	if you think about it
(tsutóméru)	tsutóméreba	if you work for
(akeru)	akéreba	if you open it
(ireru)	iréreba	if you put it in
(oshieru)	oshíéreba	if you teach it
(wasureru)	wasúréréba	if you forget it
(kimeru)*	kiméreba	if you decide
(tomeru)	toméreba	if you stop it

* c

(míru)	míreba	if you look at it
(oríru)	oríreba	if you get off
(sugíru)	sugíreba	if you exceed
(iru)	iréba	if you stay

(hanásu)	hanáseba	if you speak it
(káesu)	káeseba	if you return it
(dásu)	dáseba	if you serve it
(káku)	kákeba	if you write it
(arúku)	arúkeba	if you walk
(oku)	okeba	if you put it down
(kiku)	kikéba	if you ask
(iku)	ikéba	if you go
(aku)	akéba	if it opens
(isógu)	isógeba	if you hurry
(asobu)	asóbéba	if you play
(yobu)	yobéba	if you call them
(naráu)	naráeba	if you learn
(áu)	áeba	if you meet
(omóu)	omóeba	if you think
(tsukau)	tsukáéba	if you use it
(kau)	kaéba	if you buy it
(yuu)	iéba	if you say it
(shimau)	shimáéba	if you put it away
(chigau)	chigáéba	if it's different
(motsu)	móteba	if you carry it
(mátsu)	máteba	if you wait
(yómu)	yómeba	if you read
(nómu)	nómeba	if you drink it
(yasúmu)	yasúmeba	if you rest
(súmu)	súmeba	if you live
(tsukúru)	tsukúreba	if you make it
(wakáru)	wakáreba	if you understand it
(áru)	áreba	if there is
(káeru)	káereba	if you return
(fúru)*	fúreba	if it rains
(komáru)	komáreba	if you are in difficulty
(háiru)	háireba	if you enter
(náru)	náreba	if it becomes
(nakunaru)*	nakúnaréba	if it disappears
(kimaru)*	kimáreba	if it is decided
(shiru)	shiréba	if you learn of it
(iru)	iréba	if you need it
(noru)	noréba	if you ride
(uru)	uréba	if you sell
(shinu)	shinéba	if it dies

* denotes verb introduced in this lesson.

3. Substitution

Fúreba íi no ní...

It would be good if it would snow!

(suréba) Suréba íi no ní...

It would be good if he would do it!

(Use second column of Drill 2)

4. Substitution

Háru ikeba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go in the spring.

(natsú) Natsú íkéba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go in the summer.

(fuyú) Fuyú íkéba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go in the winter.

(áki) Áki ikeba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go in the fall.

(ása) Ása ikeba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go in the morning.

(hirú) Hirú íkéba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go at noon.

(ban) Bañ íkéba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go at night.

(kotoshi) Kotóshí íkéba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go this year.

(rainen) Rainén íkéba, omóshírói deshoo.

It should be fun if you go next year.

5. Substitution

Háru de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were spring!

(natsú) Natsú de areba, íi no ní...

It would be good if it were summer!

(áki) Áki de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were fall!

(fuyú) Fuyú de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were winter!

(ása) Ása de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were morning!

(hirú) Hirú de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were noon!

(ban) Bañ de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were evening!

(áme) Áme de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were rain!

(yukí) Yukí de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were snow!

(mizu) Mizú de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were water!

(kotoshi) Kotóshí de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were this year!

(rainen) Rainén de areba íi no ní...

It would be good if it were next year!

6. Substitution

Kyónen suréba yókatta no ni...

(kyónen no háru) Kyónen no háru suréba
yókatta no ni...
(kyónen no áki) Kyónen no áki suréba
yókatta no ni...
(kyónen no natsú) Kyónen no natsú suréba
yókatta no ni...
(kyónen no fuyú) Kyónen no fuyú suréba
yókatta no ni...
(kinoo no ása) Kinoo no ása suréba
yókatta no ni...
(kinoo no hirú) Kinoo no hirú suréba
yókatta no ni...
(kinoo no ban) Kinoo no ban suréba
yókatta no ni...

It would have been good if we had
done it last year!It would have been good if we had
done it last spring!It would have been good if we had
done it last fall!It would have been good if we had
done it last summer!It would have been good if we had
done it last winter!It would have been good if we had
done it yesterday morning!It would have been good if we had
done it yesterday noon!It would have been good if we had
done it last night!

7. Substitution

Átsukereba komarimasu.

(sámukereba) Sámukereba komarimasu.
(tsumétákereba) Tsumétákereba komarimasu.
(atátákakereba) Atátákakereba komarimasu.
(áttákakereba) Áttákakereba komarimasu.
(suzúshikereba) Suzúshikereba komarimasu.
(muzúkáshike- Muzúkáshikereba komarimasu.
reba)
(yasáshikereba) Yasáshikereba komarimasu.
(táakakereba) Táakakereba komarimasu.
(yásukereba) Yásukereba komarimasu.
(fúrukereba) Fúrukereba komarimasu.
(atáráshikereba) Atáráshikereba komarimasu.
(asákereba) Asákereba komarimasu.
(fukákereba) Fukákereba komarimasu.

We'll be in difficulty if
it's hot.We'll be in difficulty if
it's cold.We'll be in difficulty if
it's icy.We'll be in difficulty if
it's warm.We'll be in difficulty if
it's warm.We'll be in difficulty if
it's cool.We'll be in difficulty if
it's difficult.We'll be in difficulty if
it's easy.We'll be in difficulty if
it's expensive.We'll be in difficulty if
it's cheap.We'll be in difficulty if
it's old.We'll be in difficulty if
it's new.We'll be in difficulty if
it's shallow.We'll be in difficulty if
it's deep.

(óokikereba)	Óokikereba komarimasu.
(chíisakereba)	Chíisakereba komarimasu.
(chikákereba)	Chikákereba komarimasu.
(toókereba)	Toókereba komarimasu.
(nágakereba)	Nágakereba komarimasu.
(mijíakereba)	Mijíakereba komarimasu.
(háyakereba)	Háyakereba komarimasu.
(osókereba)	Osókereba komarimasu.
(hírokereba)	Hírokereba komarimasu.
(sémakereba)	Sémakereba komarimasu.

We'll be in difficulty if
it's large.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's small.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's near.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's far away.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's long.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's short.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's early.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's late.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's wide.
We'll be in difficulty if
it's narrow.

(híro
(omós
(atár
(isóg

10.

(kimé
(kañg
(shit
(kitá
(tsut
(mitá
(orít
(haná
(kiki
(yobi
(yomi
(aitá
(iítá
(mocl
(tsul
(shi

8. Grammar (non-past to the -ba type conditional)

(atsúi)	átsukereba	if it's hot
(atátákái)	atátákakereba	if it's warm
(aftákái)	aftákakereba	if it's warm
(suzúshíi)	suzúshikereba	if it's cool
(samúi)	sámukereba	if it's cold
(tsumetai)	tsumétakereba	if it's icy
(muzúkashíi)	muzúkashikereba	if it's difficult
(yasashii)	yasáshíkereba	if it's easy
(takái)	tákakereba	if it's expensive
(yasúi)	yásukereba	if it's inexpensive
(oókíi)	óokikereba	if it's large
(chíísái)	chíisakereba	if it's small
(atárashíi)	atárashikereba	if it's new
(furúi)	fúrukereba	if it's old
(omóshírói)	omóshírokereba	if it's interesting

11.

(tab
(dér
(mis
(kañ
(ake
(kim
(mí
(sug
(iru

9. Grammar (negative non-past to negative -ba type conditional)

(átsuku nai)	átsuku nakereba	if it isn't hot
(atátákaku nai)	atátákaku nakereba	if it isn't warm
(aftákaku nai)	aftákaku nakereba	if it isn't warm
(suzúshiku nai)	suzúshiku nakereba	if it isn't cool
(sámuku nai)	sámuku nakereba	if it isn't cold
(tsumétákú náí)	tsumétákú nakereba	if it isn't icy
(muzúkashiku nai)	muzúkashiku nakereba	if it isn't difficult
(yasáshíkú náí)	yasáshíkú nakereba	if it isn't easy
(tákaku nai)	tákaku nakereba	if it isn't expensive

(sur
(ben
(kúr
(iku
(han
(kae
(das
(kák
(kik
(isó
(aso
(yóm
(nóm

(híroku nai)	híroku nakereba	if it isn't wide
(omóshíroku nai)	omóshíroku nakereba	if it isn't interesting
(atáráshiku nai)	atáráshiku nakereba	if it isn't new
(isógashiku nai)	isógashiku nakereba	if you're not busy

10. Grammar (to -ba type conditional of the desiderative)

(kimétái)	kimétákereba	if you want to decide it
(kaंगाétái)	kaंगाétákereba	if you want to think about it
(shitái)	shitákereba	if you want to do it
(kitái)	kitákereba	if you want to come
(tsutómétái)	tsutómétákereba	if you want to work
(mitái)	mítákereba	if you want to see it
(orítái)	orítákereba	if you want to get off
(hanáshitái)	hanáshitákereba	if you want to talk
(kikítái)	kikítákereba	if you want to hear it
(yobítái)	yobítákereba	if you want to invite them
(yomítái)	yomítákereba	if you want to read it
(aítái)	aítákereba	if you want to meet them
(iítái)	iítákereba	if you want to say it
(mochítái)	mochítákereba	if you want to carry it
(tsukúritái)	tsukúritákereba	if you want to make it
(shirítái)	shirítákereba	if you want to know it

11. Grammar (non-past to -ra type conditional)

(tabéru)	tábetara	when I eat
(déru)	détara	when I appear
(miséru)	mísetara	when I show it
(kaंगाéru)	kaंगाétara	when I think it over
(akeru)	akétara	when I open it
(kimeru)	kimétara	when I decide about it
(míru)	mítara	when I see it
(sugíru)	súgitara	when it exceeds
(iru)	itara	when I'm here

(suru)	shitára	when I do it
(benkyoo suru)	benkyóó shitára	when I study
(kúru)	kitára	when I come
(iku)	ittára	when I go
(hanásu)	hanáshitara	when I speak
(káesu)	kaeshitara	when I return it
(dásu)	dáshitara	when I mail it
(kaku)	káitara	when I write it
(kiku)	kiítara	when I ask
(isógu)	isóidara	when I hurry
(asobu)	asóndara	when I play
(yómu)	yóndara	when I read
(nómu)	nóndara	when I drink

(yasúmu)	yasúndara
(súmu)	súndara
(mótsu)	móttara
(matsu)	máttara
(áu)	áttara
(omóu)	omóttara
(tsukau)	tsukáttara
(yuu)	íttara
(áru)	áttara
(wakáru)	wakáttara
(fúru)	fúttara
(komáru)	komáttara
(náru)	náttara
(nakunaru)	nakúnáttara
(kimaru)	kimáttara
(shiru)	shíttara
(háiru)	háittara

when I rest
when I live
when I carry
when I wait
when I meet
when I think
when I use
when I say
when there is
when I understand
when it rains
when I'm in difficulty
when it becomes
when it disappears
when it is decided
when I learn of it
when I enter

12. Substitution

Kitára wakarimasu.

(shitára)	Shítára wakarimasu.
(mítara)	Mítara wakarimasu.
(tábetara)	Tábetara wakarimasu.
(hanáshitara)	Hanáshitara wakarimasu.
(káitara)	Káitara wakarimasu.
(kiítára)	Kiítára wakarimasu.
(áttara)	Áttara wakarimasu.
(tsukáttára)	Tsukáttára wakarimasu.
(íttára)	Íttára wakarimasu.
(íttára)	Íttára wakarimasu.
(yóndara)	Yóndara wakarimasu.
(súndara)	Súndara wakarimasu.
(móttara)	Móttara wakarimasu.

When you come, you'll understand.

When you do it, you'll understand.
When you see it, you'll understand.
When you eat it, you'll understand.
When you speak [with him], you'll understand.
When I write it, you'll understand.
When you hear it, you'll understand.
When you meet him, you'll understand.
When you use it, you'll understand.
When you go, you'll understand.
When I say it, you'll understand.
When you read it, you'll understand.
When you live there, you'll understand.
When you pick it up, you'll understand.

13. Substitution

Íttára yókatta no ni...

(kiítára) Kiítára yókatta no ni...

It would have been good if you had gone!

It would have been good if you had asked!

(tái

(kit

(hái

(yas

(mát

(átt

(kaí

(isó

14.

(Uch
Uch(Hak
Hak(Hōr
Hōr(Den
Den(Dai
Dai

15.

(muz
(yas
(ats
(sam
(tsu
(suz
(atá
(aft
(omó
(atá
(isó
(too
(chi

(tábetara)	Tábetara yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had eaten it!
(kitára)	Kitára yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had come!
(háittara)	Háittara yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had joined!
(yasúndara)	Yasúndara yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had taken a holiday!
(máttara)	Máttara yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had waited!
(áttara)	Áttara yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had met him!
(kattára)	Kattára yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had bought it!
(isóidara)	Isóidara yókatta no ni...	It would have been good if you had hurried!

14. Grammar and substitution

d.	(Uchi e káeru.)	(I return home.)
	Uchi e káettara, Tanáká-sán gá ímáshita.	When I returned home, Mr. Tanaka was there.
nd.	(Hakone e iku.)	(I go to Hakone.)
and.	Hakone e íttára, Tanáká-sán gá ímáshita.	When I went to Hakone, Mr. Tanaka was there.
and.	(Hónya e iku.)	(I go to the bookstore.)
ll	Hónya e íttára, Tanáká-sán gá ímáshita.	When I went to the bookstore, Mr. Tanaka was there.
and.	(Denwa o kakéru.)	(I telephone.)
	Denwa o káketara, Tanáká-sán gá ímáshita.	When I telephoned, Mr. Tanaka was there.
-	(Daigaku ni déru.)	(I appear at the university.)
and.	Daigaku ni détara, Tanáká-sán gá ímáshita.	When I appeared at the university, Mr. Tanaka was there.
d.		

15. Grammar (to ra-type conditional)

er-	(muzúkashíi)	muzúkashikattara	when it's difficult
er-	(yasashii)	yasashikattara	when it's easy
	(atsúi)	átsukattara	when it's hot
	(samúi)	sámukattara	when it's cold
	(tsumetai)	tsumétákattara	when it's icy
	(suzúshíi)	suzúshikattara	when it's cool
had	(atátákái)	atátákakattara	when it's warm
	(attákái)	attákakattara	when it's warm
	(omóshírói)	omóshírokattara	when it's interesting
had	(atárashíi)	atárashikattara	when it's new
	(isógáshíi)	isógáshikattara	when one is busy
	(tooi)	toókattara	when it's far away
	(chikái)	chikákattara	when it's near.

(chíísái)
(oókíi)

chíísakattara
óokikattara

when it's small
when it's large

(Ban
(Suz
Ban

16. Substitution

Tákakattara, kaímásén.

If it's expensive, I won't buy it.

(óokikattara) Óokikattara, kaímásén.
(fúrukattara) Fúrukattara, kaímásén.
(chíísakattara) Chíísakattara, kaímásén.
(toókattara) Toókattara, kaímásén.
(nágakattara) Nágakattara, kaímásén.
(mijíakattara) Mijíakattara, kaímásén.

If it's large, I won't buy it.
If it's old, I won't buy it.
If it's small, I won't buy it.
If it's far away, I won't buy it.
If it's long, I won't buy it.
If it's short, I won't buy it.

(Ása
(Sám
Ása

(Amm
(Wak
Amm

(Yuk
(Kír
Yuk

17. Substitution

Muzúkashiku nákattara shimasu.

I'll do it, if it's not difficult.

(átsuku) Átsuku nákattara shimasu.
(attákaku) Attákaku nákattara shimasu.
(sámuku) Sámuku nákattara shimasu.
(isógashiku) Isógashiku nákattara shimasu.
(osoku) Osókú nákattara shimasu.

I'll do it, if it's not hot.
I'll do it, if it's not warm.
I'll do it, if it's not cold.
I'll do it, if I'm not busy.
I'll do it, if it's not late.

(Áki
(Kír
Áki

(Tsu
(Kom
Tsu

(Ats
(Íkí
Ats

18. Combine the following sentences using to, the conditional.

(Háru ni narimasu.)
(Attákaku narimasu.)
Háru ni náru to, attákaku narimasu.

(It becomes spring.)
(It becomes warm.)
When it becomes spring, it becomes warm.

(Sam
(Yuk
Sam

(Natsú ni narimasu.)
(Átsuku narimasu.)
Natsú ni náru to, átsuku narimasu.

(It becomes summer.)
(It becomes hot.)
When it becomes summer, it becomes hot.

(Muz
(Omó
Muz

(Áki ni narimasu.)
(Suzúshiku narimasu.)
Áki ni náru to, suzúshiku narimasu.

(It becomes fall.)
(It becomes cool.)
When it becomes fall, it becomes cool.

(Miz
(Kom
Miz

(Fuyú ni narimasu.)
(Sámuku narimasu.)
Fuyú ni náru to, sámuku narimasu.

(It becomes winter.)
(It becomes cold.)
When it becomes winter, it becomes cold.

(Jib
(Kom
Jib

(Hirú ni narimasu.)
(Attákaku narimasu.)
Hirú ni náru to, attákaku narimasu.

(It becomes noon.)
(It becomes warm.)
When it becomes noon, it becomes warm.

(Mim
(Wak
Mim

(Ban ni narimasu.)
 (Suzúshiku narimasu.)
 Bañ ní naru to, suzúshiku narimasu.

(Ása ni narimasu.)
 (Sámuku narimasu.)
 Ása ni naru to, sámuku narimasu.

(Ammari kangaemasu.)
 (Wakáranaku narimasu.)
 Ammári kángáeru to, wakáranaku narimasu.

(Yukí ga furimasu.)
 (Kíree desu.)
 Yukí ga fúru to, kíree desu.

(Áki ikimasu.)
 (Kíree desu.)
 Áki iku to, kíree desu.

(Tsumetai desu.)
 (Komarimasu.)
 Tsumetai to, komarimasu.

(Atsúi desu.)
 (Ikímásén.)
 Atsúi to, ikímásén.

(Samúi desu.)
 (Yukí ga furimasu.)
 Samúi to, yukí ga furimasu.

(Muzúkashíi desu.)
 (Omóshíroku arímásén.)
 Muzúkashíi to, omóshíroku arímásén.

(Mizu ga arímásén.)
 (Komarimasu.)
 Mizu ga nai to, komarimasu.

(Jibíkí ga arímásén.)
 (Komarimasu.)
 Jibíkí ga nai to, komarimasu.

(Mimásén.)
 (Wakárimásén.)
 Minai to, wakárimásén.

(It becomes evening.)
 (It becomes cool.)
 When it becomes evening, it be-
 comes cool.

(It becomes morning.)
 (It becomes cold.)
 When it becomes morning, it be-
 comes cold.

(I think about it too much.)
 (It becomes unclear.)
 When I think about it too much,
 it becomes unclear.

(It snows.)
 (It's pretty.)
 When it snows, it's pretty.

(I go in the fall.)
 (It's pretty.)
 When I go in the fall, it's pret-
 ty.

(It's icy.)
 (I'm in difficulty.)
 When it's icy, I'm in difficulty.

(It's hot.)
 (I don't go.)
 When it's hot, I don't go.

(It's cold.)
 (It snows.)
 When it's cold, it snows.

(It's difficult.)
 (It's not fun.)
 When it's difficult, it's not fun.

(There isn't any water.)
 (We're in difficulty.)
 When there isn't any water, we're
 in difficulty.

(I don't have a dictionary.)
 (I'm in difficulty.)
 When I don't have a dictionary,
 I'm in difficulty.

(I don't see it.)
 (I don't understand it.)
 When I don't see it, I don't un-
 derstand it. (Unless I see
 it, I don't understand it.)

(Sámuku arímásén.)
 (Yukí ga furímásén.)
 Sámuku náí to, yukí ga furímásén.

(Atáráshiku arímásén.)
 (Kaímásén.)
 Atáráshiku náí to, kaímásén.

(It isn't cold.)
 (It doesn't snow.)
 When it isn't cold, it doesn't snow.
 (It isn't fresh.)
 (I don't buy it.)
 When it isn't fresh, I don't buy it.

19. Expansion.

Bósuton wa fuyú ni náru to, yukí ga furimasu.

(yukí ga furimasu) Yukí ga furimasu.

(fuyú ni náru to) Fuyú ni náru to, yukí ga furimasu.

(Bósuton wa) Bósuton wa fuyú ni náru to, yukí ga furimasu.

In Boston, when winter comes, it snows.

It snows.

When winter comes, it snows.

In Boston, when winter comes, it snows.

Nihon no yamá wa áki ni náru to, kíree desu.

(kíree desu) Kíree desu.

(áki ni náru to) Áki ni náru to, kíree desu.

(Nihon no yamá wa) Nihon no yamá wa áki ni náru to, kíree desu.

Japanese mountains are pretty when autumn comes.

It's pretty.

It's pretty when autumn comes.

Japanese mountains are pretty when autumn comes.

Tookyoo wa atsúi kara, natsú ni náru to, yamá e ikimasu.

(yamá e iki-masu) Yamá e ikimasu.

(natsú ni náru to) Natsú ni náru to, yamá e ikimasu.

(atsúi kara) Atsúi kara, natsú ni náru to, yamá e ikimasu.

(Tookyoo wa) Tookyoo wa atsúi kara, natsú ni náru to, yamá e iki-masu.

Because it's hot in Tōkyō, when summer comes, I go to the mountains.

I go to the mountains.

When summer comes, I go to the mountains.

Because it's hot, when summer comes, I go to the mountains.

Because it's hot in Tōkyō, when summer comes, I go to the mountains.

Mizu

(haí
arí
(tsu

(miz

Asok

(yók
nar
(oit

(asol

20.

Ochá

(pán
(shi
(miz
(emp
(tak

(yas
(wat
(no
(Tan
san

21.

Mósh

(mót

(tab

(tsu

(kúr

(hos

Mizu ga tsumetai to, haírítáku arímásén.

I don't like to get in then the water's cold.

(haírítáku arímásén)

Haírítáku arímásén.

I don't like to get in.

(tsumetai to)

Tsumetai to, haírítáku arímásén.

When it's cold, I don't like to get in.

(mizu ga)

Mizu ga tsumetai to, haírítáku arímásén.

When the water's cold, I don't like to get in.

Asoko ni oite oku to, yóku nakunarimasu.

When I leave things there, they often disappear.

(yóku naku-narimasu)

Yóku nakunarimasu.

They often disappear.

(oite oku to)

Oite oku to, yóku naku-narimasu.

When I leave things, they often disappear.

(asoko ni)

Asoko ni oite oku to, yóku nakunarimasu.

When I leave things there, they often disappear.

20. Substitution

Ochá nára arimasu.

If it's tea, we have that.

(pán)

Pán nara arimasu.

If it's bread, we have that.

(shimbun)

Shimbún nára arimasu.

If it's a newspaper, we have that.

(mizu)

Mizú nára arimasu.

If it's water, we have that.

(empitsu)

Empítsú nára arimasu.

If it's a pencil, we have that.

(takái no)

Takái no nara arimasu.

If it's an expensive one, we have that.

(yasúi no)

Yasúi no nara arimasu.

If it's a cheap one, we have that.

(watakushi no)

Watakúshí nó nara arimasu.

If it's mine, it's here.

(Tanaka-san no)

Tanáka-sán nó nara arimasu.

If it's Mr. Tanaka's, it's here.

21. Substitution

Móshi áshita irú no nara, kátte kimasu.

If you're going to need it tomorrow, I'll go buy it.

(mótte iku)

Móshi áshita mótte ikú no nara, kátte kimasu.

If you're going to take it with you tomorrow, I'll go buy it.

(tabéru)

Móshi áshita tabéru no nara, kátte kimasu.

If you're going to eat it tomorrow, I'll go buy it.

(tsukau)

Móshi áshita tsukáu no nara, kátte kimasu.

If you're going to use it tomorrow, I'll go buy it.

(kúru)

Móshi áshita kúru no nara, kátte kimasu.

If they're going to come tomorrow, I'll go buy it.

(hoshíi)

Móshi áshita hoshíi no nara, kátte kimasu.

If you want it tomorrow, I'll go buy it.

- (tsukáitái) Móshi ashita tsukáitái no nara, If you want to use it tomorrow,
kátte kimasu. I'll go buy it.
(dashítái) Móshi ashita dashítái no nara, If you want to serve it tomor-
row, I'll go buy it.

22. Grammar (substitution of nára for dáttara)

- (Áme dattara, ikímásén.) (If it's raining, I'm not going.)
Áme nara, ikímásén. If it's raining, I'm not going.
(Rainén dattara, demasu.) (If it's next year, I'll attend.)
Rainén nara, demasu. If it's next year, I'll attend.
(Mizú dattara, nomimasu.) (If it's water, I'll drink it.)
Mizú nara, nomimasu. If it's water, I'll drink it.
(Háru dattara, kiree desu.) (If it's in the spring, it's pret-
ty.)
Háru nara, kiree desu. If it's in the spring, it's pret-
(Yokóhámá máde dattara, basu mo arimasu.) (If it's as far as Yokohama, there
are also busses.)
Yokóhámá máde nara, basu mo arimasu. If it's as far as Yokohama, there
are also busses.
(Oósáká máde dattara, hikóoki no hoo ga íi desu.) (If it's as far as Ōsaka, a plane
would be better.)
Oósáká máde nara, hikóoki no hoo ga íi desu. If it's as far as Ōsaka, a plane
would be better.
(Uchí kárá dattara, arúku hoo ga hayái desu.) (If it's from home, it would be
faster to walk.)
Uchí kárá nara, arúku hoo ga hayái desu. If it's from home, it would be
faster to walk.
(Gakkóó kárá dattara, arúkímashóo.) (If it's from school, let's walk.)
Gakkóó kárá nara, arúkímashóo. If it's from school, let's walk.

23. Substitution

Chóotto mátte mo íi desu ka?May I wait a little? (Is it all
right if I wait a while?)

- (míte) Chóotto míte mo íi desu ka? May I look at it a while?
(tábeta) Chóotto tábeta mo íi desu ka? May I eat a little?
(yónde) Chóotto yónde mo íi desu ka? May I read a little?
(kaŋgæte) Chóotto kaŋgæte mo íi desu ka? May I think about it a little?
(shímète) Chóotto shímète mo íi desu ka? May I close it a little?
(itte) Chóotto itté mo íi desu ka? May I go a little while?
(katte) Chóotto katté mo íi desu ka? May I buy a little bit?
(tsukatte) Chóotto tsukátté mo íi desu ka? May I use it a while?

248

24.

Q.
A.

(Chó

Ée.

(Chó

Ée.

(Chó

Ée.

(Chó

Ée.

(Chó

Ée.

(Chó

Ée.

(Chó

Ée.

25.

Sám

(át

(ts

(af

(os

(há

(ch

(tá

26.

Iká

(ki

(kó

(ka

(iw

(át

24. Response (asking and granting permission)

Q. Chóotto míte mo íi desu ka?

May I look at it a while?

A. Ée. Míte mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may look at it.

(Chóotto tsukátté mo íi desu ka?)

(May I use it a while?)

Ée. Tsukátté mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may use it.

(Chóotto ífté mo íi desu ka?)

(May I go for a short time?)

Ée. Ífté mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may go.

(Chóotto kangáete mo íi desu ka?)

(May I think about it a while?)

Ée. Kangáete mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may think about it.

(Chóotto mätte mo íi desu ka?)

(May I wait a while?)

Ée. Mätte mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may wait a while.

(Chóotto tábete mo íi desu ka?)

(May I eat a little?)

Ée. Tábete mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may eat [a little].

(Chóotto shímete mo íi desu ka?)

(May I close it a little?)

Ée. Shímete mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may close it.

(Chóotto oíte mo íi desu ka?)

(May I put it down a while?)

Ée. Oíte mo íi desu yo.

Yes, you may put it down.

25. Substitution

Sámukute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's cold?

(átsukute) Átsukute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's hot?

(tsumétakute) Tsumétakute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's icy?

(áttákakute) Áttákakute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's warm?

(osókute) Osókute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's late?

(háyakute) Háyakute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's early?

(chíisakute) Chíisakute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's small?

(táakute) Táakute mo kamáímasén ka?

You don't mind if it's expensive?

26. Substitution

Ikánákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?

Is it all right if I don't go?

(kiménákute) Kiménákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?

Is it all right if I don't decide it?

(kónakute) Kónakute mo yoróshíi desu ka?

Is it all right if I don't come?

(kawánákute) Kawánákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?

Is it all right if I don't buy it?

(iwánákute) Iwánákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?

Is it all right if I don't say it?

(átsuku náakute) Átsuku náakute mo yoróshíi desu ka?

Is it all right if it isn't hot?

(tsumétákú nákute) Tsumétákú nákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?
 (suzúshiku nákute) Suzúshiku nákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?
 (muzúkáshiku nákute) Muzúkáshiku nákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?
 (yasáshíkú nákute) Yasáshíkú nákute mo yoróshíi desu ka?

Is it all right if it isn't icy?
 Is it all right if it isn't cool?
 Is it all right if it isn't difficult?
 Is it all right if it isn't easy?

27. Substitution

Sámukute wa komarimasu.

(átsukute) Átsukute wa komarimasu.
 (óokikute) Óokikute wa komarimasu.
 (tákakute) Tákakute wa komarimasu.
 (yasáshíkute) Yasáshíkute wa komarimasu.
 (muzúkáshiku-te) Muzúkáshikute wa komarimasu.
 (fúrukute) Fúrukute wa komarimasu.

I'll be in difficulty if it's cold.
 I'll be in difficulty if it's hot.
 I'll be in difficulty if it's large.
 I'll be in difficulty if it's expensive.
 I'll be in difficulty if it's easy.
 I'll be in difficulty if it's difficult.
 I'll be in difficulty if it's old.

28. Substitution

Ifté wa narímásén.

(kángáete) Kángáete wa narímásén.
 (mátte) Mátte wa narímásén.
 (kátté) Kátté wa narímásén.
 (tsukátté) Tsukátté wa narímásén.
 (mísete) Mísete wa narímásén.
 (míte) Míte wa narímásén.
 (kiité) Kiité wa narímásén.
 (órite) Órite wa narímásén.

You mustn't go.

You mustn't think about it.
 You mustn't wait.
 You mustn't buy it.
 You mustn't use it.
 You mustn't show it.
 You mustn't see it.
 You mustn't ask.
 You mustn't get off.

29. Response (negative)

Q. Tábete mo íi desu ka?

A. Tábete wa ikémásén.

(shímete) Shímete mo íi desu ka?
 Shímete wa ikémásén.
 (utte) Utté mo íi desu ka?
 Utté wa ikémásén.

May I eat it?

You mustn't eat it.

May I close it?
 You mustn't close it.
 May I sell it?
 You mustn't sell it.

(kat

(not

(arú

(kii

30.

Tsum

(muz

(yas

(fúr

(toó

(nág

(mij

(áts

31.

(Tsu

Tsu

(Kaí

Kaí

(Was

Was

(Tom

Tom

(Ryo

Ryo

(Tab

Tab

(Dét

Dén

(Yas

Yas

(Yón

Yom

32.

Átsu

(tsu

(yas

(omó

(yás

(chi

(katte)	Katté mo íi desu ka?	May I buy it?
	Katté wa ikémásén.	You mustn't buy it.
(notte)	Nofté mo íi desu ka?	May I ride it?
	Nofté wa ikémásén.	You mustn't ride it.
(arúite)	Arúite mo íi desu ka?	May I walk?
	Arúite wa ikémásén.	You mustn't walk.
(kiite)	Kífté mo íi desu ka?	May I ask?
	Kífté wa ikémásén.	You mustn't ask.

30. Substitution

Tsumétákute wa ikémásén.

(muzúkashikute)	Muzúkashikute wa ikémásén.
(yasashikute)	Yasashikute wa ikémásén.
(fúrukute)	Fúrukute wa ikémásén.
(toókute)	Toókute wa ikémásén.
(nágakute)	Nágakute wa ikémásén.
(mijíakute)	Mijíakute wa ikémásén.
(átsukute)	Átsukute wa ikémásén.

It mustn't be icy.

It mustn't be difficult.
It mustn't be easy.
It mustn't be old.
It mustn't be far away.
It mustn't be long.
It mustn't be short.
It mustn't be hot.

31. Grammar ('must not' to 'must')

(Tsukútte wa ikémásén.)	(You must not make it.)
Tsukúranakute wa ikémásén.	You must make it.
(Kángaete wa ikémásén.)	(You must not think about it.)
Kángaénakute wa ikémásén.	You must think about it.
(Wasúreté wa ikémásén.)	(You must not forget it.)
Wasúrenakute wa ikémásén.	You must forget it.
(Tomété wa ikémásén.)	(You must not stop them.)
Toménakute wa ikémásén.	You must stop them.
(Ryokóó shíté wa ikémásén.)	(You must not travel.)
Ryokóó shinákute wa ikémásén.	You must travel.
(Tábeta wa ikémásén.)	(You must not eat it.)
Tabénakute wa ikémásén.	You must eat it.
(Déte wa ikémásén.)	(You must not attend.)
Dénakute wa ikémásén.	You must attend.
(Yasúnde wa ikémásén.)	(You must not take a holiday.)
Yasúmanakute wa ikémásén.	You must take a holiday.
(Yónde wa ikémásén.)	(You must not read it.)
Yomanakute wa ikémásén.	You must read it.

32. Substitution

Átsuku náí to ikémásén.

(tsumetaku)	Tsumétákú náí to ikémásén.
(yasashiku)	Yasashíkú náí to ikémásén.
(omóshíroku)	Omóshíroku náí to ikémásén.
(yásuku)	Yásuku náí to ikémásén.
(chikáku)	Chikáku náí to ikémásén.

It must be hot. (It won't do if it isn't hot.)

It must be icy.
It must be easy.
It must be interesting.
It must be inexpensive.
It must be nearby.

33. Grammar (to -nakereba narímásén)

(benkyoo suru)	benkyóó shínákereba narímásén	I must study
(ryokoo suru)	ryokóó shínákereba narímásén	I must travel
(kuru)	kónakereba narímásén	I must come
(taberu)	tabénakereba narímásén	I must eat
(kaंगाeru)	kaंगाénakereba narímásén	I must think
(shiráberu)	shirábénakereba narímásén	I must investigate it
(kimeru)	kiménakereba narímásén	I must decide
(kimaru)	kimaránakereba narímásén	it must be decided
(shimaru)	shimaránakereba narímásén	it must close
(kaeru)	kaéránakereba narímásén	I must return
(hanasu)	hanásanakereba narímásén	I must speak
(kaesu)	kaésanakereba narímásén	I must return it
(yomu)	yománakereba narímásén	I must read it
(yasumu)	yasúmanakereba narímásén	I must rest
(yobu)	yobánakereba narímásén	I must call them
(kiku)	kikánakereba narímásén	I must ask
(iku)	ikánakereba narímásén	I must go
(matsu)	matánakereba narímásén	I must wait
(yuu)	iwánakereba narímásén	I must say it
(au)	awánakereba narímásén	I must meet them

34. Substitution

Sórosoro ikánakereba narímásén.

We must slowly be [thinking of] going.

(kaéránakereba)	Sórosoro kaéránakereba narímásén.
(tsukúranakereba)	Sórosoro tsukúranakereba narímásén.
(kakánakereba)	Sórosoro kakánakereba narímásén.
(tabénakereba)	Sórosoro tabénakereba narímásén.
(naráwanakereba)	Sórosoro naráwanakereba narímásén.

We must slowly be [thinking of] going home.
We must slowly be [thinking of] making it.
We must slowly be [thinking of] writing it.
We must slowly be [thinking of] eating.
We must slowly be [thinking of] learning it.

35. Substitution

Atsúi toki ga arimasu.

There are times when it's hot.

(samúi)	Samúi toki ga arimasu.
(tsumetai)	Tsumétái tókí ga arimasu.
(suzúshii)	Suzúshíi toki ga arimasu.
(aftakái)	Aftakái toki ga arimasu.
(muzúkashíi)	Muzúkashíi toki ga arimasu.
(yasashii)	Yasáshíi tókí ga arimasu.

There are times when it's cold.
There are times when it's icy.
There are times when it's cool.
There are times when it's warm.
There are times when it's difficult.
There are times when it's easy.

252

36.

Au to(míru
(kaंग

(komá

(iku)
(kiku

37.

Gakus

(koda

(chi

(Kyóo
ita

38.

Itta(kit
(kae
(att
(kae
(not
(ori
(den
kák

39.

(Kik
(Dar
Kik(Ash
(Dok
Ask

36. Substitution

Au toki ga arimasu.

There are times when I meet him.

(míru) Míru toki ga arimasu.
(kańgaeru) Kańgaeru toki ga arimasu.There are times when I see it.
There are times when I think about it.

(komáru) Komáru toki ga arimasu.

There are times when I am in difficulty.

(iku) Ikú tókí ga arimasu.
(kiku) Kikú tókí ga arimasu.There are times when I go.
There are times when I ask.

37. Substitution

Gakusee no toki, yóku aímáshita.

I used to see him often when I was a student.

(kodomo no) Kodomo no toki, yóku aímáshita.

I used to see him often when I was a child.

(chiísái) Chiísái toki, yóku aímáshita.

I used to see him often when I was small (young).

(Kyóoto ni ita) Kyóoto ni itá tókí, yóku aímáshita.

I used to see him often when I was [living] in Kyóto.

38. Substitution

Itta tókí, kikímáshita.

I asked him when I went there.

(kita) Kitá toki, kikímáshita.
(káetta) Káetta toki, kikímáshita.
(átta) Átta toki, kikímáshita.
(káeshita) Kaeshita toki, kikímáshita.
(notta) Notta toki, kikímáshita.
(órita) Órita toki kikímáshita.
(denwá ó káketa) Denwá ó káketa toki, kikímáshita.I asked him when he came over.
I asked him when he returned.
I asked him when I met him.
I asked him when he returned it.
I asked him when he got on.
I asked him when he got off.
I asked him when I telephoned him.39. Grammar (making single sentences, using to suréba)(Kikimasu.)
(Dáre ni kikímáshóo ka?)
Kikú tó suréba, dáre ni kikímáshóo ka?(We will ask.)
(Whom shall we ask?)
If we were to ask, whom should we ask?(Ashita ikimasu.)
(Dóko e ikímáshóo ka?)
Ashita ikú tó suréba, dóko e ikímáshóo ka?(We're going tomorrow.)
(Where shall we go?)
If we're going tomorrow, where shall we go?

(Denwa o kakemasu.)

(Itsu kakémashóo ka?)

Denwá ó kákéru to suréba, itsu
kakémashóo ka?

(Kaimasu.)

(Dóre o kaímashóo ka?)

Káu tó suréba, dóre o kaímashóo ka?

(Tanaka-san ni onégái shímásén.)

(Dáre ni onégái shímásu ka?)

Tanaka-san ni onégái shinái to suréba,
dáre ni onégái shímásu ka?

(Kyóo ikánákute mo íi desu.)

(Kyóo náni o shimáshóo ka?)

Kyóo ikánákute mo íi to suréba, kyóo
náni o shimáshóo ka?

(Irimasu.)

(Kawánákereba narímásén.)

Iru tó suréba, kawánákereba narímásén.

(Tanaka-san ni misemasu.)

(Tanaka-san no tokóro e mótte ikána-
kereba narímásén.)Tanaka-san ni miséru to suréba, Tanaka-
san no tokóro e mótte ikánákereba
narímásén.

(I will telephone.)

(When shall I telephone?)

If I were to telephone, when
should I call?

(We will buy it.)

(Which one should we buy?)

If we were to buy one, which one
should we buy?

(We will not ask Mr. Tanaka.)

(Whom shall we ask?)

If we were not to ask Mr. Tanaka,
whom should we ask?

(We don't have to go there today.)

(What shall we do today?)

If we don't have to go there to-
day, what shall we do today?

(We will be needing it.)

(We have to buy it.)

If we will be needing it, we must
buy it.

(We will show it to Mr. Tanaka.)

(We must take it to Mr. Tanaka's
place.)If we are to show it to Mr.
Tanaka, we must take it to his
place.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

Kobayashi. Áa. Tanaka-san. Átsuku natte kimáshita ga, sórosoro natsúyásumi
no kotó o kangáénakereba narímásén ne.Tanaka. Ée. Hito no yóku ikú tokóro dattara, háyaku kimenai to, heyá ga
nakúnarímásu kara ne.K. Watakushi wa suzúshíi tokóro nara, úmi e itte mo yamá e itte mo kamái-
másén ga...T. Kyónen yamá e ittara, ásaban áme ga futte, omóshíroku nákatte kara, yamá
nara ikitaku arímásén ga, úmi e ikú no nara, watakushi mo íté mo íi to
omoimasu.K. Sonna ni mainichi fútte wa omóshíroku arímásén ne. Watakushi wa kodómo
nó tóki kara úmi ga sukí desu kara, watakushi mo úmi no hoo ga íi to
omoimasu.T. Ú
s
nK. I
tT. Á
dK. É
nT. S
NK. C
n
kT. F
F
N
iK. I
J
IT. A
rK. S
v

A. (

- T. Ūmi to ittē mo, hito no ikánái tókóro nó hoo ga ii deshoo. Kéredo, sōo suru to, kimérú no ga muzúkashiku narímasu ne. Izu no minámi nó hoo nara, chikakute ii n' desu ga...
- K. Izu wa fuyú wa atátakakute yuki mo furímasén ga, kyónen no natsu ittá tókí wa átsukatta desu yo. Atsúi toki ikú tókóro de wa arímasén.
- T. Áa, sōo desu ka. Niigátá nó hoo e ikéba, hito no inái tókóro ga áru deshoo ka.
- K. Ée. Kéredomo, Niigátá máde iku to, mizu ga tsumétái desu yo. Tsumétákú nakereba, ii tokoro na n' desu ga.
- T. Sōo dattara, kotoshi no áki ka rainen no háru, minná de ryokoo suru toki, Niigátá e ittára, dōo deshoo ka.
- K. Chotto sámukute mo yókereba, sonó hoo ga ii deshoo. Watakushi no ryokoo nó hón ga nakúnáttē shimáttá n' desu ga, anó hón ni iroiro káite atta kara, are ga áreba, kimérú no ga yasashii n' desu ga...
- T. Hoká nó hitótachi no kangae mo kikanákereba naranai kara, ashita no hiru Hara-san ni átta toki, kikanákute wa narímasén. Kobayashi-san wa móshi Nakamura-san ni áttara, Nakamura-san no kangae mo kiité óite kudasai. Áu tokí ga arímasu ka?
- K. Ée. Áu kotó wa arímasu ga, anó hito wa yasashíkute ii hito desu kara, yuu kotó ga kimatte imasu. Kiité mo kikanákute mo kamaímasén yo. Kimété kara hanáseba, soré dé ii deshoo.
- T. Ashita no hirusugi Akiko-san no uchi e hón o káeshi ni ikánákereba naranai n' desu ga, watakushi ga ikú tókí, ísshó ní íkímasén ka?
- K. Soó shíté mo ii desu ne. Akiko-san ni mo kiite narúbeku háyaku kiménákute wa narímasén ne.

EXERCISE

A. Give the various conditionals of the following:

-ra

-ba

-to

iku
yasumu
asobu
obóeru
kimeru
tsukau
komaru
isógu
káesu

noru
 shinu
 kuru
 motsu
 suru
 desu
 ookii
 takai
 atatakai
 tooku nai
 kakanai

B. Make single sentences of the following pairs of sentences by making ra and ba-type conditionals of the first of the pairs.

1. Ame ga furimasu.
Omóshiroku nai deshoo.
2. Shigoto ga takusan arimasu.
Kaisha ni osoku made imasu.
3. Depáato e ikimasu.
Iroíró nó monó ga hoshiku narimasu.
4. Ii yoofuku ga arimasu.
Kaímashoo.
5. Atsui desu.
Itte kudasai.
6. Denwa de kikimasu.
Wakaru to omoimasu.
7. Tabetai desu.
Katte kímashoo.
8. Isogashiku nai desu.
Ega o mi ni ikimasen ka?
9. Benkyoo shimasu.
Omóshiroku narimasu.
10. Tanaka-san ga kimasu.
Nihongo de hanasanakereba narimasen.

C. Change the following so that they will have the meaning "must." Change to the forms (a) nakereba narimasen and (b) nakute wa narimasen.

1. Kekkon shimasu.
2. Yoku kangaemasu.

3. E
4. S
5. K
6. S
7. T
8. E
9. A
10. E
11. E
12. E

D. A

1. i
2. i
3. i
4. i
5. i
6. i
7. i
8. i
9. i
10. i

E. I
kama

1. i
2. i
3. i
4. i
5. i
6. i
7. i
8. i

F. i

1. i
2. i
3. i
4. i
5. i
6. i
7. i
8. i
9. i
10. i

3. Kyōo kimemasu.
4. Sēnsēe ni onegai shimasu.
5. Kyōo no shimbun o yomimasu.
6. Sukōshi arukimasu.
7. Tanaka-san ni iimasu.
8. Hōn o takusan mochimasu.
9. Anō ēega o mimasu.
10. Kyōo tsukurimasu.
11. Furansugo de hanashimasu.
12. Hayaku kaerimasu.

D. Ask your friend:

1. if you may read it.
2. if he minds your going to see a movie.
3. if he minds if it isn't inexpensive.
4. if it's all right to take a holiday from school.
5. if it's all right to speak in Japanese.
6. if it's all right to make it now.
7. if it's all right for you to be studying there.
8. if it's all right to close the window.
9. if it's all right to wait here.
10. if it's all right to speak of it to Mr. Tanaka.

E. Respond to the following requests by (1) using in your answer, the phrase kamāimāsén and (2) denying the request, using -té wa ikémāsén.

1. Jibíki o mite mo íi desu ka?
2. Éega o mí ni itte mo kamāimāsén ka?
3. Kokó ní tómété mo íi desu ka?
4. Tsumétakute mo íi desu ka?
5. Ashita gakkoo o yasūnde mo íi desu ka?
6. Eego de hanāshite mo íi desu ka?
7. Tsukútte mite mo íi desu ka?
8. Minna tábete mo íi desu ka?

F. Tell your friend:

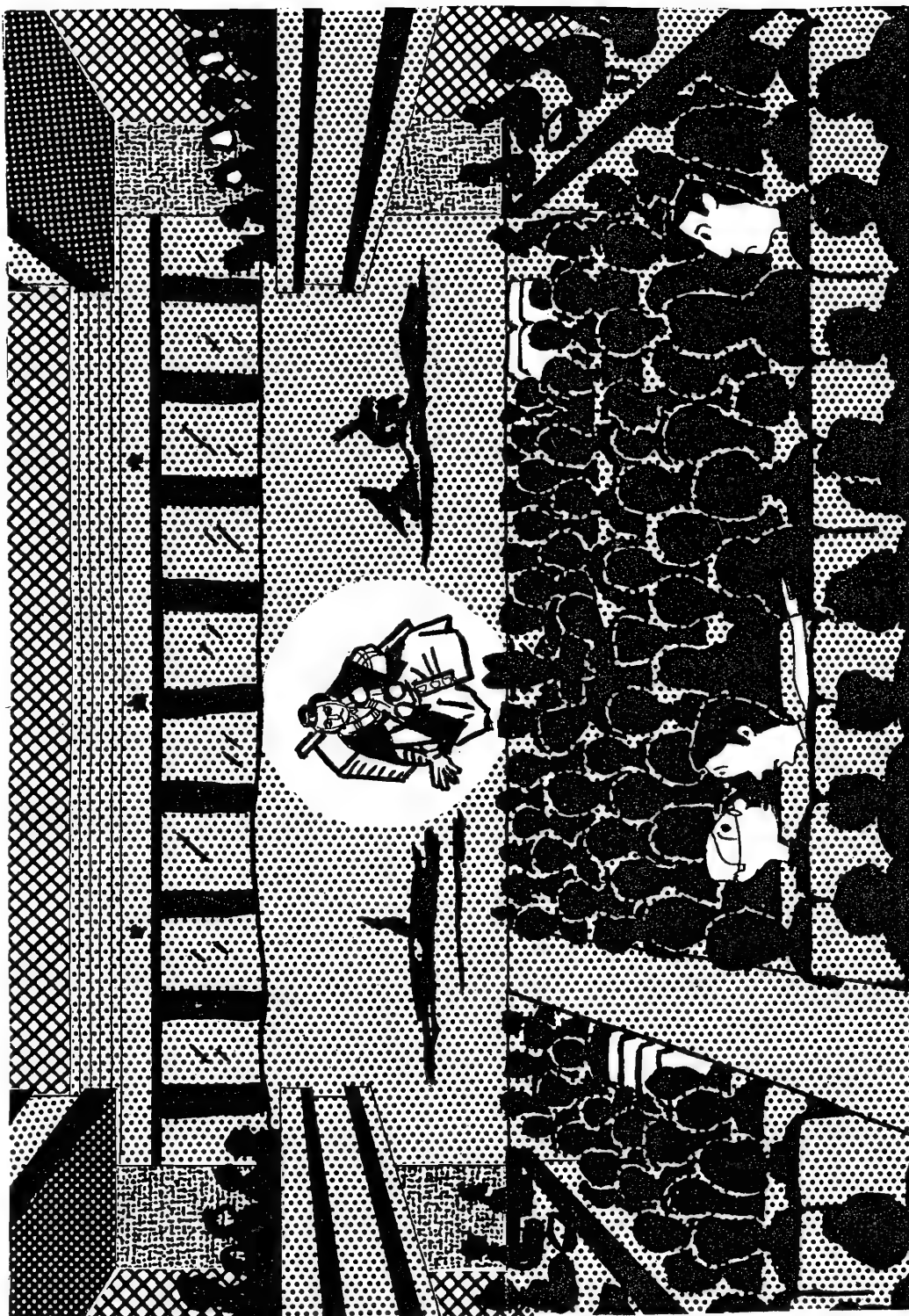
1. that you were a child when you lived in Kyōto.
2. that you were traveling at the time your father died.
3. that you didn't study very much when you were a child.
4. that at times when you're late, you go to school by taxi.
5. that if it's that book, you don't mind selling it.
6. that if Mr. Tanaka is coming tomorrow, you will buy some cakes today.
7. that it's probably pretty when it's autumn.
8. that if it's a large one, you have that, but that you don't have a small one.
9. that you will take it with you when you go.
10. that when Tōkyō is hot, you don't remain there.

LESSON XII

kippu	ticket
shibai	play (theatrical)
séki	seat
(o)tearái	toilet
(o)shimai	the end (from <u>shimau</u> , to finish)
migi	right
hidari	left
súgu	immediately, directly (of time and place)
kantan (na)	simple, easy
wariai (ni)	1) ratio, proportion; 2) relatively, rather
daibú	1) large amount; 2) greatly, quite
zúibun	very much, greatly
nakánáká	1) quite, very (with positive predicate); 2) hardly [for the time being] (with negative predicate)
totémó, tottémó	1) very, very much (with positive predicate); 2) not at all, not possibly (with negative predicate)
tábun	probably
kanarázú	definitely (with negative); without fail (with positive)
máda	still, yet
móo	1) already; 2) no more
moo	more (modifying a quantity word)
máde	even
sae	1) even; 2) only
dekíru	to be able, to be able to do (intr.)
kikoeru	to be audible (intr.)
miéru	to be visible (intr.)
hajimaru	to begin (intr.)
hajimeru	to begin (tr.)
owaru	to end, to finish (intr., but also used now as a transitive)
kakéru	to sit [in a chair] (intr. in this usage. In a more complete form, <u>koshi ó kakéru</u> "to hang one's hips [on a chair]," tr.)
suwaru	to sit (intr.)
tátsu	to stand up (intr.)
tanómu	to request (tr.)
urete shimau	to be sold out (intr.)

for
at
(e)

om-
a



PATTERN PASSAGE

Yamamoto. Benkyoo wa móo owárimáshita ka?

Jóonzu. Iie. Máda desu. Shinákereba naranai benkyoo ga máda arimasu.

Y. Démo kyóo wa móo yasúndara dóo desu ka?

J. Moó súkóshi shimasu. Máda nihóngó dé wa seńsée dáké to shika hanásénai n' desu yo. Kaimónó nó tókí de sae nihongo de iénai n' desu.

Y. Íma wa máda hanásénai ka mo shirémásén ga, móo sugu joózú ni narímásu yo. Sumisu-san de mo nihongo no benkyoo wa móo shitakú nai to máde itte ita toki ga arimáshita. Sono Sumisu-san ga íma de wa móo níkkí máde nihongo de kaku kotó ga dekimasu.

J. Watakushi mo shigótó sae nákereba, mótto benkyoo dekiru no desu ga...

Yamamoto. Have you finished your homework (studying)?

Jones. No, not yet. I still have some studying I have to do.

Y. But, how would it be if you [stopped] for today and went to bed?

J. I'll study a little more. You know, I can speak in Japanese only with the teacher. Even when I'm just doing some shopping, I can't say it in Japanese.

Y. You may not be able to speak it yet now, but you will become proficient soon. Even in the case of Mr. Smith, there was a time when even he was saying that he didn't want to study Japanese any more. And now, that Mr. Smith can write in Japanese even [in] his diary.

J. If only I didn't have work to do, I could study more, but...

GRAMMAR

12.1 Potential forms of verbs

(a) All verbs have a potential form "can" or "able to" in which the non-past positive of the verb modifies the noun kotó which is the subject of the predicate dekiru. Example: Verb plus kotó plus particle plus dekiru. Tense or mood is indicated through the conjugation of dekiru.

EXAMPLES:

Suwarú kotó ga dekimasu.

Suwarú kotó wa dekimásén.

Suwarú kotó mo dekimasu.

Suwarú kotó wa dekimásén deshita.

Suwarú kotó ga dekimáshita.

Tegami o kaku koto ga dekimasu.

Shimbun o yomu kotó ga dekimasu.

I can sit down.

I can't sit down.

I can also sit down.

I was unable to sit down.

I was able to sit down.

I can write letters.

I can read the newspaper.

(Note: Dekiru is the potential of the verb suru "to do." The form surú kotó ga dekiru is also possible, in the meaning "it is possible to do.")

the v
verb.

(Note
kiku
There

EXAM

(No
ver
(Th
for

12.

me

(b) Another potential form of a second-conjugation verb is the stem of the verb plus -eru. This potential verb is conjugated as a first-conjugation verb.

yóm-u	yom-éru	I read	I can read
yob-ú	yob-eru	I call	I can call
shin-ú	shin-eru	I die	I can die
kak-u	kak-éru	I write	I can write
isóg-u	isóg-éru	I hurry	I can hurry
tomar-u	tomar-eru	I stop	I can stop
mát-su	mat-éru	I wait	I can wait
dás-u	das-éru	I serve it	I can serve it
ka(w)-ú	ka-eru	I buy it	I can buy it

(Note: The potential of kiku "ask" or "listen" is kikeru; the potential of kiku "hear" is kikoeru meaning "be audible." The potential of yu is ieru. There is no potential form of wakáru.)

EXAMPLES:

Tegami o kakímáshita.	I wrote a letter.
Tegami ga kakémáshita.	I was able to write the letter. (The letter was writable.)
Tanaka-san wa shimbún ó yómímáshita.	Mr. Tanaka read the newspaper.
Tanaka-san wa shimbún gá yómé- máshita.	Mr. Tanaka was able to read the newspaper.
Tanaka-san ga ikimasu.	Mr. Tanaka will go.
Tanaka-san ga ikemasu.	Mr. Tanaka can go.
Dóko de kaímásu ka?	Where do you buy it?
Dóko de kaémásu ka?	Where can you buy it?
Tanaka-san ni tanómímáshita.	I made the request of Mr. Tanaka.
Tanaka-san ni tanómémáshita.	I was able to make the request of Mr. Tanaka.

(Note that in the first two sets of examples, the objects of the ordinary verbs become the subjects of the corresponding potential verbs.)
(The passive form also has a potential usage; it is the alternate potential form for first-conjugation verbs. See Lesson XVIII.)

12.2 Móo and Máda

Móo and máda are modifiers of verbs. They have the following various meanings.

	<u>With A</u> <u>Positive Verb</u>	<u>With A</u> <u>Negative Verb</u>
móo	already (done) (will be done) soon	(not do it) any more (not do it) any longer
máda	still, yet	not yet

EXAMPLES:

Positive verb

Móo owárimáshita.

It's finished already.

Móo tátte imasu.

He is standing already.

Móo hajimarimasu.

It will begin soon.

Máda arimasu.

There are still [more].

Máda tátte imasu.

He's still standing.

Máda kakénakereba narimasen.

I must still make [more] telephone calls.

(Positive meaning)

Máda desu.

It's not [ready] yet.

Negative verb

Móo asókó é wa ikímásén.

I'm not going to go there any more.

Móo fútte imasen.

It isn't raining any more.

Móo sonná kótó o shité wa ikémásén.

You mustn't do such a thing any more.

Máda owárimásén.

It hasn't ended yet.

Máda kaíte arimasen.

It isn't written yet.

Máda shité árimásén deshita.

It hadn't been done yet.

(Note that máda occurs as a noun before désu but that móo does not.)12.3 MooMoo (as compared with móo above) modifies a noun of quantity with the meaning "more."

EXAMPLES:

Moó súkóshi kudasai.

Please give me a little more.

Moó hitótsu kudasai.

Please give me one more.

Moó súkóshi kakénakereba narimasen.

I must write a little more.

Compare the following three examples.

Motto tabémashita.

I ate more.

Moó súkóshi tabémashita.

I ate a little more.

Móo takúsán tabémashita.

I've eaten a lot already.

sae
mean12.4 Ka mo shiremasen (shirenai)Ka mo shiremasen (shirenai) occurs after the informal non-past and perfective of verbs and verbal adjectives, after nouns, and after datta or deshita; it has the meaning "may," "might," or "may be."

EXAMPLES:

Háyaku owáru ká mo shiremasen.

It may end early.

Denwa ó kakénai ka mo shiremasen.

They may not telephone.

Moó súkóshi oókii ka mo shirenai.

It may be a little larger.

Tanáká-sán ká mo shirenai.

It may be Mr. Tanaka.

Tanáká-sán datta ka mo shiremasen.

It may have been Mr. Tanaka.

12.5

anot
or o
EXAMoccu
nomi
not

EXAM

Motto óokikatta ka mo shiremasen.
Moo hajimáttá ka mo shirenai.

It may have been larger.
It may have started already.

12.5 Máde and sáe

(a) The particle máde meaning "even" occurs after a noun, a noun plus another particle or after a gerund. (Note: Máde occurs alone as a subject or object particle and does not occur in combination with o, ga, or wa.)

EXAMPLES:

Tanáka-sán máde mí ni kimashita.
Yasúmi ni made shigoto o shite
imasu.

Even Mr. Tanaka came to see it.
He is working even on a holiday.

Rájio de made ítté imóshita.

They were saying so even over the
radio.

Gakkoo o yasúnde made benkyoo
shimasu.

He studies [to the point of] even
skipping school [to do so].

(b) The particle sáe has the meaning "even," "only" or "just." It occurs (1) after a noun or a noun plus another particle, or (2) after the nominal form of a verb or the ku form of a verbal adjective which may or may not be followed by another particle but which is within a conditional phrase.

EXAMPLES:

Pán sae arímásén.

They don't even have bread. (The
assumption is that everyone
has bread and yet, these peo-
ple don't even have that. They
have nothing.)

Okáné sáe áreba, kaimasu.

I would buy it if I only had the
money. (I want very much to
buy it.)

Mí sae sureba, wakarimasu.

You'll know it if you just see it.

Kúro de nákute mo, kúroku sae áreba
íi desu.

Just as long as it's dark (if it's
dark) it doesn't have to be
black.

Compare the uses of dé mo (the gerund of the copula plus mo), máde and sáe in the following examples. The particles are progressively stronger in meaning from mo to máde to sáe.

Tanáka-sán ní de mo misémáshita.

He showed it even to Mr. Tanaka.
He showed it to Mr. Tanaka,
too.

Tanáka-sán ní made misémáshita.

He showed it even to Mr. Tanaka.
(His showing it extended even
to Mr. Tanaka.)

Tanáka-sán ní sae misémáshita.

He showed it even to Mr. Tanaka.
(He must have shown it to eve-
ryone. Mr. Tanaka is the last
person to whom I would think
he'd show it.)

12.6 Démo

Démo meaning "or something" or "or someone" occurs after a noun or a noun plus another particle other than o, ga, and wa.

EXAMPLES:

Shimbún démo yomímashóo.

Let's read a newspaper or something.

Tanáka-sán ní demo misemasu.

I'll show it to Mr. Tanaka or someone [like that].

Compare the following examples:

Émpítsú dé mo kaímashóo.

Let's buy it even if it is a pencil.

Émpítsú démo kaímashóo.

Let's buy a pencil or something.

Konó hón de mo mótte ikimashoo.

Even if it is this book, let's take it along.

Konó hón demo mótte ikimashoo.

Let's take along this book or something [like it].

DRILL

1. Grammar (informal: non-past to potential, kotó ga dekiru)

(míru)	míru koto ga dekiru	I can see
(miséru)	miséru koto ga dekiru	I can show it
(kakéru)	kakéru koto ga dekiru	I can telephone
(akeru)	akéru kótó ga dekiru	I can open it
(toméru)	toméru kótó ga dekiru	I can stop it
(iréru)	iréru kótó ga dekiru	I can put it in
(hajimeru)	hajíméru kótó ga dekiru	I can begin it
(kimeru)	kiméru kótó ga dekiru	I can decide it

(owaru)	owáru kótó ga dekiru	it can end
(suwaru)	suwáru kótó ga dekiru	I can sit down
(kaku)	káku koto ga dekiru	I can write
(aruku)	arúku koto ga dekiru	I can walk
(oku)	okú kótó ga dekiru	I can put it down
(kiku)	kikú kótó ga dekiru	I can ask
(iku)	ikú kótó ga dekiru	I can go
(isógu)	isógu koto ga dekiru	I can hurry
(shimau)	shimáu kótó ga dekiru	I can put it away
(hanásu)	hanásu koto ga dekiru	I can speak
(dásu)	dásu koto ga dekiru	I can put it out
(káesu)	káesu koto ga dekiru	I can return it
(mátsu)	mátsu koto ga dekiru	I can wait
(tátsu)	tátsu koto ga dekiru	I can stand up
(asobu)	asóbú kótó ga dekiru	I can play

(tan
(nóm
(kúr
(one
(kek
(ryo

2. (

(míru
(mis
(ake
(tom
(ire
(haj
(kim
(kak

(owa
(suw
(kák
(arú
(oku
(kik

(iku
(isó
(shi
(han
(dás
(kái
(mát
(tát
(aso
(tan
(nóm
(kúr
(sur
(one
(kek
(ryo

3.

(kái
(há
(suw
(tom
(nár
(uru

(tanómu)	tanómu koto ga dekiru	I can request it
(nómu)	nómu koto ga dekiru	I can drink
(kúru)	kúru koto ga dekiru	I can come
(onégai suru)	onégái sùrú kótó ga dekiru	I can request it
(kekkon suru)	kekkón sùrú kótó ga dekiru	I can marry
(ryokoo suru)	ryokóó sùrú kótó ga dekiru	I can travel

2. Grammar (informal: non-past to ---kotó wa dekinai)

(míru)	míru koto wa dekinai	I cannot see
(miséru)	miséru koto wa dekinai	I cannot show it
(akeru)	akéru kótó wa dekinai	I cannot open it
(toméru)	toméru kótó wa dekinai	I cannot stop it
(iréru)	iréru kótó wa dekinai	I cannot put it in
(hajimeru)	hajiméru kótó wa dekinai	I cannot begin it
(kimeru)	kiméru kótó wa dekinai	I cannot decide it
(kakéru)	kakéru koto wa dekinai	I cannot telephone

(owaru)	owáru kótó wa dekinai	it cannot end
(suwaru)	suwáru kótó wa dekinai	I cannot sit down
(káku)	káku koto wa dekinai	I cannot write
(arúku)	arúku koto wa dekinai	I cannot walk
(oku)	okú kótó wa dekinai	I cannot put it down
(kiku)	kikú kótó wa dekinai	I can't ask
(iku)	ikú kótó wa dekinai	I can't go
(isógu)	isógu koto wa dekinai	I can't hurry
(shimau)	shimáú kótó wa dekinai	I can't put it away
(hanásu)	hanásu koto wa dekinai	I can't speak
(dásu)	dásu koto wa dekinai	I can't serve it
(káesu)	káesu koto wa dekinai	I can't return it
(mátsu)	mátsu koto wa dekinai	I can't wait
(tátsu)	tátsu koto wa dekinai	I can't stand up
(asobu)	asóbú kótó wa dekinai	I can't play
(tanómu)	tanómu koto wa dekinai	I can't request it
(nómu)	nómu koto wa dekinai	I can't drink
(kúru)	kúru koto wa dekinai	I can't come
(suru)	dekinai	I can't do it
(onégai suru)	onégái sùrú kótó wa dekinai	I can't request it
(kekkon suru)	kekkón sùrú kótó wa dekinai	I can't marry
(ryokoo suru)	ryokóó sùrú kótó wa dekinai	I can't travel

3. Grammar (second-conj. verb to -eru first-conj. and potential)

(káeru)	kaéreru	I can go home
(háiru)	haireru	I can enter
(suwaru)	suwareru	I can sit down
(tomaru)	tomareru	I can stop
(náru)	nareru	I can become
(uru)	ureru	I can sell

(noru)	noreru
(arúku)	arúkéro
(káku)	kakéro
(kiku)	kikeru
(iku)	ikeru
(oku)	okeru
(isógu)	isógéro
(hanásu)	hanáséro
(dásu)	daséro
(káesu)	kaéséro
(tátu)	tatéru
(mátu)	matéro
(mótsu)	motéro
(asobu)	asoberu
(yobu)	yoberu
(yasúmu)	yasúmeru
(yómu)	yómeru
(nómu)	noméro

I can ride
I can walk
I can write
I can ask
I can go
I can put it down
I can hurry
I can speak
I can mail it
I can return it
I can stand up
I can wait
I can carry it
I can play
I can call
I can rest
I can read
I can drink

4. Substitution

Súgu tsukuremasu.

(kaeremasu)	Súgu kaeremasu.
(hairemasu)	Súgu hairemasu.
(suwaremasu)	Súgu suwaremasu.
(naremasu)	Súgu naremasu.
(uremasu)	Súgu uremasu.
(noremasu)	Súgu noremasu.
(arukemasu)	Súgu arukemasu.
(kikemasu)	Súgu kikemasu.
(ikemasu)	Súgu ikemasu.
(hanasemasu)	Súgu hanasemasu.
(dasemasu)	Súgu dasemasu.
(kaesemasu)	Súgu kaesemasu.
(tatemasu)	Súgu tatemasu.
(motemasu)	Súgu motemasu.
(yobemasu)	Súgu yobemasu.
(yasumemasu)	Súgu yasumemasu.
(yomemasu)	Súgu yomemasu.
(nomemasu)	Súgu nomemasu.
(tanomemasu)	Súgu tanomemasu.
(iemasu)	Súgu iemasu.
(aemasu)	Súgu aemasu.
(tsukaemasu)	Súgu tsukaemasu.
(naraemasu)	Súgu naraemasu.
(kaemasu)	Súgu kaemasu.

I can make it right away.

I can return right away.
I can enter right away.
I can sit down right away.
I can become that right away.
I can sell it right away.
I can get on right away.
I can walk right away.
I can ask right away.
I can go right away.
I can speak right away.
I can publish it right away.
I can return it right away.
I can stand up right away.
I can carry it right away.
I can call them right away.
I can take a holiday right away.
I can read it right away.
I can drink it right away.
I can request it right away.
I can say it right away.
I can meet them right away.
I can use it right away.
I can learn it right away.
I can buy it right away.

5. G

(tsuk
(káer
(háir
(suwá
(nárt
(urú
(norú
(arú
(káku
(kikú
(ikú
(isóg
(haná
(dásu
(káe
(tát
(mát
(mót
(asó
(yob
(yas

(yóm
(nóm
(tan
(áu
(tsu
(nar
(yuú
(kaú

6.

(kik
(mír
(sur

7.

Q.
A.

(Ráj
Ée.
(Tan

Ée.

5. Grammar (potentials: kotó ga dekinakatta to first-conj. type potential)

(tsukúru koto ga dekinakatta)	tsukúrenakatta	I was unable to make it
(káeru koto ga dekinakatta)	kaerenakatta	I was unable to return
(háiru koto ga dekinakatta)	hairenakatta	I was unable to enter
(suwarú kotó ga dekinakatta)	suwarenakatta	I was unable to sit down
(náru koto ga dekinakatta)	narénakatta	I was unable to become that
(urú kotó ga dekinakatta)	urenakatta	I was unable to sell it
(norú kotó ga dekinakatta)	nořenakatta	I was unable to get on
(arúku koto ga dekinakatta)	arúkenakatta	I was unable to walk
(kaku koto ga dekinakatta)	kakénakatta	I was unable to write
(kikú kotó ga dekinakatta)	kikénakatta	I was unable to ask
(ikú kotó ga dekinakatta)	ikénakatta	I was unable to go
(isógu koto ga dekinakatta)	isógenakatta	I was unable to hurry
(hanásu koto ga dekinakatta)	hanásénakatta	I was unable to talk
(dásu koto ga dekinakatta)	dasénakatta	I was unable to mail it
(káesu koto ga dekinakatta)	kaésénakatta	I was unable to return it
(tátsu koto ga dekinakatta)	taténakatta	I was unable to stand up
(mátsu koto ga dekinakatta)	maténakatta	I was unable to wait
(mótsu koto ga dekinakatta)	moténakatta	I was unable to carry it
(asóbú kotó ga dekinakatta)	asóbénakatta	I was unable to play
(yobú kotó ga dekinakatta)	yobénakatta	I was unable to call
(yasúmu koto ga dekinakatta)	yasúménakatta	I was unable to take a holi- day
(yómu koto ga dekinakatta)	yoménakatta	I was unable to read
(nómu koto ga dekinakatta)	noménakatta	I was unable to drink it
(tanómu koto ga dekinakatta)	tanóménakatta	I was unable to request it
(áu koto ga dekinakatta)	aénakatta	I was unable to meet him
(tsukáu dótó ga dekinakatta)	tsukaénakatta	I was unable to use it
(naráu koto ga dekinakatta)	naraénakatta	I was unable to learn it
(yuú kotó ga dekinakatta)	iénakatta	I was unable to say it
(kaú kotó ga dekinakatta)	kaénakatta	I was unable to buy it

6. Grammar (special potentials)

(kiku)	kikoeru	it is audible
(míru)	miéru	it is visible
(suru)	dekíru	it is possible to do

7. Response (affirmative)

Q. Hanáshí ga kikoémasu ka?
A. Ée. Hanáshí ga kikoemasu.

Can you hear the story?
Yes, I can hear the story.

(Rájio ga kikoémasu ka?)
Ée. Rájio ga kikoemasu.
(Tanaka-san no itté írú kotó ga
kikoémasu ka?)
Ée. Tanaka-san no itté írú kotó ga
kikoemasu.

(Can you hear the radio?)
Yes, I can hear the radio.
(Can you hear what Mr. Tanaka is
saying?)
Yes, I can hear what Mr. Tanaka
is saying.

(Konó rájio no hoo ga yoku kikoemasu ka?)
 Ée. Konó rájio no hoo ga yoku kikoe-
 masu.

(Yamá ga miemasu ka?)
 Ée. Yamá ga miemasu.

(Migí nó hoo ga miemasu ka?)
 Ée. Migí nó hoo ga miemasu.

(Hidárí nó hoo ga miemasu ka?)
 Ée. Hidárí nó hoo ga miemasu.
 (Éki ga miemasu ka?)
 Ée. Éki ga miemasu.

(Ashita dekimasu ka?)
 Ée. Ashita dekimasu.
 (Konó háru ryokoo dékimasu ka?)
 Ée. Konó háru ryokoo dekimasu.
 (Súgu onégái dékimasu ka?)
 Ée. Súgu onégái dekimasu.

(Can you hear this radio better?)

Yes, I can hear this radio better.

(Can you see the mountains?)
 Yes, I can see the mountains.

(Can you see over to the right?)
 Yes, I can see over to the right.

(Can you see over to the left?)
 Yes, I can see over to the left.
 (Can you see the station?)
 Yes, I can see the station.

(Can you do it tomorrow?)

Yes, I can do it tomorrow.

(Can you travel this spring?)

Yes, I can travel this spring.

(Can you request it immediately?)
 Yes, I can request it immediately.

8. Grammar (the two potentials, using different particles)

(a)

(Rájio o kíkú kótó ga dekimasu.)	Rájio ga kikemasu.	I can listen to the radio.
(Gyuúnyúú ó nómu koto ga dekimasu.)	Gyuunyuu ga nomemasu.	I can drink milk.
(Ocha o kaú kótó ga dekimasu.)	Ocha ga kaemasu.	I can buy tea.
(Égó ó hánasu koto ga dekimasu.)	Eego ga hanasemasu.	I can speak English.
(Isú ó mótsu koto ga dekimasu.)	Isu ga motemasu.	I can carry a chair.
(Yoófúkú ó tsúkuru koto ga dekimasu.)	Yoofuku ga tsukuremasu.	I can make a dress.
(Tegámí ó dásu koto ga dekimasu.)	Tegami ga dasemasu.	I can mail the letter.
(Nihóngó ó kaku koto ga dekimasu.)	Nihongo ga kakemasu.	I can write Japanese.
(Tsukue o okú kótó ga dekimasu.)	Tsukue ga okemasu.	I can put a desk [here.]
(Kíppú ó tánómu koto ga dekimasu.)	Kippu ga tanomemasu.	I can request some tickets.
(Jibíkí o tsukáu kótó ga dekimasu.)	Jibíki ga tsukaemasu.	I can use a dictionary.
(Furuhon o urú kótó ga dekimasu.)	Furuhon ga uremasu.	I can sell used books.

(Fu

(Ma

(Hó

(b)

(Mi

(Se

(Ma

(To

(Sé

(Mi

(Mi

(Mi

(H

(H

(H

(J

(O

9.

Soi

(t

(t

(t

(n

(k

?)

(Furánsúgó ó náráu
koto ga dekimasu.)
(Mánnénhitsu o káesu
koto ga dekimasu.)
(Hón o yómu koto ga
dekimasu.)

Furansugo ga naraemasu. I can learn French.
Mánnénhitsu ga kaese- I can return the foun-
masu. tain pen.
Hón ga yomemasu. I can read the book.

)

t.

?)

).

(b)
(Mínná ni áu koto ga
dekimasu.)
(Sénsée ni yuú kótó ga
dekimasu.)
(Matsumoto-san ni hanásu
koto ga dekimasu.)
(Tomodachi ni tanómu koto
ga dekimasu.)
(Séki ni suwarú kótó ga
dekimasu.)
(Migí nó hoo ni tátsu koto
ga dekimasu.)
(Migí nó hitó ni kikú kótó
ga dekimasu.)
(Migi no michi ni háiru
koto ga dekimasu.)
(Hidáí nó hoo ni tátsu
koto ga dekimasu.)
(Hidáí nó tátémono ni háiru
koto ga dekimasu.)
(Hidari no michi ni háiru
koto ga dekimasu.)
(Jidóosha ni norú kótó ga
dekimasu.)
(Otéárai ni ikú kótó ga
dekimasu.)

Mínná ni aemasu. I can meet everyone.
Sénsée ni iemasu. I can say it to the
teacher.
Matsumoto-san ni hana- I can speak to Mr.
semasu. Matsumoto.
Tomodachi ni tanome- I can request it of my
masu. friend.
Séki ni suwaremasu. I can sit in a seat.
Migí nó hoo ni tate- I can stand over to the
masu. right.
Migí nó hitó ni kike- I can ask the person on
masu. the right.
Migi no michi ni háire- I can enter the road on
masu. the right.
Hidáí nó hoo ni tate- I can stand over to the
masu. left.
Hidáí nó tátémono ni I can enter the build-
hairemasu. ing on the left.
Hidari no michi ni I can enter the road on
háiremasu. the left.
Jidóosha ni noremasu. I can get in the car.
Otéárai ni ikemasu. I can go to the bath-
room.

9. Substitution

Soóná kótó wa súgu dekímásén.

I can't do such a thing immedia-
tely.

(totemo) Soóná kótó wa tótemo dekí-
másén.

I can't possibly do such a thing.

(tottemo) Soóná kótó wa tótemo
dekímásén.

I can't possibly do such a thing.

(tábun) Soóná kótó wa tábun dekí-
másén.

I probably can't do such a thing.

(nakanaka) Soóná kótó wa nakanaka
dekímásén.

It's very difficult to do that
kind of thing.

(kanarazu) Soóná kótó wa kanarazu
dekímásén.

It's certain that such a thing
can't be done.

(kantan ni) Soóná kótó wa kantán ní
dékímásén.
(hajime ni) Soóná kótó wa hajímé ní
dékímásén.
(owari ni) Soóná kótó wa owarí ní
dékímásén.

Such a thing can't be done simply.

Such a thing can't be done at the beginning.

Such a thing can't be done at the end.

10. Substitution

Súgu tsukuremasu.

(tábun) Tábuu tsukuremasu.
(kanarazu) Kanarazu tsukuremasu.
(kantan ni) Kantan ni tsukuremasu.
(oshimai ni) Oshimai ni tsukuremasu.
(hajime ni) Hajime ni tsukuremasu.
(jóózú ni) Jóózú ni tsukuremasu.
(waríái) Waríái jóózú ni tsukure-
jóózú ni) masu.
(daibu) Daibu tsukuremasu.
(daíbu) Daíbu jóózú ni tsukuremasu.
jóózú ni)
(nakánáká) Nakánáká jóózú ni tsukure-
jóózú ni) masu.
(totémó) Totémó jóózú ni tsukuremasu.
(jóózú ni) Jóózú ni tsukuremasu.
(zúibun) Zúibun jóózú ni tsukuremasu.
jóózú ni)
(waríái ní) Waríái ní háyaku tsukure-
háyaku) masu.

He can make it right away.

He can probably make it.

He can make it without fail.

He can make it easily.

He can make it last.

He can make it first.

He can make it skillfully.

He can make it rather skillfully.

He can make quite a bit.

He can make it quite skillfully.

He can make it rather (surprisingly) well.

He can make it exceedingly well.

He can make it exceedingly well.

He can make it quite fast.

11. Substitution

Moó súgu ikemasu.

(suwaremasu) Moó súgu suwaremasu.
(tatemasu) Moó súgu tatemasu.
(kikemasu) Moó súgu kikemasu.
(miemasu) Moó súgu miemasu.
(kikoemasu) Moó súgu kikoemasu.
(ryokoo) Moó súgu ryokoo dekimasu.
dekimasu)
(uremasu) Moó súgu uremasu.
(noremasu) Moó súgu noremasu.
(tsukaemasu) Moó súgu tsukaemasu.

We'll be able to go soon now.

We'll be able to sit down soon now.

We'll be able to stand up soon now.

We'll be able to ask soon now.

We'll be able to see soon now.

We'll be able to hear it soon now.

We'll be able to travel soon now.

We'll be able to sell it soon now.

We'll be able to get on board soon now.

We'll be able to use it soon now.

270

12.

Móo

(ka

(ha

(ha

(de

(da

(ur

n

(uf

n

(ki

(ki

(ka

(ka

13

Mó

(t

(u

(k

(o

(n

(t

(r

(i

14

Q.

A.

(i

j

(i

j

(i

j

(i

(i

(i

(i

12. Substitution

Móo kaerímáshita.

(kaeshímáshita)	Móo kaeshímáshita.
(hajimárimáshita)	Móo hajimárimáshita.
(hajimémáshita)	Móo hajimémáshita.
(demáshita)	Móo demáshita.
(dashímáshita)	Móo dashímáshita.
(urété shímái- máshita)	Móo urété shímáimáshita.
(utté shímái- máshita)	Móo utté shímáimáshita.
(kimárimáshita)	Móo kimárimáshita.
(kimémáshita)	Móo kimémáshita.
(kakárimáshita)	Móo kakárimáshita.
(kakémáshita)	Móo kakémáshita.

He's gone home already.

He's returned it already.

It's begun already.

He's begun it already.

It's out already.

He's published it already.

It's sold out already.

He's sold it already.

It's been decided already.

He's decided it already.

The telephone call has already
come through.

He's already telephoned.

13. Substitution

Móo kangáémásén.

(tabémásén)	Móo tabémásén.
(urímásén)	Móo urímásén.
(kaímásén)	Móo kaímásén.
(onégái shímásén)	Móo onégái shímásén.
(nomímásén)	Móo nomímásén.
(tsukáimásén)	Móo tsukáimásén.
(ryokóó shímásén)	Móo ryokóó shímásén.
(iímásén)	Móo iímásén.

I won't think about it any more.

I won't eat it any more.

I won't tell it any more.

I won't buy it any more.

I won't request it any more.

I won't drink it any more.

I won't use it any more.

I won't travel any more.

I won't say it any more.

14. Response (not granting permission)

Q. Mótto tábete mo íi desu ka?

A. Móo tábete wa ikémásén.

(Mótto katté mo íi desu ka?)	Móo katté wa ikémásén.
(Mótto nónde mo íi desu ka?)	Móo nónde wa ikémásén.
(Mótto tsukútte mo íi desu ka?)	Móo tsukútte wa ikémásén.
(Mótto irété mo íi desu ka?)	Móo irété wa ikémásén.
(Mótto mísete mo íi desu ka?)	Móo mísete wa ikémásén.
(Mótto shirábete mo íi desu ka?)	Móo shirábete wa ikémásén.

May I eat more?

You mustn't eat any more.

(May I buy more?)

You mustn't buy any more.

(May I drink more?)

You mustn't drink any more.

(May I make more?)

You mustn't make any more.

(May I put more in?)

You mustn't put in any more.

(May I show them more?)

You mustn't show them any more.

(May I investigate some more?)

You mustn't investigate any
more.

15. Substitution

Máda atsúi desu.

(tsumetai) Máda tsumetai desu.
 (attakái) Máda attakái desu.
 (samúi) Máda samúi desu.
 (tabétái) Máda tabétái desu.
 (mitái) Máda mitái desu.
 (kikitái) Máda kikitái desu.
 (hanáshítái) Máda hanáshítái desu.

It's still hot.

It's still icy.
 It's still warm.
 It's still cold.
 I'd still like to eat [more].
 I'd like to look at it still
 [some more].
 I'd like to hear [some more].
 I'd like to talk [some more].

16. Substitution

Máda obóete imasu.

(narátte) Máda narátte imasu.
 (yasúnde) Máda yasúnde imasu.
 (tsutómete) Máda tsutómete imasu.
 (kángaete) Máda kángaete imasu.
 (oshiete) Máda oshiete imasu.
 (tsukútte) Máda tsukútte imasu.
 (utte) Máda utte imasu.
 (yónde) Máda yónde imasu.

He still remembers it.

He is still learning it.
 He is still on holiday.
 He is still working.
 He is still thinking it over.
 He is still teaching.
 He is still making it.
 He is still selling it.
 He is still reading it.

17. Substitution

Máda narátte imasen.

(tsutómete) Máda tsutómete imasen.
 (utte) Máda utte imásén.
 (kángaete) Máda kángaete imasen.
 (tsukútte) Máda tsukútte imasen.
 (hajimatte) Máda hajimátté imásén.
 (owatte) Máda owátté imásén.
 (kaette) Máda kaette imasen.
 (aite) Máde aité imásén.
 (kite) Máda kite imásén.

I'm not learning it yet.

I'm not working yet.
 I'm not selling it yet.
 I haven't thought of it yet.
 I'm not making it yet.
 It hasn't begun yet.
 It hasn't ended yet.
 He isn't home yet.
 It isn't open yet.
 He isn't here yet.

18. Substitution

Máda aimásén.

(hajimárimásén) Máda hajimárimásén.
 (kaérimásén) Máda kaérimásén.
 (tabémásén) Máda tabémásén.
 (wakárimásén) Máda wakárimásén.
 (shirímasén) Máda shirímasén.

I haven't met him yet.

It won't start yet.
 I'm not going home yet.
 I'm not going to eat yet.
 I don't understand it yet.
 I don't know about that yet.

(ik
(aé
(ka
(ar
(de

19.

Q.
A.

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(Má

Ii

(ikémásén)	Máda ikémásén.	I can't go yet.
(aémásén)	Máda aémásén.	I can't meet him yet.
(kaéremásén)	Máda kaéremásén.	I can't go home yet.
(arúkémásén)	Máda arúkémásén.	I can't walk yet.
(dekímásén)	Máda dekímásén.	I can't do it yet.

19. Response (negative: "still" question to "no more" answer)

Q. Máda imásu ka?	Is he still there?
A. Iie. Móo imásén.	No, he isn't here any more.
(Máda narátte imasu ka?)	(Is he still learning it?)
Iie. Móo narátte imasen.	No, he isn't learning it any more.
(Máda tátte imasu ka?)	(Is he still standing?)
Iie. Móo tátte imasen.	No, he isn't standing any more.
(Máda ufté imásu ka?)	(Is he still selling it?)
Iie. Móo ufté imásén.	No, he isn't selling it any more.
(Máda tábete imasu ka?)	(Is he still eating?)
Iie. Móo tábete imasen.	No, he isn't eating any more.
(Máda atsúi desu ka?)	(Is it still hot?)
Iie. Móo átsuku arímásén.	No, it isn't hot any more.
(Máda samúi desu ka?)	(Is it still cold?)
Iie. Móo sámuku arímásén.	No, it isn't cold any more.
(Máda aftákái desu ka?)	(Is it still warm?)
Iie. Móo aftákaku arímásén.	No, it isn't warm any more.
(Máda ikítái desu ka?)	(Do you still want to go?)
Iie. Móo ikítákú arímásén.	No, I don't want to go any more.
(Máda kikitái desu ka?)	(Do you still want to hear more?)
Iie. Móo kikitákú arímásén.	No, I don't want to hear any more.
(Máda kikoémasu ka?)	(Can you still hear it?)
Iie. Móo kikoémasén.	No, I can't hear it any more.
(Máda miémasu ka?)	(Can you still see it?)
Iie. Móo miémasén.	No, I can't see it any more.
(Máda dekímasu ka?)	(Can you still do it?)
Iie. Móo dekímásén.	No, I can't do it any more.
(Máda yomémasu ka?)	(Can you still read it?)
Iie. Móo yomémasén.	No, I can't read it any more.

20. Response (negative: "already" question to "not yet" answer)

Q. Shibai wa móo owárimáshita ka?	Has the play ended already?
A. Iie. Shibai wa máda owárimásén.	No, the play hasn't ended yet.
(Shigoto wa móo tanómímáshita ka?)	(Have you already made the request about the work?)
Iie. Shigoto wa máda tanómímásén.	No, I haven't made the request yet about the work.

(Móo shibai kara kaérímáshita ka?)

(Have they come home already from the play?)

Iie. Máda shibai kara kaérímásén.

No, they haven't come home yet from the play.

(Móo kippú wá káimáshita ka?)

(Have you bought the tickets already?)

Iie. Máda kippú wá káimásén.

No, I haven't bought the tickets yet.

(Móo áttákaku narímáshita ka?)

(Has it become warm already?)

Iie. Máda áttákaku narímásén.

No, it hasn't become warm yet.

(Móo tsumétákú nárímáshita ka?)

(Is it iced already?)

Iie. Máda tsumétákú nárímásén.

No, it hasn't become cold yet.

(Móo naráimáshita ka?)

(Have you learned it already?)

Iie. Máda naráimásén.

No, I haven't learned it yet.

21. Response (negative: "already finished" question to "still doing" answer)

Q. Móo kakímáshita ka?

Have you written it already?

A. Iie. Máda káite imasu.

No, I'm still writing it.

(Móo tábete shimáimáshita ka?)

(Have you finished eating already?)

Iie. Máda tábete imasu.

No, I'm still eating.

(Móo kiree ni shité shimáimáshita ka?)

(Have you cleaned it up already?)

Iie. Máda kiree ni shite imasu.

No, I'm still cleaning it up.

(Móo tsukútte shimáimáshita ka?)

(Have you finished making it?)

Iie. Máda tsukútte imasu.

No, I'm still making it.

(Móo tsukátté shimáimáshita ka?)

(Have you used it up already?)

Iie. Máda tsukatte imasu.

No, I'm still using it.

(Móo benkyóó shité shimáimáshita ka?)

(Have you finished studying it?)

Iie. Máda benkyoo shite imasu.

No, I'm still studying it.

(Móo yónde shimáimáshita ka?)

(Have you finished reading it?)

Iie. Máda yónde imasu.

No, I'm still reading it.

22. Substitution

Moó súkóshi kudasai.

Please give me a little more.

(hoshíi desu) Moó súkóshi hoshíi desu.

I'd like a little more.

(nomítái desu) Moó súkóshi nomítái desu.

I'd like to drink a little more.

(mitái desu) Moó súkóshi mitái desu.

I'd like to see a little more.

(tabétái desu) Moó súkóshi tabétái desu.

I'd like to eat a little more.

(onagai shi- masu) Moó súkóshi onagai shi- masu.

I'd like a little more please.

23. Substitution

Moó chótto benkyóó shínákereba
narímásén.

I have to study a little more.

(kańgáénakereba) Moó chótto kańgáénake-
reba narímásén.

I have to think it over a little more.

(shirábénakereba) Moó chótto shirábé-
nakereba narímásén.

I have to investigate it a little more.

(obóénakereba) Moó chótto obóénake-
reba narímásén.

I have to memorize it a little more.

(kikánákereba) Moó chótto kikánake-
reba narímásén.

I have to listen a little more.

24. Substitution

(a)

Tsutómeru ka mo shiremasen.

He may go to work.

(owaru) Owárú ká mo shiremasen.

It may end.

(hajimaru) Hajímárú ká mo shiremasen.

It may begin.

(tátsu) Tátsu ka mo shiremasen.

He may stand up.

(urete shimau) Urété shímáú ká mo shiremasen.

It may become sold out.

(kakéru) Kakéru ka mo shiremasen.

They may telephone.

(tanómu) Tanómu ka mo shiremasen.

They may request it.

(kikoeru) Kikóerú ká mo shiremasen.

They may be able to hear it.

(b)

Mieta ka mo shiremasen.

They may have been able to see it.

(káketa) Káketa ka mo shiremasen.

They may have been able to write it.

(suwatta) Suwáttá ká mo shiremasen.

They may have sat down.

(fútta) Fúttá ka mo shiremasen.

It may have rained.

(nakunatta) Nakúnáttá ká mo shirema-
sen.

It may have become lost.

(kimeta) Kimétá ká mo shiremasen.

They may have decided.

(kimatta) Kimáttá ká mo shire-
masen.

It may have been decided.

(kańgáeta) Kańgáeta ka mo shirema-
sen.

They may have thought it over.

(notta) Noттá ká mo shiremasen.

They may have gotten on.

(órita) Órita ka mo shiremasen.

They may have gotten off.

(c)

Atsúi ka mo shirémásén.

It may be hot.

(samúi) Samúi ka mo shiremasen.

It may be cold.

(tsumetai) Tsumétái ka mo shiremasen.

It may be icy.

(muzúkáshíi) Muzúkáshíi ka mo shiremasen.

It may be difficult.

(yasashii) Yasáshíi ka mo shiremasen.

It may be easy.

(fukái) Fukái ka mo shiremasen.

It may be deep.

(asai)	Asái ká mo shiremasen.	It may be shallow.
(hirói)	Hirói ka mo shiremasen.	It may be wide.
(semái)	Semái ka mo shiremasen.	It may be narrow.

(k

K

(d)		
Migí ká mo shirenai.		It may be on the right.

26

(hidari)	Hidárf ká mo shirenai.	It may be on the left.
(otéarai)	Otéarai ka mo shirenai.	It may be the toilet.
(depáato)	Depáato ka mo shirenai.	It may be a department store.
(áme)	Áme ka mo shirenai.	It may be rain.
(yukí)	Yukí ka mo shirenai.	It may be snow.
(yamá)	Yamá ka mo shirenai.	It may be a mountain.
(kawá)	Kawá ka mo shirenai.	It may be a river.
(shimá)	Shimá ka mo shirenai.	It may be an island.
(ása)	Ása ka mo shirenai.	It may be in the morning.

(K

K

(J

J

(S

S

(N

N

(T

T

(e)		
Kyónen datta ka mo shirenai.		It might have been last year.

(bañ datta)	Bañ datta ka mo shirenai.	It might have been at night.
(fuyú datta)	Fuyú datta ka mo shirenai.	It might have been in the winter.
(hetá datta)	Hetá datta ka mo shirenai.	They might have been bad.
(kíree datta)	Kíree datta ka mo shirenai.	It might have been pretty.
(kantán datta)	Kantán datta ka mo shire- nai.	It might have been easy.
(higáshí datta)	Higáshí datta ka mo shire- nai.	It might have been in the east.
(máda datta)	Máda datta ka mo shirenai.	It might not have taken place yet.

27

(I

I

(I

I

I

(I

I

25. Grammar (substituting máde for mo)

(Kodomo mo shitte imasu.)	(The children also know.)
Kodómo máde shitte imasu.	Even the children know.
(Tanaka-san mo soó íímáshita.)	(Mr. Tanaka also said so.)
Tanáka-sán máde soó íímáshita.	Even Mr. Tanaka said so.
(Hón mo urété shímáímáshita.)	(The books were also all sold.)
Hón made urété shímáímáshita.	Even the books were all sold.
(Yasúmi ni mo benkyoo shite imasu.)	(He is studying on holidays also.)
Yasúmi ni made benkyoo shite imasu.	He is studying even on holidays.
(Furánsú é mo mí ni ikímáshita.)	(He also went to France to see it.)
Furánsú é made mí ni ikímáshita.	He even went to France to see it.
(Rajíoyá dé mo utte imasu.)	(They also sell it at the radio store.)
Rajíoyá dé made utte imasu.	They even sell it at the radio store.
(Tanáka-sán ní mo misémáshita.)	(He showed it to Mr. Tanaka also.)
Tanáka-sán ní made misémáshita.	He even showed it to Mr. Tanaka.

21

(I

(kaishá ó yásúnde mo ikimasu.)

Kaishá ó yásúnde made ikimasu.

(He goes even if he takes a holiday from the office.)

He goes even if he takes a holiday from the office.)

26. Grammar (to include sae)

(Koóhíi mo nomímásén.)

Koóhíi sae nomímásén.

(Jidóosha mo kaímáshita.)

Jidóosha sae kaímáshita.

(Sénsée mo obóete imásén deshita.)

Sénsée sae obóete imásén deshita.

(Nihón ni mo arimasu.)

Nihón ni sae arimasu.

(Toókyóó dé mo kaemasu.)

Toókyóó dé sae kaemasu.

(He doesn't drink coffee either.)

He doesn't even drink coffee.

(He also bought a car.)

He even bought a car.

(The teacher didn't remember either.)

Even the teacher didn't remember.

(There are some in Japan also.)

There are some even in Japan.

(One can also buy it in Tōkyō.)

One can even buy it in Tōkyō.

27. Grammar (sae with conditionals of verbs)

(Kikéba wakarimasu.)

Kikí sae suréba wakarimasu.

(Míreba dekíru deshoo.)

Mí sae suréba dekíru deshoo.

(Yóku nareba ikemasu.)

Yóku nári sae suréba ikemasu.

(Kokó ní íréba íi desu.)

Koko ni í sae suréba íi desu.

(Kaéba íi no ni...)

Kaí sae suréba íi no ni...

(Ryokóó suréba yóku narimasu.)

Ryokóó sae sureba yóku narimasu.

(You'll know it if you hear it.)

You'll know it if you just hear it.

(You'll probably be able to do it if you watch.)

You'll probably be able to do it if you just watch.

(I'll be able to go if I get well.)

I'll be able to go if I'd just get well.

(It'll be all right if you stay here.)

It'll be all right if you'd just stay here.

(If he would only buy it!)

If he would only buy it!

(He'd recover if he would take a trip.)

He'd recover if he would just take a trip.

28. Grammar (sae with conditionals of verbal adjectives)

(Atátákakereba kamáimásén.)

Atátákaku sae áreba kamáimásén.

(If it's warm, I don't care.)

Just as long as it's warm, I don't care.

(Omóshírokereba mí ni ikimasu.)

Omóshíroku sae áreba mí ni ikimasu.

(Tsumétákereba nomemasu.)

Tsumétáku sae áreba nomemasu.

(Chíisakereba nomemasu.)

Chíisaku sae áreba nomemasu.

(Tákaku nákereba kaimasu.)

Tákaku sae nákereba kaimasu.

(Wáruku nákereba tabemasu.)

Wáruku sae nákereba tabemasu.

(Muzúkáshiku nákereba dekimasu.)

Muzúkáshiku sae nákereba dekimasu.

(If it's interesting, I'll go see it.)

Just as long as it's interesting, I'll go see it.

(If it's cold, I can drink it.)

Just as long as it's cold, I can drink it.

(If it's small, I can drink it.)

Just as long as it's small, I can drink it.

(If it isn't expensive, I'll buy it.)

Just as long as it isn't expensive, I'll buy it.

(If it isn't bad, I'll eat it.)

Just as long as it isn't bad, I'll eat it.

(If it isn't difficult, I can do it.)

Just as long as it isn't difficult, I can do it.

29. Substitution

Koré dé mo kékkoo desu.

This one will do fine. (It'll be all right even if it's this one.)

(yomemasu) Koré dé mo yomemasu.

I can read it even if it's this one.

(tabemasu) Koré dé mo tabemasu.

I'll eat it even if it's this one.

(haírimásén) Koré dé mo haírimásén.

Even this one doesn't fit.

(takasugi-masu) Koré dé mo takasugimasu.

Even this one is too expensive.

(nomíníkúi desu) Koré dé mo nomíníkúi desu.

Even this one is difficult to drink.

(tabétáku arimásén) Koré dé mo tabétáku arimásén.

Even if it's this, I don't want to eat it.

30. Grammar (to démo "or something")

(Éega o mimáshóo.)

Éega demo mimáshóo.

(Let's see a movie.)

Let's see a movie or something.

(Ochá ó nóimáshóo.)

Ochá demo nóimáshóo.

(Let's have some tea.)

Let's have some tea or something.

(Shimbún ó káimáshóo.)

Shimbún demo káimáshóo.

(Let's buy a newspaper.)

Let's buy a newspaper or something.

(Okáshi o mótte ikimáshóo.)

Okáshi demo mótte ikimáshóo.

(Let's take some cakes with us.)

Let's take some cakes or something with us.

(Tanáká-sán ní kíkímáshóo.)
 Tanáká-sán ní demo kíkímáshóo.
 (Kamákúrá e ikímáshóo.)
 Kamákúrá e demo ikímáshóo.

(Let's ask Mr. Tanaka.)
 Let's ask Mr. Tanaka or someone.
 (Let's go to Kamakura.)
 Let's go to Kamakura or someplace.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

Shibai e iku hanashi

Nakamura. Ashita no ban isógashiku nákereba, éega demo mí ni ikímásén ka?

Hára. Éega yori Kōbayashi-san ga hanáshite ita ano shibai ga mitái desu ne.
 Kobayashi-san wa kono shibai wa kanarazu minakute wa naranai to itte
 imáshita.

N. Áa. Watakushi mo ano shibai wa mitái n' desu. Tomodachi to ísshō ní
 íketára, to omōtte ita tokoro desu.

H. Dēmo kippu ga nakánáká káénákute komátte iru n' desu.

N. Kippú nára, watakushi no tomodachi ni tanómu koto ga dekimasu. Tomodachi
 ga soko ni tsutómete iru kara, tomodachi ni hanáshi sae suréba, wariiai
 kantan ni kemasu. Dēmo máe no ii seki wa móo urete shimatte, náí ka mo
 shiremásén yo.

H. Ée. Uchíró nó hoo de mo kamáwanai kara, kaérú ka doo ka kiité mite kuda-
 sai. Chotto takakute mo, narúbeku yoku kikoete yoku miéru seki o tanónde
 kudasai. Sonó hito ni onégái dékimasu ne?

N. Ée. Sugu denwá ó kánete kiité mímáshóo.

N. Ashita no ban no kippu wa móo minna urété shímátté írú kéredo, hirú de
 yókereba máda arimasu. Kéredo daibu ushíró nó hoo desu yo. Migi no
 ushiro ka hidari no ushiro shika arímásén. Soré dé wa ikémásén ka?

H. Ano shibai wa ashítá de oshímái dá kara, ashita ikánákereba, móo míru
 koto wa dekimásén ne.

N. Ée. Sôo desu.

H. Déwa ikú kótó ni shimáshóo. Míe sae suréba, migí dé mo hidarí dé mo
 kamáímásén. Nakamura-san wa ashita ikérú deshoo ne?

N. Anáta sae yókereba, watakushi wa kantan ni yasumemasu.

- N. Áa. Koko ga watakúshitachi no séki desu ka? Zúibun ushíró nó hoo desu ne. Moó súkóshi máe dattara yókatta no ni. Koko wa yóku kikóénái ka mo shiremasen.
- H. Démo suwárétá kara, máda íi hoo desu. Haírenakatta hito mo daibu irú n' desu kara. Shibai wa moó súgu hajímárimásu ka?
- N. Máda chótto arimasu.
- H. Déwa shibai ga hajímátté kara wa taténai kara, íma chótto otéarai e itte kimasu. Otéarai wa dóko ka shítté ímásu ka?
- N. Tábuñ ano to o déte hidárí nó hoo e íttá tókóró da to omoimasu. Kokó dé wa tabako o nónde wa ikénái kara, watakushi mo chótto déte tabako o nónde kimashoo.
-
- H. Totemo omóshírói shibai desu ne. Tsugí wa dóo naru n' deshoo. Konó hánáshí o yónnda koto ga arímásu ka?
- N. Hajímé nó hoo wa yónnda keredo, owárí máde wa máda yónnde náí kara, dóo naru ka shirímásén.
- H. Áa. Asoko ni kákete iru no wa Tanáká-sán dé wa arímásén ka?
- N. Áa. Tanaka-san. Anáta mo kité ita n' desu ka?
- Tanaka. Háha ga kúru koto ga dekinaku natta kara, watakushi ga kimáshita.
- H. Watakushi wa máda hirúgóhan o tábete inái n' desu ga, shibai ga owátté kara minna issho ni ikága desu ka?
- N. Kékkoo desu ne.
- T. Watakushi wa isóide kaéránakute wa naránai kara, kyoo wa chótto ikú kótó ga dekimásén. Isógáshiku sae nákereba, ikítái n' desu ga...
- N. Déwa watakúshitáchi dáké de ikímáshoo. Démo Tanaka-san, amari beńkyóó shíté wa ikémásén yo.. Byoókí ní nárímásu yo.
- T. Anáta made sońná kótó o yuú n' desu ka? Sore hodo beńkyóó shíté ímásén yo.
- H. Móo hajímárimásu kara, sórosoro séki e ikánákute wa nárímásén.

2

A.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

B.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

C.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

EXERCISE

A. Insert moo or máda in the following blanks.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. _____ benkyóo shímáshita. | I've studied it already. |
| 2. _____ kité imasu. | He is hear already. |
| 3. _____ byooki de yasúnde imasu. | He is still out sick. |
| 4. Anó hito wa _____ asoko ni tátte imasu. | That man is still standing there. |
| 5. _____ wakárimásén. | I don't understand it yet. |
| 6. _____ kishá ni noránákereba narí-másén. | We must board the train soon. |
| 7. Yamamoto-san wa _____ kónai n' desu. | Mr. Yamamoto hasn't come yet. |
| 8. _____ kaíte imasu. | He is still writing it. |
| 9. _____ kaíte imasu. | He is already writing it. |
| 10. _____ qosugimasu. | It's too late already. |
| 11. _____ hayasugimasu. | It's too early yet. |
| 12. _____ anná monó wa tabémásén. | I'm not going to eat that kind of thing any more. |
| 13. _____ kaíté árimásén. | It hasn't been purchased yet. |
| 14. _____ desu. | It's not [ready] yet. |

B. Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. _____ ka mo shiremasen. | It might have been Mr. Tanaka. |
| 2. _____ ka mo shiremasen. | He may speak. |
| 3. Múo _____ ká mo shiremasen. | It may have ended already. |
| 4. Moó sugu _____ ká mo shiremasen. | It may end soon. |
| 5. _____ ka mo shiremasen. | It may be rain. |
| 6. Mótto _____ ka mo shiremasen. | It may be larger. |
| 7. Mótto _____ ka mo shiremasen. | It may have been larger. |
| 8. _____ ka mo shiremasen. | He may not bring it. |
| 9. _____ ka mo shiremasen. | It may have been difficult. |
| 10. _____ ká mo shiremasen. | It might have been the telephone. |

C. Supply particles for the following blanks.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Múo kippú _____ káu kótó wa dekimásén. | One can't buy tickets any more. |
| 2. Íma Tanaka-san _____ hanásu kotó wa dekimásén. | You can't talk with Mr. Tanaka now. |
| 3. Kónná hón _____ yomémásu ka? | Can you read this kind of book? |
| 4. Kyóo wa éega _____ míru kotó wa dekimásén. | I can't see a movie today. |
| 5. Kokó kára wa ítté írú kótó _____ yóku kikóemásén. | I can't hear what's being said very well from here. |
| 6. Soko kara yamá _____ miémásu ka? | Can you see the mountains from there? |
| 7. Okáshi _____ tsukúru kotó ga dekimásu ka? | Can you make cakes? |

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| 8. Okáshi _____ tsukúrémasu ka? | Can you make cakes? |
| 9. Tsumétái mónó _____ nomémasu ka? | Can you drink cold things? |
| 10. Tsumétái mónó _____ nómu koto ga
dekímasu ka? | Can you drink cold things? |

D. Ask (tell) your friend: (Give two forms for all potentials wherever possible.)

1. if he knows where one can buy it.
2. if he can wait a little longer.
3. if he can walk a little faster.
4. if he can take the day off tomorrow.
5. if he can speak English.
6. if she were able to make the cakes.
7. if the mountains are visible.
8. if he were able to request it of Mr. Shimizu.
9. if he were able to sell the tickets.
10. if he knows whether Mr. Yamamoto can come.

E. Include sae in the following sentences, making any necessary changes or replacements in order to include sae.

Míreba wakarimasu.

(Mí sae sureba wakarimasu.)

(If you would only look at it, you would understand.)

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Anó úchí ni wa pán mo arímasén. | (They don't even have bread in that house.) |
| 2. Sámuku nareba yukí ga furimasu. | (If it would only get cold, it would snow.) |
| 3. Utté míreba wakarimasu. | (If you would just try to sell it, you would understand.) |
| 4. Tokóro ó kímériba íi no ni... | (It would be good if they would only decide the place.) |
| 5. Kímériba íi no ni... | (It would be good if they would just decide it.) |
| 6. Tákaku nákereba kaimasu. | (Just as long as it isn't expensive, I'll buy it.) |
| 7. Kikóériba íi desu. | (It'll be all right just as long as we can hear.) |
| 8. Okane ga áreba kaú no ni... | (I would buy it if I just had the money.) |
| 9. Chíisakereba nomemasu. | (Just as long as it's small, I can drink it.) |
| 10. Koóhíi mo nomímasén. | (He won't even drink coffee.) |
| 11. Améríká dé mo kãemasu. | (One can buy it even in America.) |
| 12. Yóku nareba ikemasu. | (If you would just get well, you could go.) |

F. Insert made in the following sentences, if necessary, by replacing some other particle.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. Yamamoto-san ga kité imasu. | (Even Mr. Yamamoto is here.) |
| 2. Jidóosha o kaímáshita. | (He even bought a car.) |
| 3. Tsukútte mótte kimashita. | (He even made it and brought it.) |
| 4. Hónya de mo utte imasu. | (They even sell it in the book-stores.) |
| 5. Shímizu-san ni iímáshita. | (He even told Mr. Shimizu.) |
| 6. Kore mo tsumétai desu. | (Even this is cold.) |
| 7. Furansu e urí ní íkímáshita. | (He even went to France to sell it.) |
| 8. Yamá ni mo arimasu. | (There are some even in the mountains.) |

LESSON XIII

tokee	clock
jikan	1) hour (duration of time); 2) time; 3) on time, <u>jikan</u>
	<u>ni</u>
-ji	o' clock
-fun, -pun	minutes
gózen	a.m.
gógo	p.m.
-góro, kóro	about the time, about (used only of time)
-gúrai	about, around (in case of time -- used only for duration of time)
choodo	just, exactly
sugí	after
máe	1) before; 2) the time before
máde	until
máde ni	by (of time)
hán	half
-chaku	arrival (suffix occurring with time and place)
-hatsu	departure (suffix occurring with time and place)
toshí	1) age; 2) year (see Lesson XIV)
íkutsu	how many, how old (of living things)
bákari	1) only, (- <u>bákari</u>); 2) just now, just; 3) about (See Grammar)
hazu	1) ought to, should; 2) probably; 3) reason to expect (See Grammar)
tsumori	1) intention; 2) supposition (See Grammar)
hontoo	the truth; truly, really (followed by <u>ni</u>)
taihen (na)	terrible, terrific, very
dekakeru	to start out (intr.)
kakáru	to take (of time and money) (intr.)
kazóeru	to count (tr.)
maníáu	1) to be in time; 2) to suffice (--- <u>de maníáu</u> , --- will do) (intr.)
tátsu	1) to leave; (to leave ---, ---o <u>tátsu</u> ; tr.) 2) to elapse, to pass (of time intr.)
tsúku	to arrive (intr.)
dekíru	1) to be able (Lesson XII); 2) to become completed; 3) to grow, to come up (intr.)

LIS

ich.
ní,
san.
shí
gó
rok
shi
hac
kú,
jú

juí
juí
jú
juí
jú
juí
juí
juí

ní
ní
ní
ní
ní
ní
ní
ní
ní

sá
sá
sá
sá
sá
sá
sá
sá

sá
sá

*
*
*

LIST A

ichí	1	yónjuu **	40
ní, (futa)*	2	yónjuu-ichí	41
san	3	yónjuu-ní	42
shí, yón*	4	yónjuu-san	43
gó	5	yónjuu-yón	44
rokú	6	yónjuu-gó	45
shichí, nána*	7	yójuu-rokú	46
hachí	8	yónjuu-shichí, yónjuu-nána	47
kú, kyúu	9	yónjuu-hachí	48
júu	10	yónjuu-kú, yónjuu-kyúu	49
juú-ichí	11	gojúu	50
juú-ní	12	gojuu-ichí	51
júu-san	13	gojuu-ní	52
juú-shí, juú-yón	14	gojuu-san	53
júu-go	15	gojuu-shí, gojuu-yón	54
juú-rókú	16	gojuu-gó	55
juú-shichí, juú-nána	17	gojuu-rokú	56
juú-hachí	18	gojuu-shichí, gojuu-nána	57
júu-ku, juú-kyúu	19	gojuu-hachí	58
		gojuu-kú, gojuu-kyúu	59
níjuu, futájuu	20	rokújúu	60
níjuu-ichí	21	rokujuu-ichí	61
níjuu-ní	22	rokujuu-ní	62
níjuu-san	23	rokujuu-san	63
níjuu-shí, níjuu-yón	24	rokujuu-shí, rokujuu-yón	64
níjuu-gó	25	rokujuu-gó	65
níjuu-rokú	26	rokujuu-rokú	66
níjuu-shichí, níjuu-nána	27	rokujuu-shichí, rokujuu-	
níjuu-hachí	28	nána	67
níjuu-kú, níjuu-kyúu	29	rokujuu-hachí	68
sánjuu	30	rokujuu-kú, rokujuu-kyúu	69
sánjuu-ichí	31		
sánjuu-ní	32	nanájuu ***	70
sánjuu-san	33	nanájuu-ichí	71
sánjuu-shí, sánjuu-yón	34	nanájuu-ní	72
sánjuu-gó	35	nanájuu-san	73
sánjuu-rokú	36	nanájuu-shí, nanájuu-yón	74
sánjuu-shichí, sánjuu-		nanájuu-gó	75
nána	37	nanájuu-rokú	76
sánjuu-hachí	38	nanájuu-shichí, nanájuu-	
sánjuu-kú, sánjuu-kyúu	39	nána	77
		nanájuu-hachí	78
		nanájuu-kú, nanájuu-kyúu	79

* Not Sino-Japanese numerals. (See Grammar)

** Shijúu (etc.) also occurs.

*** Shichíjúu (etc.) also occurs.

hachíjū	80	kyúujū*	90
hachijuu-ichí	81	kyúujuu-ichí	91
hachijuu-ní	82	kyúujuu-ní	92
hachijuu-san	83	kyúujuu-san	93
hachijuu-shí, hachijuu-yón	84	kyúujuu-shi, kyúujuu-	
hachijuu-gó	85	yón	94
hachijuu-rokú	86	kyúujuu-gó	95
hachijuu-shichí, hachijuu-		kyúujuu-rokú	96
nána	87	kyúujuu-shichí, kyúu-	
hachijuu-hachí	88	juu-nána	97
hachijuu-kú, hachijuu-		kyúujuu-hachí	98
kyúu	89	kyúujuu-kyúu	99

* kujúu (etc.) also occurs.

LIST B

hitótsu	one [thing], one [year of age]
futátsu	two [of a thing], two [years of age]
mittsu	three [of a thing], three [years of age]
yoftsu	four [of a thing], four [years of age]
itsútsu	five [of a thing], five [years of age]
muttsu	six [of a thing], six [years of age]
nanátsu	seven [of a thing], seven [years of age]
yaftsu	eight [of a thing], eight [years of age]
kokónotsu	nine [of a thing], nine [years of age]
tóo	ten [of a thing], ten [years of age]

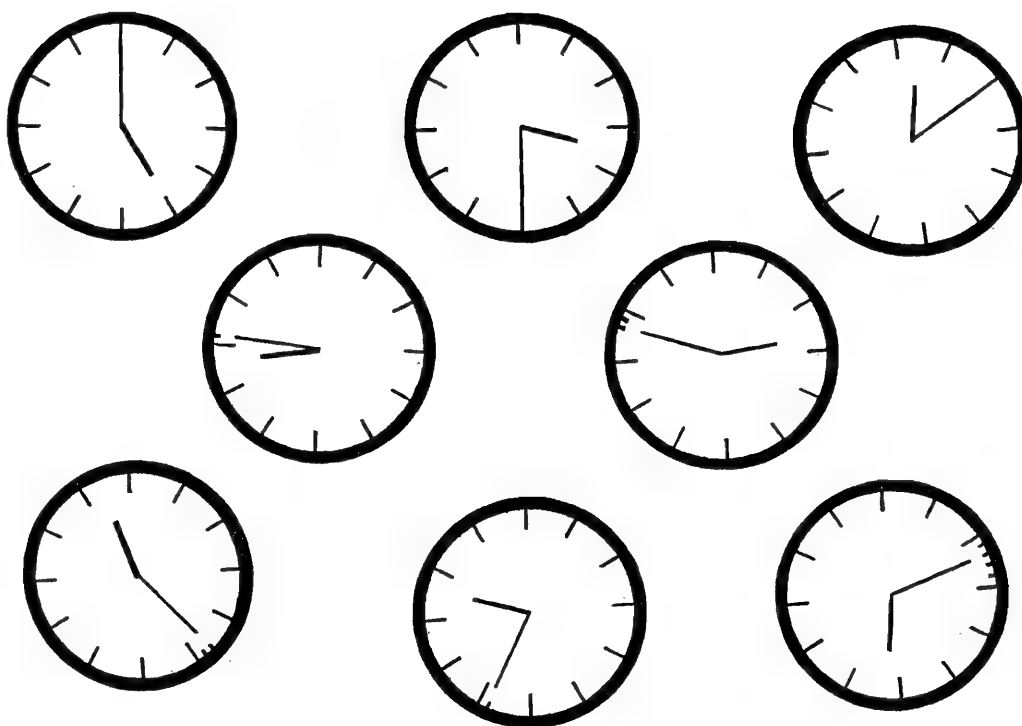
hátachi twenty years of age

LIST C

	o'clock	-thirty	hours	minutes
one	ichíji	ichíjǐ-hán	ichíjǐkan	íppun
two	níji	nijǐ-hán	nijǐkan	nífun
three	sánji	sańjǐ-hán	sańjǐkan	sámpun
four	yóji*	yojǐ-hán*	yojǐkan*	yómpun*
five	góji	gojǐ-hán	gojǐkan	gófun
six	rokúji	rokújǐ-hán	rokújǐkan	róppun
seven	shichíji	shichíjǐ-hán*	shichíjǐkan	shichífun
			nanájǐkan	nanáfun
eight	hachíji	hachíjǐ-hán	hachíjǐkan	hachífun, háppun
nine	kúji*	kujǐ-hán*	kujǐkan*	kyúufun*
ten	júuji	juújǐ-hán	juújǐkan	jíppun, júppun
eleven	juúichíji	juúichíjǐ-hán	juúichíjǐkan	juúíppun
twelve	juúníji	juúníjǐ-hán	juúníjǐkan	juúnífun

* Alternate forms not possible in these instances.

júu
nor
ker
gúr
gor
de
Wat
dar
mae
shi
no
shi
des
no
júu
éki
no
der
ita



PATTERN PASSAGE

Kinoo watakushi wa gózen júuji-gojippún-hatsu no kishá ni norú tsúmóri deshita. Ása háya-kereba, Toókyóo-eki made sanjiippún-gúrai shika kakárimásén ga, ohírú-góro ni náru to sanjiippún-bákari de wa totemo ikeru hazu ga arimásén. Watakushi wa ichíjikan-gurai kakáru daroo to omótta no de, júuji-gofún mae ni uchi o déru koto ni shimá-shita. Kéredomo dekakeru bakari no tokóro ni denwá ga kakátte kimá-shita. Ichi-nifun hanásu tsumori deshita ga, go-róppún ní mo nátta no de, uchi o deta no wa chōodo júuji-yōmpún sugi deshita. Isóide éki made ikimáshita ga, osókatta no de, norémásén deshita. Mōshi denwa ga kakáru mae ni uchi o déte itara, maniátta hazu desu ga...

Yesterday, I had intended to take the ten-fifty train in the morning. If it's early in the morning, it doesn't take more than about thirty minutes to Tōkyō Station, but around noon one can't expect to get there in just thirty minutes. I thought it would take about an hour, so I decided to leave the house at five minutes of ten. But, there was a telephone call just as I was about to start out. I had intended to talk one or two minutes, but it ended up being (lit. became) as long as five or six minutes, so it was exactly four minutes after ten when I left the house. I hurried to the station, but I wasn't able to get on because I was late. Had I left the house before the telephone call, I

Dákara gógo ichíji-juúhappun ni déru, tsugí no kishá ni norú máde, Toókýoo-eki de nijíkan-hán mo matánakereba narímásén deshita.

would probably have been on time. Therefore, I had to wait as long as two and a half hours at Tókýō Station until [it was time to] board the the next train, leaving at one-eighteen p.m.

GRAMMAR

13.1 Numbers

In Japanese, there are two counting systems, one borrowed from the Chinese and the other a native Japanese system. In this text, the former will be called the Sino-Japanese system and the latter, the Japanese system.

The numerals in List A (p. 284) are those of the Sino-Japanese system. By this system one may count from one to as high as one chooses, however, in this lesson, only numbers through ninety-nine will be taught. Four numerals of the Sino-Japanese system have alternate forms: two is ní or futa; four is shí or yón; seven is shichí or nána; nine is kú or kyúu. With the exception of ní and futa, the alternate forms occur interchangeably, with the choice of selection based on factors of personal preference, dialect or easier differentiation in hearing (as in the case of yón and nána as opposed to shí and shichí). Cases where alternate forms are not interchangeable are noted in this text. Futa is an alternate form for ni only when the number is followed by certain "numery adjuncts," as in futájuu or futában meaning "twenty" or "number two." (Numery adjuncts are discussed in 13.2 and Lesson XV.)

In counting in the Sino-Japanese system from eleven on, the unit, for example, "ten" or júu, preceded immediately by a smaller number is multiplied by it and the smaller number immediately after the unit is added to it. Níjuu is "twenty," but juúní is "twelve."

The Japanese system has numerals from one to ten, each with the meaning of "---things" or "---years of age," and a numeral, hátachi, meaning "twenty years of age." The numerals are found in List B (p.285). With the exception of hátachi, when one counts beyond ten of a thing or ten years of age, one must change to the Sino-Japanese numeral.

13.2 Time

Ji, jíkan, fún, pún, fúnkan, púnkan, and byóo all follow Sino-Japanese numerals. Ji indicates the hour or what "o' clock" it is, fún or pún, the minute, and byóo, the second. Jíkan, fúnkan or púnkan indicate the length of time an action takes, how many hours or minutes it takes. (See List C.) (Note that fún or pún occurs interchangeably with fúnkan or púnkan to express duration of minutes.)

In giving the time, the larger unit is given first, followed by the smaller units, e.g. A.M., gózen, followed by the hour, -ji, followed by the minute, -fún. Mae and sugí, meaning "before" and "after" respectively, follow the smallest unit being mentioned. (Note that sugí may be omitted.)

288

EXA

aft
mer
EX

*N

13

ad
ti
EXcl
nu
"s
EX

EXAMPLES:

Níji ni ikimasu.
 Nijíkan de ikemasu.
 Gofúkan kakarimasu.
 Gofun kakarimasu.
 Sánji-gófun desu.
 Gógo yóji-yompún mae ni tsuki-
 masu.
 Gózen kúji-jíppún sugi ni hajime-
 masu.
 Gózen kúji-jíppun ni hajimemasu.
 Nanji desu ka?
 Réeji-sámpun desu.
 Námbuyo kakárimásu ka?

I will go at two o' clock.
 I can get (go) there in two hours.
 It takes five minutes.
 It takes five minutes.
 It's 3:05.
 It will arrive at 3:56 p.m. (lit.
 --four minutes of four p.m.).
 We will begin it at 9:10 a.m. (ten
 minutes after nine).
 We will begin it at 9:10 a.m.
 What time (hour) is it?
 It's 12:03 a.m. (It's zero hour
 and three minutes.)
 How many seconds does it take?

This "numeral-plus-unit" type of combination functions as a noun. Hereafter, in this text, the unit which follows a numeral will be called a "numery adjunct."

EXAMPLES:

Shichíji no kishá ni norímáshita.
 Hachíji-hán kara hajimarimasu.
 Rokúji ga ichiban ii desu.
 Jikan ni kimáshita.

He boarded the seven o' clock
 train.
 It will begin from eight-thirty.
 Six o' clock is best.
 He came on time.

*Note that jikan also occurs as an independent noun meaning "time."

13.3 Gúrai, góro and kóro

(a) In its time usage, gúrai occurs after a numeral plus a numerary adjunct indicating duration of time. It tells the approximate duration of time, "about how long" an action takes.

EXAMPLES:

Sánjikan-gúrai kakarimasu.
 Gofún-gúrai hanáshímáshita.
 Nanjikan-gúrai kakárimásu ka?

It takes about three hours.
 I spoke for about five minutes.
 About how many hours will it
 take?

In addition to its usage with time, gúrai also occurs after nouns (including kono type nouns), numerals of the Japanese system, and numerals plus numerary adjuncts other than those of time. It tells "about how much," "about how many" or "to about what extent" something is true.

EXAMPLES:

Mítsú-gúrai kaímáshóo.
 Ikútsú-gúrai arímásu ka?
 Ikútsú-gúrai desu ka?
 Sammaí-gúrai nara, arimasu.
 Nidórú-gúrai shika arímásén.

Let's buy about three [of them].
 About how many are there?
 About how old is he?
 If it's [only] about three sheets
 [of paper], I have that [much].
 I have but about two dollars.

Tanáká-sán-gúrai dekimasu.

He can do about as much as Mr. Tanaka.

Kore-gurai de íi desu.

About this much will do.

Dono-gurai mōtte kimashita ka?

About how much did they bring?

(b) Góro occurs only in the time usage and indicates the "approximate" time of an event. It occurs after a numeral plus a numerary adjunct of time (not one of duration), a noun indicating time (such as kinóo), and kono.

EXAMPLES:

Ichíjǐ-góro kimáshita.

He came around one o'clock.

Bañ-góro deshita.

It was around evening.

Itsú-góro déshita ka?

Around when was that?

Kyónen no imá-góro déshita.

It was around this time last year.

Chiká-goro* soóná kótó ga yóku arimasu.

There are many incidents like that these days.

Kono-goro soóná mónó wa kaé-másén.

You can't buy such things these days.

Harú-góro no hanáshǐ desu.

It occurred around spring. (It's a story [of an incident] around spring.)

* Chika is the stem of chikái "near."

(c) Kóro is noun meaning "period" or "time."

EXAMPLES

Soónó kóro wa máda kodomo déshita.

At that time, I was still a child.

Méeji no kóro no hanáshǐ desu.

It's a story about Meiji times.

Nihón e ikú kóro ni wa hanásé-másu yo.

You'll be able to speak by the time you [are ready to] go to Japan.

13.4 Conjunctions máe and máde

(a) Máde modified by a non-past verb has the meaning "until." The action of the predicate verb will take place "until" the action of that non-past verb occurs.

EXAMPLES:

Kishá ga tsúku made kaimono o shimasu.

I will do some shopping until the train comes in.

Denwa ga kakáru made kōko ni imasu.

I will stay here until the telephone call comes through.

Joózú ni nāru made máinichi kakimáshita.

He wrote it every day until he became skillful [at it].

(b) Máe modified by a non-past verb in its positive or negative (-náǐ, etc.) form has the meaning "before." The action of the predicate occurs "before" the action of the non-past verb.

EXAMPLES:

Tanaka-san ga kúru mae ni kaérímáshóo.

Let's go home before Mr. Tanaka comes.

13.5

ject
EXAMverb
"imp
EXA

13

"ex
to.

Áme ga furánai máe ni kaérí-
máshoo.
Osoku naránai máe ni kaérímá-
shoo.
Tátsu máe ni denwa o kakemasu.
Jidóosha o kau máe deshita.
Tátsu mae wa dono-gurai isógá-
shii ka shitté írú deshoo!
Dekákérú máe no denwa wa Tanáká-
sán kára deshita.

Let's go home before it rains.
Let's go home before it becomes
late.
I will telephone before I leave.
It was before I bought a car.
You know how busy it is before
departure!
The telephone call [which came]
before I left, was one from
Mr. Tanaka.

13.5 Tsumori

(a) Tsumori modified by the informal non-past of a verb or verbal adjective (including the -nai form) expresses "intention."

EXAMPLES:

Iku tsumori desu.
Íkú tsúmórí désu ka?
Íkanai tsumori desu.
Íkú tsúmórí dé wa arímásén.
Íkú tsúmórí déshita.
Tanaka-san mo íkanai tsumori
da to íímáshita.
Ashita suru tsumori no shigoto
dátta ga, hoka no shigoto ga
dekite, dekinai kotó ni narí-
máshita.
Warúi tsumori de íímásén deshita.

I intend to go.
Do you intend to go?
I intend not to go.
I don't intend to go.
I intended to go.
Mr. Tanaka also said that he
doesn't intend to go.
I had intended to do the work to-
morrow, but it's come about
that I will not be able to do
it because some other work has
come up.
I didn't say it with bad inten-
tions.

(b) Tsumori modified by a noun plus no, the informal perfective of a verb or the informal non-past or perfective of a verbal adjective expresses "impression."

EXAMPLES:

Ano tegami wa dáshita tsumori
desu ga...
Are de benkyoo no tsumori desu.
Kattá tókí wa yókatta tsumori
déshita ga...
Tadáshii tsumori de imasu.

I thought I had mailed that let-
ter. I am under the impres-
sion that I mailed that letter.
He thinks that's studying.
I thought it was good when I
bought it, but...
He thinks it's accurate. He is
under the impression that it's
accurate.

13.6 Hazu

Hazu modified by a noun plus no, verb or verbal adjective expresses "expectation" and has the meaning "supposed to," "expected to" or "ought to." Hazu modified by any form other than the non-past verb usually

concerns expectations which one has of a third person or thing.

EXAMPLES:

Kyóo iku hazu desu.

I'm supposed to go today.

Kyóo ikú házú deshita.

He is supposed to go today.

Kyóo itta hazu desu.

I was supposed to go today.

Kyóo ikanai hazu desu.

He was supposed to go today.

Kyóo ikánákatta hazu desu.

He ought to have gone today.

He is not expected to go today.

Yasukatta hazu desu ga...sonna
ni takakatta n' desu ka?

I'm under the impression that he
didn't go today.

Was it that expensive? I had the
impression that it was inex-
pensive.

Koko kara chikái hazu desu.

It's supposed to be near here.

Byóókí nó házú ná no ni éega o
mí ni itta.

He went to see a movie when he's
supposed to be sick.

The expression hazu ga (wa) náí or hazu ga (wa) arímásén has the mean-
ing "there's no reason..." or "there's no reason to expect that..."

EXAMPLES:

Sonná kótó o yuú házú gá náí.

There's no reason for him to say
that.

Sonna ni takái hazu wa arímásén.

It shouldn't be so expensive.

There is no reason for it to
be so expensive.

Tanaka-san wa kyóo wa Yōkohama
e itta kara, Tanaka-san no
hazu wa náí.

That can't be Mr. Tanaka, because
he went to Yokohama today.

13.7 Bákari

(a) Bákari after a numeral, a numeral plus a numerary adjunct, or a
quantity word has the meaning "only about."

EXAMPLES:

Mittsú-bákari desu (arimasu).

There are only about three.

Itsútsu-bakari no kodómó desu
kara, wakáru hazu wa arímásén.

There's no reason for the child
to understand, because he's
only about five.

Compare with:

Mittsú-gúrai arimasu.

There are about three.

Itsútsu-gúrai no kodomo desu.

He's a child of about five.

In the former two examples, it is hoped or expected that there are more, but
unfortunately, there are only about three; similarly, he is a child of no
more than five.

(b) Bákari after a noun or the gerund of a verb has the meaning "only"
and nothing else or "always."

EXAMPLES:

Ego no h^{on} b^{akari} y^{onde} imasu.

He only reads English books (and nothing else).

Benky^{oo} b^{akari} shite imasu.

He is always studying (and not doing anything else).

Benkyoo shite b^{akari} imasu.

He is always studying.

Compare with:

Ego no h^{on} dake y^{onde} imasu.

He is reading only English books.

Benkyoo dake shite imasu.

He is just studying.

(c) Bakari modified by non-past and perfective verbs and verbal adjectives has the meaning "only" or "just."

EXAMPLES:

Tab^{eru} b^{akari} de shigoto wa shimas^{en}.

He just eats and doesn't do any work.

Ichido i^{tta} b^{akari} desu kara, y^{oku} shirimas^{en}.

I don't know very well, because I've only gone there once.

Hayai b^{akari} de jo^{ozu} de wa arimas^{en}.

He's only fast and not [really] skillful.

Ippun osokatta b^{akari} ni hairu kot^o ga dekimas^{en} deshita.

I was unable to get in just because I was one minute late.

(d) Bakari modified by a verb in the perfective means "to have just" done something.

EXAMPLES:

I^{ma} tabeta b^{akari} desu.

I have just eaten.

Kinoo y^{onda} b^{akari} desu.

I just read about it yesterday.

Compare with:

I^{ma} tabeta tokoro desu.

I have just eaten.

Kinoo y^{onda} tokoro desu.

I just read about it yesterday.

DRILL

1. Blackboard drill. (Point and have students repeat.)

(a) Numerals one through ten.

(b) Numerals by tens, ten, twenty, thirty, etc.

(c) Numerals one through ninety-nine.

2. Identification (Keeping the right side covered)

1	ich ⁱ
4	shi ⁱ , y ^{on}
24	ni ^{juu} -y ^{on}
42	y ^{on} juu-ni ⁱ
44	y ^{on} juu-y ^{on}

6	rokú
8	hachí
16	juú-rókú
18	juú-hachí
52	gojuu-ní
26	níjuu-rokú
82	hachíjuu-ní
48	yónjuu-hachí
86	hachíjuu-rokú
84	hachíjuu-yón
68	rokujuu-hachí
9	kyúu
3	san
5	gó
34	sánjuu-yón
33	sánjuu-san
54	gojuu-yón
95	kyúujuu-gó
39	sánjuu-kyúu
13	júu-san
65	rokujuu-gó
49	yónjuu-kyúu
99	kyúujuu-kyúu
7	nána
79	nanájuu-kyúu
89	hachíjuu-kyúu
76	nanájuu-rokú
37	sánjuu-nána

3. Blackboard drill. (Draw a clock, point and have students repeat.)

- (a) The hours.
(b) The minutes.

4. Identification (keeping the right side covered)

1:03	ichíji-sámpun
1:10	ichíji-jíppun
1:30	ichíji-hán
1:40	ichíji-yónjíppun
2:04	níji-yómpun
3:05	sánji-gófun
3:15	sánji-júu-gofun
3:25	sánji-níjuu-gófun
4:06	yóji-róppun
4:12	yóji-juú-nífun
4:22	yóji-níjuu-nífun
4:30	yojí-hán
5:13	góji-juú-sámpun

5:23	gōji-níjuu-sámpun
5:53	gōji-gojuú-sámpun
6:08	rokúji-háppun
6:18	rokúji-juú-háppun
6:48	rokúji-yónjuu-háppun
7:07	shichíji-nanáfun
7:14	shichíji-juú-yómpun
7:36	shichíji-sánjuu-róppun
7:48	shichíji-yónjuu-háppun
8:02	hachíji-nífun
8:45	hachíji-yónjuu-gófun
8:47	hachíji-yónjuu-nanáfun
9:01	kúji-íppun
9:11	kúji-juú-íppun
9:30	kúji-hán
9:42	kúji-yónjuu-nífun
10:09	juúji-kyúufun
10:19	juúji-juú-kyúufun
10:49	juúji-yónjuu-kyúufun
11:03	juú-íchíji-sámpun
11:46	juú-íchíji-yónjuu-róppun
11:50	juú-íchíji-gojuúppun
12:01	juú-níji-íppun
12:06	juú-níji-róppun
12:24	juú-níji-níjuu-yómpun

5. Substitution

(a) Gōzen ichíji-sámpun desu.

It's 1:03 a.m.

(Use the figures in Drill 4.)

(b) Gōgo ichíji-sámpun desu.

It's 1:03 p.m.

(Use the figures in Drill 4.)

6. Substitution

Yóji gofún sugi desu.

It's five minutes after four.

(júppun)

Yóji júppún sugi desu.

It's ten minutes after four.

(júu-gofun)

Yóji juú-gófún sugi desu.

It's fifteen minutes after four.

(nijúppun)

Yóji nijúppún sugi desu.

It's twenty minutes after four.

(níjuu-gofun)

Yóji níjuu-gofún sugi
desu.It's twenty-five minutes after
four.

(sañjúppun)

Yóji sañjúppún sugi desu.

It's thirty minutes after four.

(sánjuu-gofun)

Yóji sánjuu-gofún sugi
desu.It's thirty-five minutes after
four.

7. Substitution

Kúji sámpún mae desu.

It's three minutes of nine.

(yómpun) Kúji yómpún mae desu.
 (róppun) Kúji róppún mae desu.
 (háppun) Kúji háppún mae desu.
 (júppun) Kúji júppún mae desu.
 (júu-gofun) Kúji júu-gófún mae desu.
 (nijúppun) Kúji nijúppún mae desu.
 (níjuu-nífun) Kúji níjuu-nífún mae desu.

It's four minutes of nine.
 It's six minutes of nine.
 It's eight minutes of nine.
 It's ten minutes of nine.
 It's fifteen minutes of nine.
 It's twenty minutes of nine.
 It's twenty-two minutes of nine.

8. Substitution

Kyóoto-hatsu wa níji desu.

Departure from Kyōto is at two.

(Oosaka) Oósáká-hátsu wa níji desu.
 (Nagoya) Nagoya-hatsu wa níji desu.
 (Hiroshima) Hiróshímá-hátsu wa níji
 desu.
 (Nagásaki) Nagásaki-hatsu wa níji desu.
 (Yokohama) Yokohámá-hátsu wa níji desu.

Departure from Ōsaka is at two.
 Departure from Nagoya is at two.
 Departure from Hiroshima is at
 two.
 Departure from Nagasaki is at two.
 Departure from Yokohama is at two.

9. Substitution

Kyóoto o shichíjǐ-hán ni tachimasu.

It will leave Kyōto at seven-
thirty.

(Oosaka) Oosaka o shichíjǐ-hán ni
 tachimasu.
 (Tookyoo) Tookyoo o shichíjǐ-hán ni
 tachimasu.
 (Yokohama) Yokohama o shichíjǐ-hán ni
 tachimasu.
 (Hakone) Hakone o shichíjǐ-hán ni
 tachimasu.
 (Hiroshima) Hiroshima o shichíjǐ-hán ni
 tachimasu.
 (Nagásaki) Nagásaki o shichíjǐ-hán ni
 tachimasu.

It will leave Ōsaka at seven-
thirty.
 It will leave Tōkyō at seven-
thirty.
 It will leave Yokohama at seven-
thirty.
 It will leave Hakone at seven-
thirty.
 It will leave Hiroshima at
 seven-thirty.
 It will leave Nagasaki at seven-
thirty.

10. Substitution

Hachíji-hatsu no kishá desu.

It's the train leaving at eight.

(sánji) Sánji-hatsu no kishá desu.
 (yóji) Yóji-hatsu no kishá desu.
 (rokúji) Rokúji-hatsu no kishá desu.
 (ichíji) Ichíji-hatsu no kishá desu.
 (kúji) Kúji-hatsu no kishá desu.

It's the train leaving at three.
 It's the train leaving at four.
 It's the train leaving at six.
 It's the train leaving at one.
 It's the train leaving at nine.

11. Grammar (giving opposite meaning)

(Júuji-hatsu no kishá ni norimasu.)

Júuji-chaku no kishá ni norimasu.

(Yóji-hatsu no kishá ni norimasu.)

Yóji-chaku no kishá ni norimasu.

(Góji-hatsu no kishá ni norimasu.)

Góji-chaku no kishá ni norimasu.

(Shichíji-hatsu no kishá ni norimasu.)

Shichíji-chaku no kishá ni norimasu.

(I'll take the train which leaves at ten.)

I'll take the train which arrives at ten.

(I'll take the train which leaves at four.)

I'll take the train which arrives at four.

(I'll take the train which leaves at five.)

I'll take the train which arrives at five.

(I'll take the train which leaves at seven.)

I'll take the train which arrives at seven.

12. Substitution

Yokohama-chaku wa nánji ni narímasu ka?

What time will our arrival in Yokohama be?

(Kamakura) Kamakúra-chaku wa nánji ni narímasu ka?

What time will our arrival in Kamakura be?

(Osaka) Oósaká-chaku wa nánji ni narímasu ka?

What time will our arrival in Ōsaka be?

(Kyóoto) Kyóoto-chaku wa nánji ni narímasu ka?

What time will our arrival in Kyōto be?

(Nagasaki) Nagásaki-chaku wa nánji ni narímasu ka?

What time will our arrival in Nagasaki be?

(Hiroshima) Hiróshimá-chaku wa nánji ni narímasu ka?

What time will our arrival in Hiroshima be?

13. Substitution

Yokohama ni chōodo ichíjī-hán ni tsukimasu.

We will arrive in Yokohama at exactly one-thirty.

(sanjī-hán) Yokohama ni chōodo sanjī-hán ni tsukimasu.

We will arrive in Yokohama at exactly three-thirty.

(yojī-hán) Yokohama ni chōodo yojī-hán ni tsukimasu.

We will arrive in Yokohama at exactly four-thirty.

(shichíjī-hán) Yokohama ni chōodo shichíjī-hán ni tsukimasu.

We will arrive in Yokohama at exactly seven-thirty.

(hachíjī-hán) Yokohama ni chōodo hachíjī-hán ni tsukimasu.

We will arrive in Yokohama at exactly eight-thirty.

(kujī-hán) Yokohama ni chōodo kujī-hán ni tsukimasu.

We will arrive in Yokohama at exactly nine-thirty.

14. Response and Substitution

Q. Nanjī-gōro ni dekakemasu ka?

(ichīji)

A. Ichīji-gōro ni dekakemasu.

(ichīji-jūu-gofun) Ichīji-jūu-gōfūn-gōro ni dekakemasu.
 (nīji-nijūpun) Nīji-nijūppūn-gōro ni dekakemasu.
 (sanjī-han) Sanjī-han-gōro ni dekakemasu.
 (yōji-yonjūpun) Yōji-yonjūppūn-gōro ni dekakemasu.
 (gōji) Gōji-gōro ni dekakemasu.
 (rokūjī-han) Rokūjī-han-gōro ni dekakemasu.

Around what time will you start out?

(one o' clock)

I will start out around one o' clock.

I will start out around one-fifteen.

I will start out around two-twenty.

I will start out around three-thirty.

I will start out around four-forty.

I will start out around five o' clock.

I will start out around six-thirty.

15. Substitution

Hontoo ni sonō kōro wa yomémásén deshita.

(kodōmō nó kōro) Hontoo ni kodōmō nó kōro wa yomémásén deshita.
 (chiīsái koro) Hontoo ni chiīsái koro wa yomémásén deshita.
 (gakúsée nó kōro) Hontoo ni gakúsée nó kōro wa yomémásén deshita.
 (Nihōn ni itā kōro) Hontoo ni Nihōn ni itā kōro wa yomémásén deshita.

At that time I was really unable to read it.

When I was a child, I was really unable to read it.

When I was little, I was really unable to read it.

When I was a student, I was really unable to read it.

When I was in Japan, I was really unable to read it.

16. Substitution

Gofūn-gurai kakarimasu.

(sāmpun) Sāmpūn-gurai kakarimasu.
 (jūppun) Jūppūn-gurai kakarimasu.
 (jūu-gofun) Jūu-gōfūn-gurai kakarimasu.
 (nijūppun) Nijūppūn-gurai kakarimasu.
 (sanjūppun) Sanjūppūn-gurai kakarimasu.
 (yonjūppun) Yonjūppūn-gurai kakarimasu.

It takes about five minutes.

It takes about three minutes.

It takes about ten minutes.

It takes about fifteen minutes.

It takes about twenty minutes.

It takes about thirty minutes.

It takes about forty minutes.

17. Substitution

Ichíjikan-gurai kakárimashita.

It took about one hour.

(ichíjikan-
hán) Ichíjikan-hán-gurai kakárimashita.
(nijikan) Nijikan-gurai kakárimashita.
(yojikan) Yojikan-gurai kakárimashita.
(yojikan-hán) Yojikan-hán-gurai kakárimashita.
(rokujikan) Rokujikan-gurai kakárimashita.
(juujikan) Juujikan-gurai kakárimashita.
(juu-yojikan) Juu-yojikan-gurai kakárimashita.
(juu-nijikan) Juu-nijikan-gurai kakárimashita.

It took about an hour and a half.
It took about two hours.
It took about four hours.
It took about four hours and a half.
It took about six hours.
It took about ten hours.
It took about fourteen hours.
It took about twelve hours.

18. Substitution

Kyóoto kara Toókyóó máde dono-gurai kakárimasu ka?

About how long does it take from Kyōto to Tōkyō?

(Oosaka) Oosaka kara Toókyóó máde dono-gurai kakárimasu ka?
(Kóobe) Kóobe kara Toókyóó máde dono-gurai kakárimasu ka?
(Hakone) Hakone kara Toókyóó máde dono-gurai kakárimasu ka?
(Nagásaki) Nagásaki kara Toókyóó máde dono-gurai kakárimasu ka?

About how long does it take from Ōsaka to Tōkyō?
About how long does it take from Kōbe to Tōkyō?
About how long does it take from Hakone to Tōkyō?
About how long does it take from Nagasaki to Tōkyō?

19. Response

Q. Yokohama kara Toókyóó máde dono-gurai kakárimasu ka?

About how long does it take from Yokohama to Tōkyō?

A. Yonjūppūn-gurai kakarimasu.

It takes about forty minutes.

(Substitute American cities for the above question.)

20. Substitution

Ashítá made ni tsukítái n' desu.

I'd like to arrive by tomorrow.

(ban) Bañ made ni tsukítái n' desu.
(ása) Ása made ni tsukítái n' desu.
(hirú) Hirú made ni tsukítái n' desu.
(juu-níji) Juu-níji made ni tsukítái n' desu.

I'd like to arrive by evening.
I'd like to arrive by morning.
I'd like to arrive by noon.
I'd like to arrive by twelve o' clock.

(rokúji)	Rokúji made ni tsukítái n' desu.	I'd like to arrive by six o' clock.
(bańgóhan)	Bańgóhan made ni tsukítái n' desu.	I'd like to arrive by dinner-time.

21. Substitution

<u>Ashítá</u> made ni dekimásu ka?	Will it be ready by tomorrow?
(ban) Bań máde ni dekimásu ka?	Will it be ready by tonight?
(góji) Góji made ni dekimásu ka?	Will it be ready by five o' clock?
(ohíru) Ohíru made ni dekimásu ka?	Will it be ready by noon?
(juú-íchíji) Juú-íchíji made ni dekimásu ka?	Will it be ready by eleven o' clock?
(nijí-góro) Nijí-góro made ni dekimásu ka?	Will it be ready by around two o' clock?
(yojí-góro) Yojí-góro made ni dekimásu ka?	Will it be ready by around four o' clock?

22. Substitution

Yóji made ni <u>tsukúru</u> no wa taihen desu.	It's a terrific [strain] to make it by four o' clock.
(kazóeru) Yóji made ni kazóeru no wa taihen desu.	It's a terrific [strain] to count it by four o' clock.
(tátsu) Yóji made ni tátsu no wa taihen desu.	It's a terrific [strain] to leave by four o' clock.
(tsúku) Yóji made ni tsúku no wa taihen desu.	It's a terrific [strain] to arrive by four o' clock.
(dekakeru) Yóji made ni dekákerú no wa taihen desu.	It's a terrific [strain] to start out by four o' clock.
(shite shimau) Yóji made ni shité shímáu no wa taihen desu.	It's a terrific [strain] to finish doing it by four o' clock.

23. Substitution

<u>Góji</u> -hatsu no hikóoki ni maníáimáshita.		I was in time for the five o' clock plane.
(gózen kúji)	Gózen kúji-hatsu no hikóoki ni maníáimáshita.	I was in time for the nine a.m. plane.
(gózen juú- íchíji)	Gózen juú-íchíji-hatsu no hikóoki ni maníáimáshita.	I was in time for the eleven a.m. plane.
(gógo níji)	Gógo níji-hatsu no hikóoki ni maníáimáshita.	I was in time for the two p.m. plane.
(gógo yojí- hán)	Gógo yojí-hán-hatsu no hikóoki ni maníáimáshita.	I was in time for the four- thirty p.m. plane.

(gógo shi- Gógo shichíji-hatsu no hikóo- I was in time for the seven
chíji) ki ni maníáímáshita. p.m. plane.

24. Blackboard drill

Write one through ten in Arabic numerals. Drill, hitótsu, futátsú, etc.

25. Substitution

Hitótsu de maniaimasu.

One will be enough.

(futátsú)	Futátsú de maniaimasu.	Two will be enough.
(mittsú)	Mittsú de maniaimasu.	Three will be enough.
(yottsú)	Yottsú de maniaimasu.	Four will be enough.
(itsútsu)	Itsútsu de maniaimasu.	Five will be enough.
(muittsú)	Muittsú de maniaimasu.	Six will be enough.
(nanátsu)	Nanátsu de maniaimasu.	Seven will be enough.
(yátsú)	Yátsú de maniaimasu.	Eight will be enough.
(kokónotsu)	Kokónotsu de maniaimasu.	Nine will be enough.
(tóo)	Tóo de maniaimasu.	Ten will be enough.
(juú-íchi)	Juú-íchi de maniaimasu.	Eleven will be enough.

26. Substitution

Hitótsu desu.

He's a year old.

(futátsú)	Futátsú desu.	He's two years old.
(mittsú)	Mittsú desu.	He's three years old.
(yoŋtsú)	Yoŋtsú desu.	He's four years old.
(itsútsu)	Itsútsu desu.	He's five years old.
(muŋtsú)	Muŋtsú desu.	He's six years old.
(nanátsu)	Nanátsu desu.	He's seven years old.
(yaŋtsú)	Yaŋtsú desu.	He's eight years old.
(kokónotsu)	Kokónotsu desu.	He's nine years old.
(tóo)	Tóo desu.	He's ten years old.
(juú-íchi)	Juú-íchi desu.	He's eleven years old.
(hátschi)	Hátschi desu.	He's twenty years old.

27. Substitution

Toshí wa hitótsú-gúrai desu ka?

Is his age about a year?

(futátsú)	Toshí wa futátsú-gúrai desu ka?	Is his age about two?
(mittsú)	Toshí wa mittsú-gúrai desu ka?	Is his age about three?
(muftsú)	Toshí wa muftsú-gúrai desu ka?	Is his age about six?
(yoftsú)	Toshí wa yoftsú-gúrai desu ka?	Is his age about four?
(yattsú)	Toshí wa yattsú-gúrai desu ka?	Is his age about eight?
(hátaichi)	Toshí wa hatachí-gúrai desu ka?	Is his age about twenty?
(íkutsu)	Toshí wa ikútsú-gúrai desu ka?	About how old is his age?

28. Substitution

Ashita dekakeru hazu desu.

I'm supposed to start out to-morrow.

(iku) Ashita iku hazu desu.
(kazóeru) Ashita kazóeru hazu desu.I'm supposed to go tomorrow.
I'm supposed to count it to-morrow.(tátu) Ashita tátsu hazu desu.
(tsúku) Ashita tsúku hazu desu.
(tsukúru) Ashita tsukúru hazu desu.I'm supposed to leave tomorrow.
I'm supposed to arrive tomorrow.
I'm supposed to make it tomorrow.

(yasúmu) Ashita yasúmu hazu desu.

I'm supposed to take a holiday tomorrow.

(kakéru) Ashita kakéru hazu desu.

I'm supposed to telephone to-morrow.

29. Substitution

Yónde oku hazú déshita ga...

I was supposed to have had it read, but...

(tsukútte) Tsukútte oku hazú déshita ga...

I was supposed to have had it made, but...

(kazóete) Kazóete oku hazú déshita ga...

I was supposed to have had it counted, but...

(kafté) Kafté okú házú déshita ga...

I was supposed to have [already] purchased it, but...

(káeshite) Káeshite oku hazú déshita ga...

I was supposed to have [already] returned it, but...

(míte) Míte oku hazú déshita ga...

I was supposed to have [already] looked it over, but...

30. Substitution

Móo tsúita hazu desu.

He ought to have arrived by now.

(dekaketa) Móo dekaketa hazu desu.

He ought to have left by now.

(kazóeta) Móo kazóeta hazu desu.

He ought to have counted them by now.

(tátta) Móo tátta hazu desu.

He ought to have left by now.

(dāshita) Móo dāshita hazu desu.

He ought to have mailed it by now.

(tsukútta) Móo tsukútta hazu desu.

He ought to have made it by now.

31. Substitution

Iku hazu wa arímásén.

There's no reason for you to go.

(káku) Káku hazu wa arímásén.

There's no reason for you to write.

(kazóeru) Kazóeru hazu wa arímásén.

There's no reason for you to count it.

(yuu) Yuu hazu wa arímásén.
 (wasureru) Wasureru hazu wa arímásén.
 (arúku) Arúku hazu wa arímásén.
 (naráu) Naráu hazu wa arímásén.

(oshieru) Oshieru hazu wa arímásén.

There's no reason for you to say it.
 There's no reason for you to forget.
 There's no reason for you to walk.
 There's no reason for you to learn it.
 There's no reason for you to teach it.

32. Grammar

(Kyóo dekakemasu.)
 Kyóo dekakeru tsumori desu.
 (Kyóo kazoemasu.)
 Kyóo kazoéru tsumori desu.
 (Kyóo yasumimasu.)
 Kyóo yasumu tsumori desu.
 (Kyóo aimasu.)
 Kyóo au tsumori desu.
 (Kyóo kimemasu.)
 Kyóo kimeru tsumori desu.
 (Kyóo shirabemasu.)
 Kyóo shiráberu tsumori desu.

(I am starting out today.)
 I intend to start out today.
 (I will count it today.)
 I intend to count it today.
 (I will take a holiday today.)
 I intend to take a holiday today.
 (I will meet him today.)
 I intend to meet him today.
 (I will decide it today.)
 I intend to decide it today.
 (I will investigate it today.)
 I intend to investigate it today.

33. Grammar

(Kyóo dekakeru tsumori desu.)
 Kinoo dekakéru tsúmórí déshita.
 (Kyóo kazoéru tsumori desu.)
 Kinoo kazoéru tsumori déshita.
 (Kyóo onegai suru tsumori desu.)
 Kinoo onégái súrú tsúmórí déshita.
 (Kyóo kimeru tsumori desu.)
 Kinoo kiméru tsúmórí déshita.
 (Kyóo tsukau tsumori desu.)
 Kinoo tsukáu tsúmórí déshita.
 (Kyóo kiku tsumori desu.)
 Kinoo kikú tsúmórí déshita.

(I intend to start out today.)
 I intended to start out yesterday.
 (I intend to count it today.)
 I intended to count it yesterday.
 (I intend to make the request today.)
 I intended to make the request yesterday.
 (I intend to decide it today.)
 I intended to decide it yesterday.
 (I intend to use it today.)
 I intended to use it yesterday.
 (I intend to ask today.)
 I intended to ask yesterday.

34. Substitution

Móo káita tsumori desu.

I thought I had already written it.

(kimeta) Móo kimeta tsumori desu.

I thought I had already decided it.

(wakátta) Móo wakátta tsumori desu.

I thought I had understood it already.

(hanáshita) Móo hanáshita tsumori desu.

I thought I had spoken of it already.

(míseta) Móo míseta tsumori desu.

I thought I had already shown it to them.

(onegai shita) Móo onegai shita tsumori desu.

I thought I had already requested it.

(dáshita) Móo dáshita tsumori desu.

I thought I had already sent it.

35. Substitution

Miítsú bákarí arimasu.

There are about three.

(muítsú) Muítsú bákarí arimasu.

There are about six.

(yoítsú) Yoítsú bákarí arimasu.

There are about four.

(yaítsú) Yaítsú bákarí arimasu.

There are about eight.

(nanátsu) Nanátsu bákarí arimasu.

There are about seven.

(kokónotsu) Kokónotsu bákarí arimasu.

There are about nine.

(tóo) Tóo bákarí arimasu.

There are about ten.

36. Substitution

Yónde bákarí imasu.

He is always reading.

(kiíte) Kiíte bákarí imasu.

He is always asking.

(shirábete) Shirábete bákarí imasu.

He is always asking.

(tábete) Tábeta bákarí imasu.

He is always eating.

(nónde) Nónde bákarí imasu.

He is always drinking.

(katte) Kátte bákarí imasu.

He is always buying [things].

(dekakete) Dekakété bákarí imasu.

He is always going out.

(itte) Itté bákarí imasu.

He is always saying that.

(hanáshite) Hanáshite bákarí imasu.

He is always talking.

37. Substitution

Tabéru bákarí de shigoto wa shimásén.

He only eats and doesn't do any work.

(nómu) Nómu bákarí de shigoto wa shimásén.

He only drinks and doesn't do any work.

(yuu) Yuú bákarí de shigoto wa shimásén.

He only says so and doesn't do the work.

(yasumu)	Yasumu bakari de shigoto wa shimasen.	He only takes holidays and doesn't do any work.
(kiku)	Kiku bakari de shigoto wa shimasen.	He only asks about it and doesn't do any work.
(benkyoo suru)	Benkyoo suru bakari de shigoto wa shimasen.	He only studies and doesn't do any work.

38. Substitution

	ima tabeta bakari desu.	I've just eaten now.
(kaetta)	ima kaetta bakari desu.	I've just come home now.
(denwa o kaketa)	ima denwa o kaketa bakari desu.	I just telephoned now.
(katta)	ima katta bakari desu.	I just bought it now.
(kiita)	ima kiita bakari desu.	I just heard of it now.
(kazoeta)	ima kazoeta bakari desu.	I just counted it now.
(dashedita)	ima dashedita bakari desu.	I just mailed it now.

COMPREHENSION PASSAGE

Part I: Kaisha de no hanashi

Tanaka. Ima nanji desu ka?

Yamamoto. Chodo juuchiji-nijupun sugi desu. Ohiru made mada sukoshi jikan ga arimasu.

T. Iie. Ohirugohan no koto de wa nakute, Sumisu-san ga kyoo Tookyoo-eki ni tsuku hazu desu kara, watakushi wa eki made iku tsumori na n' desu. Hontoo wa kinoo made ni kuru hazu datta n' desu.

Y. Nanji no kisha ni noru n' desu ka?

T. Osaka o gozen shichiji ni tatsu kisha ni notta hazu desu.

Y. Osaka kara Tookyoo made shichi-hachijikan-gurai kakarimasu ne.

Shimizu: Iie. Gozen shichiji no kisha nara, rokujikan-han-bakari shika kakarimasen kara, Tookyoo-eki ni wa gogo ichiji-han ni tsuku hazu desu.

Y. Soo sureba, koko o ichiji-goro ni detara maniau deshoo.

S. Iie. Ohirugoro wa sanjippun-bakari de wa ikeru hazu wa arimasen. Yonjippun-gurai wa kakaru kara, ichiji-han-chaku no kisha nara, osokute mo juuniji-yonjuu-gofun ni koko o dekaketa hoo ga ii deshoo.

- T. Watakushi wa góhan o tábete kara sugu dekakeru tsumori desu. Háya-kereba, kishá ga tsúku máe ni, éki no náka no depáato de kaimono o suru tsumori desu.
- S. Sonó hoo ga íi deshoo. Kyoo wa gogo isógashiku náí hazu desu kara, yasunde mo kamawánai deshoo.
- T. Aríгато. Watakushi wa ima tokée gá náí kara, sonó koro ni náttara, Shímizu-san, oshíété kúdásái. Tanómímasu yo. Kono-goro hntoo ni Toó-kyoo-eki no chikáku wa taihén desu ne. Konó máe takushii de Toókyoo-eki made itta toki, moó sukoshi de juusanji-han-hatsu no kishá ni maníawá-naku náru tokoro deshita.
- Y. Sore wa Tároo-san to Kyóoto e itta tókí desu ka?
- T. Ée. Hajime wa Tároo wa ikánaí tsúmórí deshita ga, ikú kótó ni narímá-shita. Choodo harúyasumi de isshe ni ikéta no de. Moo hatachi na no ni, máda Kyóoto o shiránákatta n' desu yo.
- S. Moo juuníji-roppun mae ni narímasu kara, sórosoro góhan ni dekáémashoo.
- T. Ée. Éki e ikú máe ni, góhan o tábete shimáwanakereba naránai kara, háyaku dekáémashoo.
- Y. Hanáshite iru to jikan nó tatsu no ga hayái desu ne.

Part II

Kinoo Hiroshi-kun ga juu-san ni nátta no de, boku wa tonari e bangóhan o tábe ni ikímashita. Choodo jikan ni itta no ni, góhan ga máda dekite inákatta kara, góhan no dekíru made, iróiro ná hanáshí o shite matte imashita. Sonó tókí minna no toshi nó hanáshí ga demashita. Hiroshi-kun no ootoosan wa yonjuu-hachi desu ga, okaasan wa yonjuu ni nátta bakari da to kikímashita. Hiroshi-kun wa juu-san de, imoto no Fumie-san wa Hiroshi-kun to toshi ga mitsú chigau kara, ima too no hazu desu. Ootoo no Masao-kun wa ikutsu ka yoku shirimasen ga, tabun yottsú-gurai deshoo. Masao-kun wa máda kazóeru kotó ga dekímasen kara, kiite mo wakárimasen. Nihon de wa mitsú ni náru made gakkoo ni hairénai kara, máda Masao-kun wa gakkoo é itte imasen. Hiroshi-kun no onéesan wa kotóshi nó haru kekkon shita bakari desu ga, máda hatachi desu. Atarashiku Hiroshi-kun no oníisan ni nátta hito wa nijuu-gó desu. Boku no áni mo hatachi desu ga, máda daigákusee desu.

EXERCISE

- A. Insert koro, goro or gurai in the following blanks.
1. Kotoshi no aki _____ ryokoo suru hazu da to kikímashita.
 2. Nihon ni dono _____ sunde imashita ka?

3. Taróó-sán _____ eego ga hanáséreba ii desu ne.
4. Ohírú _____ kara áme ga fúru tō rájio de itté imóshita.
5. Anó hito wa ikútsú _____ deshoo ka?
6. Sanjí _____ ni kishā ga tsuku hazu desu.
7. Éega wa ichíjikan _____ kakáru tō omoimasu.
8. Kodómó nó _____ byoóki bakari shité imóshita.
9. Oósáká ní tsuita no wa gojǐ _____ deshita.
10. Gofún _____ denwá dé hanáshimashita.
11. Jidóosha de juǐpún _____ kakáru tō iimáshita.
12. Kore wa Méeji no _____ no yooofuku desu.
13. Nijǐ-hán _____ ni tabemáshita.
14. Itsú _____ kimáshita ka?

B. Give the answers to the following problems in addition.

1. Júu-san to júu-go de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
2. Gojuu-ichǐ to rokú de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
3. Kyúu to nijuu-nána de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
4. Kyúujuu-nǐ to sań dé wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
5. Sánjuu-hachǐ to yón de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
6. Gojuu-rokú to rokú de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
7. Yoǐtsú to muǐtsú de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
8. Miǐtsú to yaǐtsú de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
9. Muǐtsú to tóo de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?
10. Juú-rókú to hachǐ de wa ikutsu ni narímásu ka?

C. Reply to the following questions.

1. Anáta no tōkee wa íma chōodo nánji-námpun desu ka?
2. Gógo no júuji made donó-gúrai árímásu ka?
3. Hirúgohan o nánji ni tabemáshita ka? Sore wa íma kara nanjikan mae deshita ka? (or)
Hirúgohan o nánji ni tabemasu ka? Sore wa íma kara nanjikan ato desu ka?
4. íma kara sanjikan-hán ato wa nánji-námpun desu ka?
5. Kyóo wa nanjikan-gurai benkyóo shímáshita ka?
6. Mainichi nánji kara nánji made benkyóo shímásu ka?
7. Uchi kara daigákú made jidóosha de námpun kakárimásu ka?
8. Mainichi nánji ni uchǐ ó demásu ka?
9. Mainichi nánji ni uchǐ é kaérimásu ka?
10. Máiban nanjikan-gurai yasúmímásu ka?

D. Insert máde, máde ni or mae ni in the following blanks.

1. Gojǐ-goro _____ kono shigoto o kanarazu shité kúdásái.
Please do this job by around five o'clock without fail.
2. Nijǐ-hán-goro _____ kaeránai tō omoimasu.
I don't think I'll be back until around two o'clock.

3. Tanaka-san ga tsúku _____ awánakereba narímásén.
I must meet him before Mr. Tanaka arrives.
4. Soré _____ maníáeba íi desu.
It'll be fine if it's ready by then.
5. Mótte iku _____ yóku shirábete kudasai.
Please check it well before you take it over there.
6. Ikeda-san ga kúru _____ kôko de mátte imashoo.
Let's wait here until Mr. Ikeda comes.
7. Kono shigoto ga owáru _____ kaérémásén.
I can't go home until this work is finished.
8. Báñ _____ deñwá ó kánete kudasai.
Please phone me before evening.
9. Gohan o tabéru _____ bíru o nomímáshita.
I drank some beer before eating my dinner.

E. Tell your friend that:

1. you intend to stay at home today because you have just returned from Kyūshū yesterday.
2. you intend to buy some cakes later because there are only a few.
3. he only eats and doesn't do any work.
4. you weren't able to make the train which departs at four.
5. you are supposed to telephone before four o'clock.
6. there should be a telephone call by nightfall.
7. there's no reason for it to be so inexpensive.
8. it should have arrived by now.
9. you intend to investigate it once more.
10. you are almost certain you sent it.
11. Mr. Tanaka had intended to go to America.
12. there's no reason for him to do well, because he didn't study.
13. the dictionary which you had just bought has disappeared.
14. you are about to go buy another one.
15. all the students should remember it.
16. Mr. Yamada said that he doesn't intend to go to the office any more.
17. Tarō is always just studying.
18. you are always just playing.
19. there's no reason for the bookstore to raise the price (to make it more expensive).
20. there's no reason for him to say that.
21. you were supposed to go but that you were busy and couldn't go.
22. you intended to go but that Mr. Tanaka came and that you couldn't go.